

The Heinemann ELT English Grammar

Digby Beaumont & Colin Granger

Progress Tests written by Digby Beaumont & Ken Singleton

Русская редакция: проф. Бех П.А.



УДК 802.0-5/075/
ББК 81.2 /АНГЛ – 2я75/
B34

Macmillan Heinemann English Language Teaching, Oxford
A division of Macmillan Publishing Limited

Companies and representatives throughout the world

ISBN 0 435 292188 (with answers)

0 435 292196 (without answers)

Text © Digby Beaumont and Colin Granger 1989, 1992

Design and illustration © Macmillan Publishers Limited 1998

Heinemann is a registered trademark of Reed Education and Professional Publishing Limited

First published 1989

This edition published 1992

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

Designed by Mike Brain

Acknowledgements

The authors would like to thank all those people whose suggestions and comments have helped with this book, especially Gibson Ferguson at the University of Edinburgh's Institute of Applied Language Studies. Hazel Barker at the English Language Centre, Hove, Sussex, Lynn Smart at the **Eurocentre**, Brighton, **Sussex**, and **Michèle Cronick** at Heinemann International, Oxford.

All authors of grammars owe a debt to the corpus of published materials which has influenced them.

In this respect, we would like to acknowledge the following in particular

A Communicative Grammar of English, G. Leech, J. Svartvik (Longman, 1975); *Meaning and the English Verb*, G. Leech (Longman, 1971); *Practical English Usage*, M. Swan (OUP, 1980); *The Basic English Grammar*, J. Eastwood, R. Mackin (OUP, 1982); *Advanced English Practice*, B. D. Graver (OUP, 1965); *Cassell's Student's English Grammar*, J. Allsop (Cassell, 1983); *Longman English Grammar*, L. G. Alexander (Longman, 1988); *English in Situations*, R. O'Neill (OUP, 1970); and finally, *English Grammar in Use*, R. Murphy (CUP, 1985) for its exemplary treatment of grammar reference and practice

Digby Beaumont, Colin Granger

B34 The Heinemann ELT English Grammar: Учебное пособие. - К.: Методика. 2000. - 352 с.

Русская редакция: проф. Бех П.А.

ISBN 966-7269-23-X

Contents

Introduction

Verbs

- 1 Present continuous
- 2 Present simple
- 3 Present continuous and present simple
- 4 Past simple
- 5 Past continuous
- 6 Present perfect simple
- 7 *Gone* and *been*
- 8 Present perfect with *just*, *yet* and *already*
- 9 Present perfect continuous
- 10 Present perfect continuous and present perfect simple
- 11 Present perfect with *for* and *since*
- 12 Present perfect and past simple
- 13 Present perfect and present tense
- 14 Past perfect simple
- 15 Past perfect continuous
- 16 Future: *will*
- 17 Future: *going to*
- 18 Future: *will* and *going to*
- 19 Present continuous for the future
- 20 Future: present continuous and *going to*
- 21 Present simple for the future
- 22 Present simple for the future after *when if*, etc
- 23 Future continuous: *will be* + *-ing* form
- 24 Future perfect: *will have* + past participle
- 25 Future in the past: *was/were going to*
- 26 Continuous forms with *always*
- 27 Verbs not normally used in the continuous
- 28 Review of the present and the past**
- 29 Review of the future**
- 30 Imperative and *let's*
- 31 *Be*
- 32 *There is*, *there are*
- 33 *Have* and *have got*
- 34 *Have* for actions

Modal verbs and related structures

- 35 Modal verbs: general
- 36 Ability: *can*, *could*, *be able to*
- 37 Permission: *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *be allowed to*

- 38 Obligation and necessity (1) : *must*, *have to*, *have got to*
- 39 Obligation and necessity (2) : *mustn't*, *don't have to*, *don't need to*, *haven't got to*, *needn't*
- 40 Review of permission and obligation: *can*, *can't*, *must*, *mustn't*, *needn't*, *be allowed to*, *have to*, *don't have to***
- 41 *Needn't have* and *didn't need to*
- 42 Obligation and advice: *should*, *ought to*, *had better*, *be supposed to*, *shall*
- 43 Possibility: *may*, *might*, *could*
- 44 Possibility: *can*
- 45 Probability: *should*, *ought to*
- 46 Deduction: *must*, *can't*
- 47 Review of possibility, probability and deduction: *may*, *might*, *could*, *should*, *ought to*, *must*, *can't***
- 48 Requests: *can*, *could*, *may*, *will*, *would*
- 49 Offers: *will*, *shall*, *can*, *could*, *would*
- 50 Suggestions: *shall*, *let's*, *why don't we*, *how/what about*, *can*, *could*
- 51 Habits: *used to*, *will*, *would*
- 52 Refusals: *won't*, *wouldn't*
- 53 Promises and threats: *will*
- 54 *May/might as well*
- 55 Other uses of *should*
- 56 *Wish* and *if only*
- 57 *Would rather*
- 58 *It's time*

The passive and have something done

- 59 The passive: general
- 60 The passive: infinitive and *-ing* forms
- 61 Using *get* instead of *be* in the passive
- 62 Verbs with two objects in the passive
- 63 The passive with *by* and *with*
- 64 *It is said that he...* / *He is said to...* etc
- 65 *Have something done*

If sentences, conditionals

- 66 *When* and *if*
- 67 Conditionals: introduction
- 68 Open present or future conditionals
- 69 Unreal present or future conditionals

- 70 Open and unreal present or future conditionals
- 71 Unreal past conditionals
- 72 General conditionals
- 73 Conditionals without *if*
- 74 Review of conditionals

Reported speech

- 75 Direct and reported speech: introduction
- 76 *Say* and *tell*
- 77 Reported statements
- 78 Reported questions
- 79 Using the *to* infinitive in reported speech
- 80 Review of reported speech**

-ing form and infinitive

- 81 *-ing* form: participle or gerund
- 82 Verb + *-ing* form or infinitive: introduction
- 83 Verb + *-ing* form
- 84 Verb + *to* infinitive
- 85 Verb + question word + *to* infinitive
- 86 Verb + object + *to* infinitive
- 87 Verb + *-ing* form or *to* infinitive (1)
- 88 Verb + *-ing* form or *to* infinitive (2)
- 89 *Be used to* + *-ing* form and *used to* + infinitive
- 90 *Need* + *-ing* form or *to* infinitive
- 91 Infinitive without *to*
- 92 Preposition + *-ing* form
- 93 Person + *-ing* form
- 94 *-ing* form and *to* infinitive as subjects
- 95 *To* infinitive of purpose
- 96 Noun/Pronoun/Adjective + *to* infinitive
- 97 *See someone doing* and *see someone do*, etc
- 98 Review of -ing form and infinitive**
- 99 Participle (*-ing* and *-ed*) adjectives
- 100 Participle (-ing) clauses**

Nouns, articles and quantity

- 101 Singular and plural nouns (1)
- 102 Singular and plural nouns (2)
- 103 Compound nouns
- 104 Possessive 's (genitive)
- 105 Possessive 's or ... *of* ... ?
- 106 Double possessive
- 107 Countable and uncountable nouns
- 108 Articles: *a/an* and *the*

- 109 Talking in general: no article and *a/an*
- 110 Talking in general: *the*
- 111 Common expressions without articles
- 112 Place names with and without *the*
- 113 Review of a/an and the**
- 114 Quantity: general
- 115 *Some* and *any*
- 116 *Much, many, a lot of, (a) little, (a) few*
- 117 *No* and *none*
- 118 *All, every, everybody, everything, whole*
- 119 *Both, either, neither*

Pronouns

- 120 Personal pronouns
- 121 Possessive adjectives and pronouns
- 122 Reflexive pronouns
- 123 Review of personal pronouns, possessive adjectives and pronouns, and reflexive pronouns**
- 124 *One (s)*
- 125 *Something, anything, somebody, anybody*, etc

Adjectives

- 126 Form, position and order of adjectives
- 127 Comparative and superlative adjectives
- 128 *As ... as*
- 129 Review of comparatives, superlatives and as ... as**

Adverbs

- 130 Adjectives and adverbs of manner
- 131 Adverbs of manner, place and time
- 132 Adverb position with verbs
- 133 Time: *still, yet, already*
- 134 Time: *any more, any longer, no longer*
- 135 Adverbs of frequency
- 136 Adverbs of probability
- 137 *Fairly, quite, rather* and *pretty*
- 138 *Too* and *enough*
- 139 *So* and *such*
- 140 Comparison: adverbs

Negatives, questions and answers

- 141 Negative statements
- 142 *Yes/No* questions
- 143 *Wh-* questions

- 144 Subject and object questions
- 145 Question words
- 146 Negative questions
- 147 Question tags
- 148 Reply questions
- 149 Indirect questions
- 150 Short answers
- 151 *So/neither am I, so/neither do I, so/neither can I, etc*
- 152 *I think so, I hope so, I expect so, etc*

Relative clauses

- 153 Defining relative clauses with *who, that* and *which*
- 154 Leaving out *who, that* and *which* in defining relative clauses
- 155 Defining relative clauses with *whose, where, when* and *why/that*
- 156 Defining and non-defining relative clauses
- 157 Non-defining relative clauses with *whose, whom, where* and *when*
- 158 Relative clauses with prepositions + *which* and *whom*
- 159 *Which* referring to a whole clause

Linking words

- 160 Time: *when, as, while, as soon as, before, after, until*
- 161 Contrast: *although, even though, though, in spite of, despite, while, whereas, however*
- 162 Reason and result: *because (of), as, since, so, as a result, therefore, so/such ... (that)*
- 163 Purpose: *to, in order to, so as to, for, so that*
- 164 Purpose: *in case*

Prepositions

- 165 Place: *at, in, on*
- 166 Place and movement: *in, into, out of, on, onto, off, inside, outside*
- 167 Place and movement: *above, below, over, under, underneath, on top of*

Contents

- 168 Other prepositions of place and movement
- 169 Time: *at, in, on*
- 170 *On time* and *in time*
- 171 *At the end* and *in the end*
- 172 Time: *in, during, for, while*
- 173 Time: *by, until, from, to, before, after*
- 174 *For, since, ago* and *before*
- 175 Means of transport: *by, on, in*
- 176 *Like, as* and *as if*
- 177 *With* (= having) and *in* (= wearing)
- 178 Adjective + preposition
- 179 Noun + preposition
- 180 Preposition + noun
- 181 Verb + preposition
- 182 Verb + object + preposition
- 183 Review of prepositions**
- 184** Indirect objects with or without *to* and *for*

Phrasal verbs

- 185** Phrasal verbs: introduction
- 186** Types of phrasal verbs

Pronunciation and spelling of endings

- 187 Pronunciation of endings: *-(e)s* and *-ed*
- 188 Spelling of endings: *-(e)s, -ing, -ed, -er, -est, -ly*

General

- 189 Contractions
- 190 Irregular verbs

Progress Tests

Appendix: American English

Glossary

Index

Предисловие

Предлагаемое учебное пособие - *The Heinemann ELT English Grammar* - предназначено для лиц, изучающих английский язык. Цель пособия состоит в том, чтобы помочь изучающим овладеть грамматикой и использовать ее на практике. Главным образом, пособие рассчитано на тех, кто работает самостоятельно. Однако его материалы могут использоваться и для работы под руководством преподавателя. Пособие рассчитано для лиц, имеющих средний уровень подготовки по английскому языку. Вместе с тем его можно с успехом использовать и на продвинутом этапе обучения для повторения и закрепления изученного материала.

ОБЪЯСНЕНИЕ

Грамматические пояснения изложены в простой и доступной форме. В общем используется английский язык повседневного обихода. Хотя, где это необходимо, используются отдельные грамматические термины (например, adjective - имя прилагательное, noun - имя существительное, subject - подлежащее). Эти термины объясняются в *Глоссарии* (Glossary) на страницах 324 - 327.

СТРУКТУРА ПОСОБИЯ

- Пособие состоит из 190 разделов. Как правило, каждый раздел посвящен одной из грамматических тем (например, the present continuous - настоящее длительное время, will или артикли a, an и the). Раздел начинается с объяснений и примеров, после чего следует одно или несколько упражнений.
- Кроме того, в некоторых разделах делается сравнение грамматического материала с материалом, изложенным в предыдущих разделах (например, в разделе 2 сравнивается the present continuous (настоящее длительное время) и present simple (настоящее простое время).
- В обзорных разделах объединяются и отрабатываются на практике некоторые материалы предыдущих разделов (например, в разделе 28 **отренировываются** the present - настоящие и past tenses - прошедшие времена). В этих разделах содержатся лишь упражнения и отсутствуют объяснения.
- Некоторые разделы (например, 35 и 67) носят лишь справочный характер и не содержат упражнений. На страницах 294 - 322 помещены 88 учебно-контрольных тестов. Они предназначены для проверки степени овладения грамматическим материалом пособия. Тесты можно использовать для выявления отдельных проблем, поскольку каждый из них ориентирован на определенную область грамматики.
- На страницах III - V содержится *Оглавление* (Contents).
- На страницах 328-335 помещен *Алфавитный указатель* (Index), который приводит подробный перечень грамматических структур (например, articles - артикли, present continuous - настоящее длительное время) и ключевых слов (например, *a/an, enough*). Здесь также помещены рубрики, касающиеся того, как используется язык для выражения, например, возможности, долженствования.
- В квадратных скобках [] иногда приводятся переводы некоторых примеров, используемых как иллюстративный материал.
- Ответы к упражнениям размещены на страницах 336 - 348, а ответы к тестам - на страницах 348 - 353.
- В *Приложении* на странице 323 приведены некоторые сведения об американском варианте английского языка.

ИСПОЛЬЗОВАНИЕ ПОСОБИЯ В КАЧЕСТВЕ САМОУЧИТЕЛЯ

Найдите желаемую тему по *Оглавлению* (Contents) - страницы iii - v или по *Алфавитному указателю* (Index) - страницы 328 - 335. Прочитайте объяснения и ознакомьтесь с примерами. Затем выполните предлагаемые упражнения. Сверьте ваши ответы с *Ключами к упражнениям* (Key to exercises) - страницы 336 - 348*. Если у вас возникают какие-либо затруднения, снова обратитесь к объяснениям и примерам. Затем найдите тест по изучаемой теме в *Оглавлении учебно-контрольных тестов* (Progress Tests) - страницы 294 - 296. Выполните тест. Затем сверьте ваши ответы с *Ответами к учебно-контрольным тестам* (Answers to Progress Tests) - страницы 348 - 353*.

* в издании, содержащем "ответы на ключи".

1 Present continuous (Настоящее длительное время)

1 Form (Образование)

Present continuous образуется с помощью *be + ... -ing*.

AFFIRMATIVE
(УТВЕРЖДЕНИЕ)

| | | |
|--|------------|----------------|
| <i>I</i> | <i>am</i> | <i>working</i> |
| <i>you</i> | <i>are</i> | |
| <i>he</i> <i>she</i> <i>it</i> | <i>is</i> | |
| <i>we</i> <i>you</i> <i>they</i> | <i>are</i> | |

NEGATIVE
(ОТРИЦАНИЕ)

| | | |
|--|----------------|----------------|
| <i>I</i> | <i>am not</i> | <i>working</i> |
| <i>you</i> | <i>are not</i> | |
| <i>he</i> <i>she</i> <i>it</i> | <i>is not</i> | |
| <i>we</i> <i>you</i> <i>they</i> | <i>are not</i> | |

QUESTION
(ВОПРОС)

| | | |
|------------|--|-----------------|
| <i>am</i> | <i>I</i> | <i>working?</i> |
| <i>are</i> | <i>you</i> | |
| <i>is</i> | <i>he</i> <i>she</i> <i>it</i> | |
| <i>are</i> | <i>we</i> <i>you</i> <i>they</i> | |

Эта форма иногда называется 'present progressive'.

CONTRACTIONS (СТЯЖЕНИЯ)

'*m* = *am*

'*re* = *are*

'*s* = *is*

aren't = *are not*

isn't = *is not*

При присоединении окончания *-ing* иногда происходят изменения в написании, например: *have* → *having*. См. 188.3-6.

2 Use (Употребление)

а



Present continuous употребляется для выражения действия, которое происходит в момент речи.

'Where are the children?' 'They're playing in the garden.'

'What are you doing at the moment?' 'I'm writing a letter.'

You can switch off the TV. I'm not watching it.

Look, there's Sally. Who is she talking to?

We're leaving now. Goodbye.

b Present continuous употребляется также для выражения действия, которое происходит в настоящее время, но не обязательно в момент речи.

*You're **spending** a lot of money these days.*

Sue is looking for a job at the moment.

Present continuous употребляется для выражения действия, которое происходит в настоящее время в течение определенного периода.

*Robert is on holiday this week. He's **staying** with his sister in Bournemouth.*

Present continuous употребляется для выражения изменяющихся или развивающихся действий и ситуаций в настоящем времени.

*Your children **are growing** up very quickly.*

*Computers **are becoming** more and more important in our lives.*

EXERCISE 1A

What are the people in the pictures doing?

Make sentences.



Example:

1 *He's reading a newspaper.*

EXERCISE 1B

Complete the sentences. Use the verbs in brackets in the present continuous.

Example:

'Where are Ken and Kate?' 'They're waiting (wait) outside.'

1 '____ (Sally | have) a shower?' 'No, she ____ (wash) her hair.'

2 You ____ (not | watch) the TV at the moment. Why don't you switch it off?

3 '____ (you | enjoy) yourself?' 'Yes, I ____ (have) a great time.'

4 'What ____ (Maria | do) these days?' 'She ____ (study) English at a school in London.'

5 Ben and Patty are in London on holiday. They ____ (stay) at a small hotel near Hyde Park.

6 Prices ____ (rise) all the time. Everything ____ (get) more and more expensive.

Note (Примечание)

– Смотрите также 3. Present continuous и present simple.

– Некоторые глаголы, например *like, know*, обычно употребляются для образования форм continuous. См. 27.

– *Always* может употребляться с формами времени continuous в значении 'слишком часто', например: *He's always saying stupid things.* См. 26.

– Present continuous может употребляться для выражения действия в будущем времени, например: *I'm meeting Sue on Saturday evening.* См. 19.

2 Present simple (Настоящее простое время)

1 Form

AFFIRMATIVE

| | |
|-------------|--------------|
| <i>I</i> | <i>work</i> |
| <i>you</i> | |
| <i>he</i> | <i>works</i> |
| <i>she</i> | |
| <i>it</i> | |
| <i>we</i> | <i>work</i> |
| <i>you</i> | |
| <i>they</i> | |

NEGATIVE

| | |
|-------------|----------------------|
| <i>I</i> | <i>do not work</i> |
| <i>you</i> | |
| <i>he</i> | <i>does not work</i> |
| <i>she</i> | |
| <i>it</i> | |
| <i>we</i> | <i>do not work</i> |
| <i>you</i> | |
| <i>they</i> | |

QUESTION

| | | |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| <i>do</i> | <i>I</i> | |
| | <i>you</i> | |
| <i>does</i> | <i>he</i> | |
| | <i>she</i> | <i>work?</i> |
| | <i>it</i> | |
| <i>do</i> | <i>we</i> | |
| | <i>you</i> | |
| | <i>they</i> | |

CONTRACTIONS

don't = *do not*

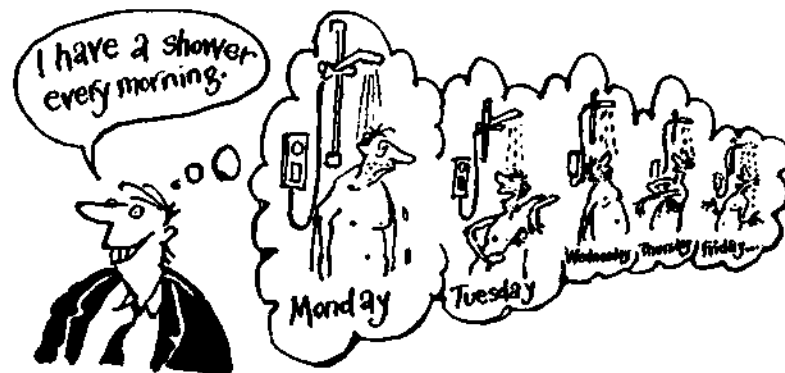
doesn't = *does not*

После *he*, *she* и *it* глаголы в утвердительной форме заканчиваются на *-s/-es*, например, / *work* → *he works*; *you play* → *she plays*; *we finish* → *it finishes*.

При присоединении к глаголам окончания *-s/-es* иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, *study/studies*. См. 188.1, 4. Относительно произношения *-s/-es*, см. 187.1.

2 Use

a



Present simple употребляется для выражения повторяемых и привычных действий.
/ *have a shower every morning*.

Most evenings my parents stay at home and watch TV.

Do you go to the cinema very often?

What time does Kate finish work?

b

Present simple употребляется для выражения постоянных ситуаций (непрерывных в течение длительного времени).

Mr and Mrs Shaw live in Bristol. [Господин и госпожа Шоу живут в Бристоле].
(Это их постоянное место жительства.)

C Present simple также употребляется для выражения общепринятых истин.

The River Amazon flows into the Atlantic Ocean.

*Vegetarians **don't eat** meat or fish.*

EXERCISE 2A

Complete the sentences. Use the present simple of the verbs in brackets.

Examples:

The President of the USA *lives* (live) in the White House.

I *don't go* (not | go) to the theatre very often.

1 Jet engines _____ (make) a lot of noise.

2 I _____ (not | live) in London. I _____ (live) in Brighton.

3 The sea _____ (cover) two thirds of the world.

4 Loud music _____ (give) me a headache.

5 We _____ (not | come) from Canada. We _____ (come) from the USA.

6 She _____ (work) from Mondays to Fridays. She _____ (not | work) at weekends.

7 Andrew and Les _____ (not | go) to school by bus every day. Most mornings Andrew _____ (go) by bicycle and Les _____ (walk).

8 You _____ (not | write) to your **penfriend** very often, but he _____ (write) to you every week.

Note

-См. также 3. Present continuous и present simple.

- *What do you do?* - это вопрос о чем-то занятии, например: *'What do you do?' 'I'm a doctor.'*

- Когда *who*, *what* или *which* является подлежащим в вопросе в present simple, то *do/does* не употребляется. Например: *Who lives in that flat?* См. 144.

- Такие слова, как *usually*, *often*, *every day*, часто употребляются с present simple для обозначения регулярности действия, например: *I usually have a shower every day.* См. 135.

- Present simple также употребляется для выражения будущего действия, например: *The train leaves at 7.30 tomorrow morning.* См. 21.

- Относительно настоящего времени глагола *be* (*am*, *are*, *is*) См. 31.

EXERCISE 2B

Complete the questions in the present simple.

Example:

'What time do you get up every morning?' 'I normally get up at 7 o'clock.'

1 '_____ to the radio every morning?' 'I listen to it most mornings.'

2 '_____ in Manchester?' 'No, he lives in Newcastle.'

3 'What time _____ work every day?' 'She usually finishes at 5.30.'

4 'How often _____ swimming?' 'I go about once a week.'

5 '_____ TV every evening?' 'They watch it most evenings.'

6 '_____ the guitar?' 'Yes, she plays the guitar and the piano.'

7 'How much money _____ a month?' 'We earn about £800.'

8 '_____ much in your country?' 'Yes, it snows a lot during the winter.'

3 Present continuous and present simple (Настоящее длительное и настоящее простое время)

Compare (Сравните):
PRESENT CONTINUOUS



Present continuous употребляется для выражения действия в развитии или происходящего в момент речи.

Are you working now?
Don't forget your umbrella when you go out.
It's raining outside.

Present **continuous** употребляется для выражения **временных**, а present simple - для постоянных ситуаций. Compare:

I'm sleeping on a sofa these days because my bed is broken.

PRESENT SIMPLE



Present simple употребляется для выражения повторяемых или привычных, а также общеизвестных действий.

Do you work every Saturday afternoon?
It rains a lot in Britain in March and April.

I always sleep eight hours every night.

EXERCISE 3A

Choose the correct form.

Example:

Look outside! It's snowing! / ~~It~~ snows!

- 1 *It's snowing/It snows* quite often in Britain during the winter.
- 2 *I'm going/I go* to bed now. Goodnight.
- 3 Normally, *I'm going/I go* to bed at around 11.30 every night.
- 4 'Where's Simon?' 'He's *cooking/He cooks* the dinner.'
- 5 There is something wrong with Lynne's car at the moment so *she's going/she goes* to work by bus this week.
- 6 The River Thames is *flowing/flows* through London.
- 7 Sarah has got an exam soon, so *she's working/she works* very hard at the moment.

Note

- **Некоторые** глаголы, например *like, want*, обычно не употребляются в формах времени continuous. Так, нельзя сказать: ~~I'm~~ *liking this music*. См. 27.
- Present continuous и present simple также употребляются для выражения будущего действия. См. 19, 21.

4 Past simple (Прошедшее простое время)

1 Form

Форма Past simple одна для всех лиц (*I, you, he, she, etc.*).

| AFFIRMATIVE | | NEGATIVE | | | QUESTION | | |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|-------------|------------|-------------|--------------|
| <i>I</i> | | <i>I</i> | | | | <i>I</i> | |
| <i>you</i> | | <i>you</i> | | | | <i>you</i> | |
| <i>he</i> | <i>worked</i> | <i>he</i> | | <i>work</i> | | <i>he</i> | <i>work?</i> |
| <i>she</i> | | <i>she</i> | <i>did not</i> | | | <i>she</i> | |
| <i>it</i> | <i>came</i> | <i>it</i> | | <i>come</i> | | <i>it</i> | <i>come?</i> |
| <i>we</i> | | <i>we</i> | | | | <i>we</i> | |
| <i>you</i> | | <i>you</i> | | | <i>did</i> | <i>you</i> | |
| <i>they</i> | | <i>they</i> | | | | <i>they</i> | |

CONTRACTION

didn't = *did not*

Некоторые глаголы являются 'правильными' или 'стандартными' ('regular'), другие - 'неправильными' или 'нестандартными' ('irregular'):

- Правильные глаголы в утвердительном предложении в past simple заканчиваются на *-ed*, например, *work* → *worked*; *play* → *played*; *live* → *lived*. Когда к глаголам присоединяется *-ed*, иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, *stop* → *stopped*. См. 188.3, 4, 6. Отношения *-ed* см. 187.2.
- Неправильные глаголы в утвердительном предложении в past simple имеют различные формы, например, *come* → *came*; *see* → *saw*; *go* → *went*. См. 190.

2 Use

Past simple употребляется для выражения действий и ситуаций, имевших место в прошлом.

I played football yesterday.

He lived in London from 1970 to 1973. Then he moved to Manchester.

'Did you see Sarah yesterday?' 'No, I didn't.'

We didn't go out last night. We stayed at home and watched TV.

They went to Italy on holiday last summer.

Marie and Pierre Curie discovered radium.

EXERCISE 4A

Complete the text about James Dean. Use the past simple.

American actor James Dean was born in 1931. **Dean's** mother *died* when Dean was only 8 years old and **he** ____1____ on his aunt and **uncle's** farm. **He** ____2____ acting for two years. Then he ____3____ a career in films and the theatre. He also ____4____ in some TV commercials, including one for Pepsi-Cola. In 1954, he ____5____ in a play called *The Immoralist* in a New York theatre. Bosses from a Hollywood film studio ____6____ the play. They ____7____ Dean and ____8____ him a film contract. Dean ____9____ in three films, *East of Eden* (1955), *Rebel without a Cause* (1955) and *Giant* (1956). During his short career, he ____10____ extremely popular with teenagers. His death in a car crash in 1955 ____11____ great sadness in young people all over the world.

die
grow up, study
start
appear
act
see, like, offer
star
become
cause

EXERCISE 4B

What did Simon and Sally do yesterday?

Complete the conversation. Use these verbs:
win, meet, go, cost, stag, watch, buy, do, play.

Sally: What did you do yesterday? *Did you go* to the Sports Centre?

Simon: Yes, I went there with Andrew.

Sally: ____1____ tennis?

Simon: Yes, we did.

Sally: Andrew is good, isn't he? ____2____ the game?

Simon: Yes, he won easily.

Sally: What ____3____ in the evening? ____4____ at home?

Simon: Yes, I stayed in and watched TV.

Sally: What ____5____?

Simon: A film of a rock concert. It was really good. What about you? ____6____ Peter yesterday?

Sally: Yes, I met him in town. We went shopping. Peter wanted to look for some new clothes.

Simon: ____7____ anything?

Sally: Yes, he bought a pair of jeans in *Kings*.

Simon: *Kings*? **That's** a really expensive shop, isn't it? How much ____8____?

Sally: £42.

Note

-Иногда *did* не употребляется в вопросах в past simple. См. 144.

-Относительно прошедшего времени глагола *be* (*was, were*) см. 31.

EXERCISE 4C

Correct these statements, as in the example. Use the words in the box.

| | | |
|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| radium | the Eiffel Tower | John F. Kennedy |
| detective stories | the radio | 1962 |

Example:

1 *He didn't invent the telephone.*

He invented the radio.

1 Marconi invented the telephone.

2 Gustave Eiffel built the Statue of Liberty.

3 Marilyn Monroe died in 1990.

4 Marie and Pierre Curie discovered penicillin.

5 Lee Harvey Oswald killed Martin Luther King.

6 Agatha Christie wrote children's stories.

5 Past continuous (Прошедшее длительное время)

1 Form

Past continuous образуется с помощью *was/were* + ... *-ing*.

AFFIRMATIVE

| | | |
|-------------|-------------|----------------|
| / | <i>was</i> | |
| <i>you</i> | <i>were</i> | |
| <i>he</i> | <i>was</i> | |
| <i>she</i> | <i>was</i> | |
| <i>it</i> | | <i>working</i> |
| <i>we</i> | | |
| <i>you</i> | <i>were</i> | |
| <i>they</i> | | |

NEGATIVE

| | | |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|
| <i>I</i> | <i>was not</i> | |
| <i>you</i> | <i>were not</i> | |
| <i>he</i> | <i>was not</i> | |
| <i>she</i> | <i>was not</i> | |
| <i>it</i> | | <i>working</i> |
| <i>we</i> | | |
| <i>you</i> | <i>were not</i> | |
| <i>they</i> | | |

QUESTION

| | | |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------|
| <i>was</i> | <i>I</i> | |
| <i>were</i> | <i>you</i> | |
| <i>was</i> | <i>he</i> | |
| <i>was</i> | <i>she</i> | |
| | <i>it</i> | <i>working?</i> |
| <i>were</i> | <i>we</i> | |
| | <i>you</i> | |
| | <i>they</i> | |

Эта форма иногда называется 'past progressive'.

CONTRACTIONS

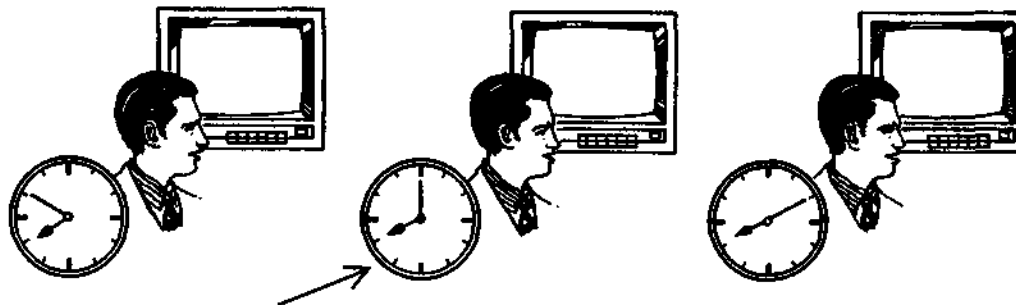
wasn't = *was not*

weren't = *were not*

При присоединении к глаголам окончания *-ing* иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, *write* → *writing*. См. 188.3-6.

2 Use

a Past continuous употребляется для выражения действия, продолжавшегося в прошедшем времени. Действие или ситуация началась, но еще не завершилась в то время.



'At eight o'clock last night I was watching TV.'

More examples (Другие примеры):

I saw you last night. You were waiting for a bus.

Was Sue working at 10 o'clock yesterday morning?

Compare the uses of the past continuous and past simple:

PAST CONTINUOUS

I was writing a letter. [Я писал письмо]

(= I was in the middle of writing it. - Я еще продолжал писать письмо.)

PAST SIMPLE

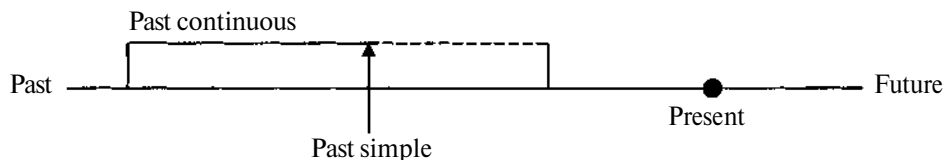
I wrote a letter. [Я написал письмо]

(= I started and finished it. - Я начал и закончил его.)

- b** Past continuous и past simple часто употребляются в предложении одновременно. Обратите внимание, что происходит в таких предложениях:

| PAST CONTINUOUS | PAST SIMPLE |
|--|--|
| / <i>was driving</i> along When <i>Kate was watching</i> TV <i>We were walking</i> in the park | when suddenly a child ran across the road. the telephone <i>rang</i> . when it <i>started</i> to rain. |

Past continuous обозначает продолженные действия или ситуации, которые длились в прошлом; past simple обозначает недлительное действие, которое произошло в середине более длительного действия или прервало его.



Но для обозначения следования одного действия за другим можно употреблять past simple.

When the telephone rang, Kate answered it.
We sheltered under a tree when it started to rain.

Compare:

When Kate came home Ken was making some tea. [Когда Кейт пришла домой, Кен заваривал чай.]
(Ken was in the middle of making some tea. Then Kate came home - Кен еще заваривал чай, когда Кейт пришла домой)

When Kate came home, Ken made some tea. [Когда Кейт пришла домой, Кен заварил чай.]
(Kate came home. Then Ken made some tea. - Кейт пришла домой, а тогда Кен заварил чай.)

- c** В разговоре часто употребляется past continuous для описания фоновых обстоятельств, а past simple – для описания событий и действий.

PAST CONTINUOUS

/ *was standing* outside the bus station. It was *getting* late and I *was feeling* tired. I was *waiting* for a man called Johnny Mars.

PAST SIMPLE

Suddenly, a woman came round the corner and *walked* right up to me. 'Are you Mr Marlowe?' she *asked*.

EXERCISE 5A

Join each idea in A with the most suitable idea in B. Make sentences using *when* and the past continuous or past simple of the verbs in brackets.

Example:

1 / *dropped my bag* when *I was running* for a bus.

A

- 1 I (drop) my bag
- 2 I (cut) myself
- 3 My car (break down)
- 4 I (see) a shark
- 5 My clothes (get) dirty
- 6 I (break) a tooth

B

- I (drive) to work
- I (eat) a sandwich
- I (run) for a bus
- I (shave)
- I (swim) in the sea
- I (clean) the attic

EXERCISE 5B

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form: the past continuous or the past simple.

Examples:

When she *came* (come) into the room I *was listening* (listen) to the radio.

When my car *broke* down (break down) I *phoned* (phone) a garage.

- 1 We _____ (go) down in the lift when suddenly it _____ (stop).
- 2 _____ (they | have) dinner when you _____ (call) to see them?
- 3 When the doorbell _____ (ring) I _____ (get) up and _____ (answer) it.
- 4 When I _____ (open) the **door**, a friend _____ (stand) there.
- 5 **'When** I _____ (arrive) back at the car park, my car wasn't **there!** **'Oh, no!**
What _____ (you | do)?' **'I** _____ (report) it to the **police.'**

EXERCISE 5C

These paragraphs begin three stories: a love story, a western and a horror story.

1 Complete the paragraphs using the past continuous or the past simple of the verbs in brackets.

- (i) It was midnight and I was alone in the house. Outside it *was raining* (rain) very hard. I _____ 1 _____ (get) ready to go to bed when I suddenly heard a strange noise outside my room in the corridor. Then, when I looked at the door, I noticed that someone _____ 2 _____ (turn) the **handle!** I _____ 3 _____ (rush) over to the door and quickly _____ 4 _____ (turn) the key in the lock. Then I _____ 5 _____ (ask) in a trembling voice, **'Who is it?'**
- (ii) It was early evening and it _____ 1 _____ (begin) to get dark in the surgery of Doctor Nigel Harris. The young, handsome doctor _____ 2 _____ (stand) looking sadly out of the window when there was a quiet knock at the surgery door. The door _____ 3 _____ (open) and Dr Harris _____ 4 _____ (turn) round to see the young **girl** who had just entered the room. She was very beautiful. With a sad smile the doctor _____ 5 _____ (ask), **'Are you the new nurse?'**
- (iii) I _____ 1 _____ (sit) in the big chair in Henry's barber's shop at the time. Henry _____ 2 _____ (cut) my hair with his big pair of scissors when we heard the sound of horses outside. The noise was so loud that we _____ 3 _____ (go) over to the window to look. Through the window we could see at least twenty gunmen riding into town. Henry immediately _____ 4 _____ (go) over to his desk and _____ 5 _____ (put) on his gun and **Sheriff's** badge.

2 Which paragraph begins which story?

Note

- Некоторые глаголы, например *like*, *own*, обычно не употребляются в формах времени continuous. Так, нельзя сказать: **I was liking the film.** См. 27.
- *Always* с формами времени continuous имеет значение 'слишком часто'. См. 26.

6 Present perfect simple (Настоящее совершенное простое время)

1 Form

Present perfect simple образуется с помощью **have/has** + причастие прошедшего времени (past participle).

AFFIRMATIVE

| | | |
|-------------------|------|----------------|
| I you | have | worked come |
| he she it | has | |
| we you they | have | |

NEGATIVE

| | | |
|-------------------|----------|----------------|
| I you | have not | worked come |
| he she it | has not | |
| we you they | have not | |

QUESTION

| | | |
|------|-------------------|------------------|
| have | I you | worked? come? |
| has | he she it | |
| have | we you they | |

CONTRACTIONS

've = have **haven't** = have not
's = has **hasn't** = has not

Некоторые глаголы являются '**правильными**' (some verbs are '**regular**'); другие - '**неправильными**' (other verbs are '**irregular**):

- Past participle времени правильных глаголов заканчиваются на *-ed*, например, *work* → *worked*; *live* → *lived*. При присоединении к глаголу *-ed* иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, *stop* → *stopped*. См. 188.3, 4, 6. Относительно произношения *-ed* см. 187.2.
- Неправильные глаголы имеют различные формы past participle, например, *come* → *come*; *be* → *been*. См. 190.

2 Use

В предложениях, содержащих present perfect, всегда имеется связь между прошлым и настоящим:

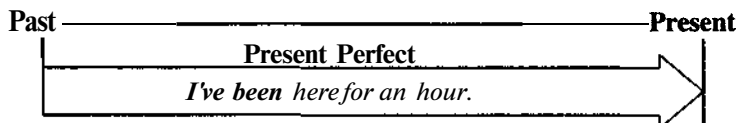
- a** Present perfect употребляется для выражения действия, начавшегося в прошлом и продолжающегося в настоящем времени.



I was here at 3.00.



I am still here now - at 4.00.



More examples:

She has worked in London for six months. [Она живет в Лондоне в течение шести **месяцев.**] (= She still works in London now. - Она еще работает сейчас в Лондоне.)

How long have you lived here? [Сколько вы там **живете?**]

(= You still live here now. - Вы еще живете здесь сейчас.)

Kate and Ken have been married for 20 years. [Кейт и Кен женаты 20 **лет.**]

(= They are still married now. - Они женаты сейчас.)

Относительно *for* и *since*, см. 11.

- b** Present perfect также употребляется для выражения действий, имевших место в течение определенного периода, продолжающегося до настоящего времени.

I've been to Africa and India. (= in my life, up to now)

Have you ever eaten Chinese food? (= in your life, up to now)

Present perfect часто употребляется таким образом со словами 'неопределенного' времени, например, *ever* [когда-либо; когда бы то ни было], *never* [никогда], *yet* [еще] (см. 8) и *before* [раньше, прежде].

What's the best film you've ever seen?

I've never seen a ghost.

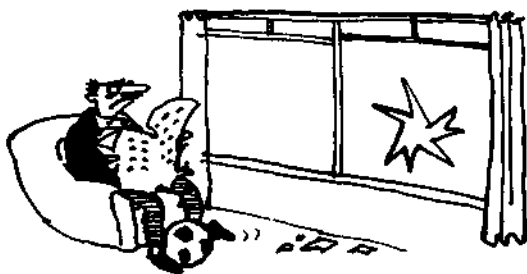
She's been there before.

Present perfect не употребляется со словами 'определенного' прошедшего времени (*yesterday*, *last night*, *in 1985* и т.д.). Например, нельзя сказать: ~~*She's been there yesterday.*~~

Present perfect употребляется со словами *today*, *this morning*, *this afternoon* и др., когда период времени не завершился на момент речи.

I've written six letters this morning. [Я написал шесть писем этим **утром.**] (= Сейчас все еще 'сегодняшнее утро'.)

- c** Present perfect также употребляется, когда результат прошедшего действия связан с настоящим временем.



Someone has broken the window. [Кто-то разбил окно] (= Окно разбито и сейчас.)

More examples:

The taxi has arrived. [Такси подано] (= Такси сейчас здесь.)

We've cleaned the flat. [Мы убрали квартиру] (= Квартира сейчас чиста.)

Present perfect часто употребляется таким образом для сообщения (передачи) 'новостей'.

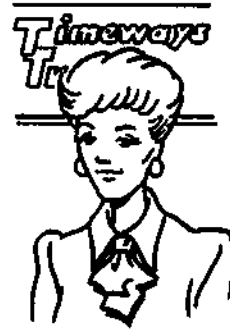
My brother has grown a beard.

I've found a new job.

EXERCISE 6A

Complete the sentences using the present perfect simple of the verbs in brackets.

My name is Lynne Carter. I work for a travel company called Timeways Travel. I've been (be) a travel agent for six years now. I'm the manager of Timeways Travel London office. I _____1_____ (have) this job for three years. I've got a new flat in London. I _____2_____ (live) there for six months. My boyfriend's name is Bruno. We _____3_____ (know) each other for two years. Bruno is Italian, but he _____4_____ (live) in England for over five years. He works for BBC Radio. He _____5_____ (have) this job for a year.



Lynne Carter

EXERCISE 6B

Lynne is meeting two clients, Ben and Patty Crawford.

Ben and Patty are on holiday in London

Complete the conversation using the present perfect simple.

Lynne: How is your hotel?

Ben: Great! It's the best hotel I've ever stayed (ever | stay) in.

Patty: Yes, Ben is really pleased. He _____1_____ (never | slept) in such a big bed before.

But he won't be so pleased when we get the bill. It's also the most expensive hotel we _____2_____ (ever | stay) in!

Lynne: _____3_____ (you | be) to London before, Ben?

Ben: No, I _____4_____ (not | be) here before, but Patty _____5_____ (be) a number of times.

Haven't you, Patty?

Patty: That's right. But the last time was ten years ago and London _____6_____ (change) a lot since then.

Lynne: And what are you going to do this afternoon?

Patty: Well, I _____7_____ (never | see) Madame Tussaud's. We _____8_____ (hear) a lot about it from friends, so we thought we'd go there.

Lynne: I see. And what about dinner tonight? I know a very good Japanese restaurant.

_____9_____ (you | ever | eat) Japanese food, Patty?

Patty: No, I haven't. Is it good?

Lynne: It's delicious.

Ben: I _____10_____ (not | try) Japanese food before either, so let's go there.

Patty: Yes, why not?

EXERCISE 6C

Every Saturday morning Simon and Sally clean the kitchen. Here are the jobs that they do:

SIMON AND SALLY
1 do the washing up
4 clean the windows

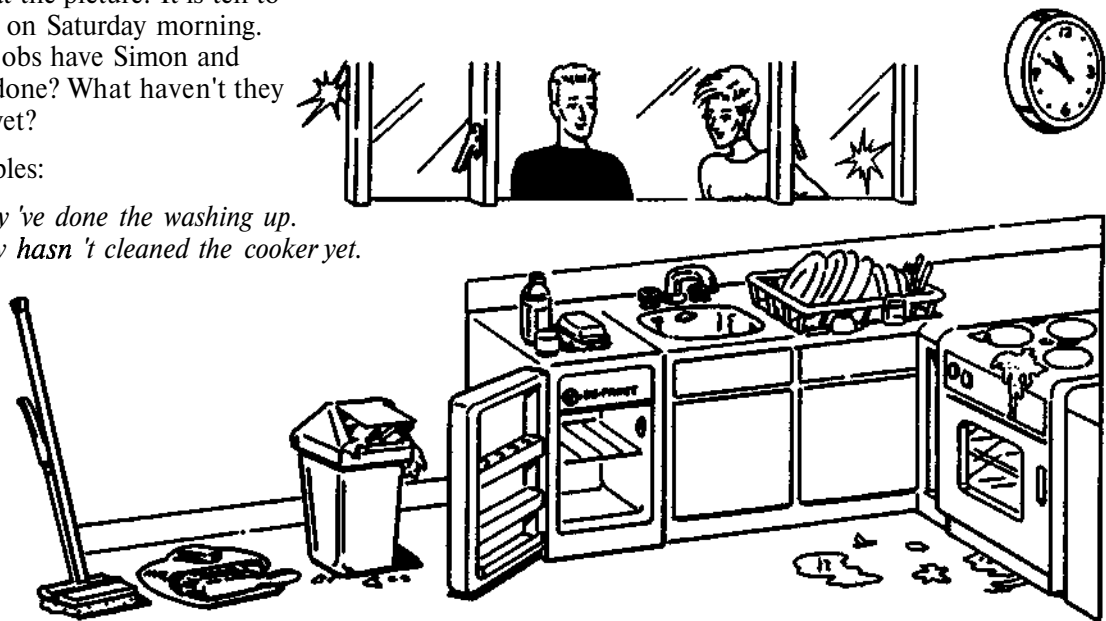
SALLY
2 clean the cooker
5 de-frost the fridge

SIMON
3 empty the rubbish bin
6 clean the floor

Look at the picture. It is ten to eleven on Saturday morning. What jobs have Simon and Sally done? What haven't they done yet?

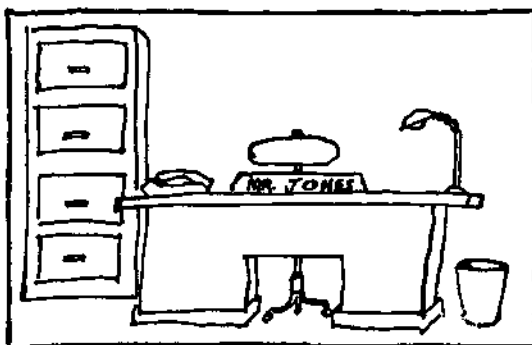
Examples:

- 1 *They've done the washing up.*
- 2 *Sally hasn't cleaned the cooker yet.*



7 *Gone and been*

Compare *gone* и *been*:



Mr Jones isn't here at the moment. He has gone to the hairdresser's.
(= Он еще не вернулся.)



Mr Jones is back now. He has been to the hairdresser's.
(= Он уже вернулся.)

EXERCISE 7A

Complete the sentences with *gone* or *been*.

'Where's Kate?' 'She's *gone* to the cinema.'

- 1 I'm sorry I'm late, everyone. I've _____ to the dentist's.
- 2 There's nobody at home. I think they've _____ away for the weekend.
- 3 You look very brown. Have you _____ on holiday?
- 4 Simon isn't here at the moment. He's _____ to a football match.
- 5 'Have you ever _____ to Scotland?' 'Yes, I've _____ there quite a few times.'

8 Present perfect with *just, yet* and *already* (Настоящее совершенное время *с just, yet* и *already*)

Present perfect часто употребляется с наречиями *just, yet* и *already*:

- 1 *Just* употребляется для совсем недавних действий, *just* следует после вспомогательного глагола *have*.
*The taxi **has just** arrived.*
*They **'ve just** finished.*
- 2 *Yet* употребляется, когда ожидается выполнение какого-то действия; *yet* обычно следует в конце предложения.
*It's nearly 10 o'clock. Has Andrew woken **up yet**?*
*They haven't finished dinner **yet**.*
В этом случае *yet* употребляется лишь в вопросительных и отрицательных предложениях.
- 3 *Already* употребляется в том случае, когда что-то произошло ранее, чем ожидалось; *already* обычно следует после вспомогательного глагола *have*.
*'Where's Kate?' 'She's **already** left.'*
*'Could you do the washing **up**?' I've **already** done it.'*
Already может также ставиться и в конце предложения, выражая эмфазу.
*She's left **already**.*
*I've done it **already**.*

EXERCISE 8A

Put the words in brackets in the correct place in the sentences. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Example:

Has Ken come home from work? (**just**)

Has **Ken** *just* come home from work?

1 Have you done your homework? (**yet**)

4 Have you spoken to your parents? (*just*)

2 I haven't worn my new coat. (**yet**)

5 It's quite early. Has Jack gone to bed? (**already**)

3 'Is Sally **here**?' 'No, she's gone **out**.' (**just**)

6 I've cleaned the **windows**. (**already**)

9 Present perfect continuous (Настоящее совершенное длительное время)

1 Form

Present perfect continuous образуется с помощью *have/has been* + ... *-ing*.

| AFFIRMATIVE | | NEGATIVE | | QUESTION | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| <i>I</i> | <i>have</i> | <i>I</i> | <i>have not</i> | <i>have I</i> | |
| <i>you</i> | | <i>you</i> | | <i>you</i> | |
| <i>he</i> | | <i>he</i> | | <i>he</i> | |
| <i>she</i> | <i>has</i> | <i>she</i> | <i>has not</i> | <i>has she</i> | <i>been working?</i> |
| <i>it</i> | | <i>it</i> | | <i>it</i> | |
| <i>we</i> | | <i>we</i> | | <i>we</i> | |
| <i>you</i> | <i>have</i> | <i>you</i> | <i>have not</i> | <i>have you</i> | |
| <i>they</i> | | <i>they</i> | | <i>they</i> | |

Эта форма иногда называется 'present perfect progressive'.

CONTRACTIONS

've = *have* haven't = *have not*

's = *has* hasn't = *has not*

При присоединении к глаголам окончания *-ing* иногда происходят изменения в написании. Например, *have* → *having*. См. 188.3–6.

2 Use

В предложениях с present perfect всегда присутствует связь между настоящим и прошедшим:

- a Present perfect continuous употребляется для выражения действия, начавшегося в прошлом и продолжающегося до настоящего времени.



More examples:

I've been working all day.

How long have you been sitting there?

- b** Present perfect continuous также употребляется, когда действие происходило до недавнего прошлого, особенно, когда это действие имеет результат в настоящем.



It's been snowing.

It's been snowing. [Выпал снег.] (Именно сейчас снег не идет, но он лежит на земле).

Have you been painting? [Вы рисовали?] (Сейчас вы не рисуете, но у вас на волосах краска).

- c** Present perfect continuous можно употребить для выражения повторяемых действий или ситуаций в течение периода до настоящего времени (или недавнего прошлого).

I've been having driving lessons for six months.

How long have you been living in Manchester?

EXERCISE 9A

Complete the sentences. Use the present perfect continuous.

Example:

1 *We're tired. We've been working hard all day.*

1 We're tired. We _____ hard all day.

work

2 Sue's French is good. She _____ the language for ten years.

study

3 I'm sorry I'm late _____ you _____ long?

wait

4 I don't know London well. I _____ here for very long.

not | live

5 Simon is a good driver. How long _____ he _____?

drive

6 I must go and see the doctor. I _____ well lately.

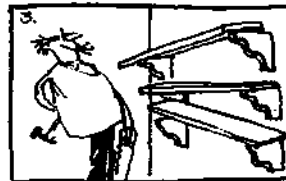
not | feel

EXERCISE 9B

Look at the people in the pictures. What have they been doing?

Example:

1 *She's been repairing the car.*



| | |
|--------|---------------|
| paint | onions |
| chop | on the beach |
| repair | some shelves |
| lie | in the garden |
| put up | the car |
| play | the kitchen |

Note

- Некоторые глаголы, например *know*, *want*, обычно не употребляются в формах времени continuous. См. 27.

10 Present perfect continuous and present perfect simple (Настоящее совершенное длительное и настоящее совершенное простое время)

1 Compare:

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS



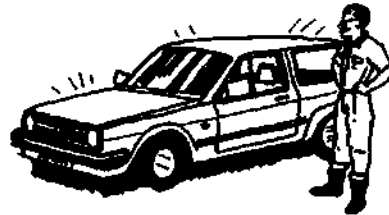
I've been cleaning my car.

Present perfect continuous употребляется, когда действие может быть или не может быть завершено.

More examples:

She's been doing her homework.
[Она выполняет домашнее задание.]
(= Возможно, она выполнила домашнее задание, возможно, нет.)

PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE



I've cleaned my car.

Present perfect simple употребляется для обозначения завершившегося действия.

She's done her homework. [Она выполнила домашнее задание.] (= Она закончила его.)

2 Present perfect continuous употребляется для выражения действия в течение какого-то периода.

I've been walking all morning.

How long have you been having driving lessons?

Present perfect simple употребляется для выражения того, что было достигнуто за определенный промежуток времени.

I've walked six kilometres so far this morning.
How many driving lessons have you had?

3 Present perfect continuous употребляется в ситуациях, более временных (продолжающихся в течение короткого времени).

He's been living there for just a few weeks.
I've been working very hard recently.

Present perfect simple употребляется в ситуациях, более длительных (продолжающихся в течение более длительного времени).

He's always lived there.
You've worked hard all your life.

4 Иногда бывает незначительная разница между этими двумя формами.

I've been living/I've lived in this flat for ten years.
How long has she been working/has she worked for the company?

EXERCISE 10A

Choose the correct form.

Example:

'Can I have a look at your newspaper?' 'Certainly. You can keep it if you like.
~~I've been reading~~/I've read it.'

- 1 They've been **repairing**/They've repaired the road all this week, but they haven't finished it yet.
- 2 I'm very sorry, but I've been **breaking**/I've broken this chair.
- 3 Sally has been **saving**/has saved nearly two thousand pounds so far this year.
- 4 What's the matter? Have you been **losing**/Have you lost something?
- 5 I've always been **working**/I've always worked in the music industry.
- 6 Someone has been **eating**/has eaten my chocolates. There aren't many left.

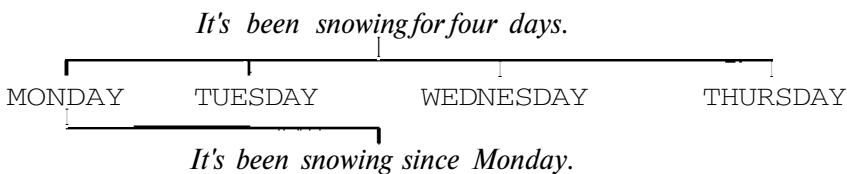
Note

- Некоторые глаголы, например *know*, *own*, обычно не употребляются в формах времени continuous. Например, нельзя сказать *I've been knowing him for years*. СМ. 27.

II Present perfect with *for* and *since* (Настоящее совершенное время *с for* и *since*)

For и *since* часто употребляются с present perfect для выражения действий, продолжающихся в течение периода времени до настоящего (или недавнего прошедшего времени).

Compare:



For употребляется, когда указывается длительность периода действия (например, *four days* [четыре дня]); *since* употребляется, когда указывается начало периода (например, *Monday* [понедельник]).

| <i>for</i> + length of time | <i>since</i> + starting point |
|---|--|
| <i>four hours</i> | <i>2 o'clock</i> |
| <i>three weeks</i> | <i>10 April</i> |
| <i>for nine months</i> | <i>since July</i> |
| <i>twelve years</i> | <i>1961</i> |
| <i>a short time</i> | <i>I was a child</i> |
| <i>I've been here for four hours.</i> | <i>I've been here since 2 o'clock.</i> |
| <i>He's been living in Paris for nine months.</i> | <i>He's been living in Paris since July.</i> |

EXERCISE 11A

Complete the sentences using /or or *since*.

Example:

I've been interested in jazz *since* I left school.

1 Lynne has been the manager of Timeways Travel in London ____ three years.

2 I've lived in Rome ____ I was two.

3 Mr Woods hasn't been feeling well ____ over a month.

4 Sally and her boyfriend Peter have been going out together ____ last winter.

5 I've only been waiting ____ a few minutes.

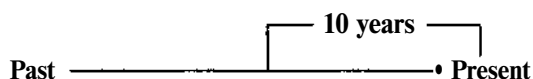
6 He's been in Japan ____ 1986.

12 Present perfect and past simple

(Настоящее совершенное простое и прошедшее простое время)

1 Present perfect всегда предполагает связь между прошедшим и настоящим; в past simple речь идет лишь о прошедшем:

а Present perfect употребляется для выражения действия, начавшегося в прошлом и продолжающегося до настоящего времени.



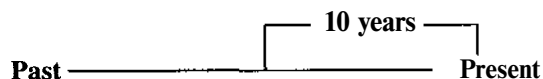
I've lived in London for ten years. [Я живу в Лондоне 10 лет.] (= Я все еще живу в Лондоне.)

More examples:

He has worked in a shop for five years. [Он работает в магазине в течение пяти лет.] (= Он еще и сейчас работает в магазине.)

How long have you been here? [Сколько вы там находитесь?](= Вы еще здесь сейчас.)

Past simple употребляется для выражения действия, начавшегося и закончившегося в прошлом.



I lived in Manchester for ten years. [Я жил в Манчестере 10 лет.] (= Я не живу в Манчестере сейчас.)

He worked in a factory for ten years. [Он работал на фабрике 10 лет.] (= Он не работает на фабрике сейчас.)

How long were you there? [Сколько вы там были?](= Вас там уже нет.)

b Present perfect также употребляется, когда результат прошедшего действия связан с настоящим временем.



I've lost my wallet. [Я потерял **бумажник**.]
(=У меня сейчас нет бумажника.)
Present perfect часто употребляется для сообщения (передачи) 'новостей'.
Someone has stolen my motorbike.

Past simple употребляется, когда результат прошедшего действия не связан с настоящим временем.



I lost my wallet, but I've got it back again now.
Past simple употребляется для уточнения новостей.
I left the bike outside for a few minutes and when I came back, it wasn't there.

2 Когда речь идет об определенном прошедшем времени, например *yesterday, last week, six weeks ago*, всегда употребляется past simple и никогда present perfect.

I lost my wallet yesterday. (Not: ~~*I've lost my wallet yesterday.*~~)
Someone stole my bicycle last week. (Not: ~~*Someone has stolen my bicycle last week.*~~)

Present perfect употребляется, когда речь идет о неопределенном времени, продолжающемся до настоящего периода, например, *ever, never, recently*. Compare:

PRESENT PERFECT

Have you ever seen a ghost?
I've never been to New York.
I've started taking driving lessons recently.

PAST SIMPLE

Did you see your friend yesterday?
I went to London last week.
I started taking driving lessons six weeks ago.

В повседневной речи разговор часто начинается неопределенно с употребления present perfect, а затем, когда имеется в виду определенное время, употребляется past simple.

'*Have you ever been to the United States?*' 'Yes, *I went there in 1985.*' '*Did you go to New York* (= когда вы были там в 1985)?'

I've seen that film. I enjoyed it (= когда я его смотрел) *very much.*

3 Можно употреблять такие слова, как *today, this morning, this afternoon* и др.:

с present perfect, если указанный период времени не завершился.

I've spoken to Peter this morning. [Сегодня утром я разговаривал с Питером.]
(Сейчас еще утро.)

с past simple, если указанный период времени завершился.

I spoke to Peter this morning. [Сегодня утром я разговаривал с Питером.]
(Сейчас может быть полдень, вечер или ночь.)

4 Обычно употребляется past simple, а не present perfect, в вопросах, касающихся того, когда произошло действие.

*When **did** you arrive home last night?* (Not: *When have you **arrived home** last night?*)

13 Present perfect and present tense

EXERCISE 12A

Lynne Carter, the manager of the Timeways Travel company, is interviewing a young man called Paul Morris for a job.

Choose the correct form.

Lynne: Your present company is Sun Travel, isn't it? How long *have you worked/ did you work* there?

Paul: (1) *I've worked/ I worked* for them for two years.

Lynne: I see. And what were you doing before that?

Paul: (2) *I've worked/ I worked* for a student travel company in Spain.

Lynne: Oh, really? How long (3) *have you been/ were you* in Spain?

Paul: For nearly a year. (4) *I've moved/ I moved* back to London from Spain two years ago to join Sun Travel.

Lynne: I see. And do you drive, Paul?

Paul: Yes, I do. (5) *I've had/ I had* a driving licence for **five** years.

Lynne: And have you got your own **car**?

Paul: No, not at the moment. (6) *I've had/ I had* a car in Spain, but (7) *I've sold/ I sold* it before (8) *I've come/ I came* back to Britain.

EXERCISE 12B

Complete the conversations using the present perfect simple or the past simple of the verb in brackets.

1 'I know Sally **Robinson**.' 'Really? How long *have you known* (you | know) **her**?' 'Oh, for quite a long time **now**.' 'When _____ (you | first | meet) **her**?'

2 '_____ (your husband | ever | have) **pneumonia**?' 'Yes, he _____ (have) it twice. He _____ (had) it ten years ago, and once when he _____ (be) a **child**.'

3 (*It's 10 o'clock in the morning*.) '_____ (you | see) Mrs Carter this **morning**?' 'Yes, I _____ (saw) her when I _____ (arrive) in the office, but she _____ (go) out soon **afterwards**.'

4 (*It's the middle of the afternoon*.) I'm really hungry. I _____ (not | have) any breakfast this morning and I _____ (not | have) time to go out for anything to eat this afternoon.

13 Present perfect and present tense

(Настоящее совершенное и настоящее простое время)

Для обозначения длительности действия можно использовать present perfect, но не present continuous или present simple.

*She **has been waiting** for an hour.* (Not: *She is **waiting** for an hour.*)

*I've **lived** here since last year.* (Not: *I live **here** since last year.*)

EXERCISE 13A

Choose the correct form.

Example:

We've been working/ ~~We're working~~ since 9 o'clock.

- 1 *I've been cleaning/I'm cleaning* my flat for the past two hours.
- 2 Look. Can you see Simon over there? *He's been sitting/He's sitting* in the corner.
- 3 'How long *have you been/are* you ill?' 'Since yesterday.'
- 4 *Have you known/Do you know* Sarah for very long?
- 5 *I've been learning/I'm learning* English since last year.
- 6 *They've lived/They live* in London now. *They've been/They're* there for the last six months.

14 Past perfect simple (Прошедшее совершенное простое время)

1 Form

Past perfect simple образуется с помощью *had* + past participle.

| AFFIRMATIVE | | | NEGATIVE | | | QUESTION | | |
|-------------|------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|---------------|------------|-------------|----------------|
| <i>I</i> | | | <i>I</i> | | | | <i>I</i> | |
| <i>you</i> | | | <i>you</i> | | | <i>had</i> | <i>you</i> | |
| <i>he</i> | <i>had</i> | <i>worked</i> | <i>he</i> | <i>had not</i> | <i>worked</i> | | <i>he</i> | <i>worked?</i> |
| <i>she</i> | | | <i>she</i> | | | | <i>she</i> | |
| <i>it</i> | | <i>come</i> | <i>it</i> | | <i>come</i> | | <i>it</i> | <i>come?</i> |
| <i>we</i> | | | <i>we</i> | | | | <i>we</i> | |
| <i>you</i> | | | <i>you</i> | | | | <i>you</i> | |
| <i>they</i> | | | <i>they</i> | | | | <i>they</i> | |

CONTRACTIONS

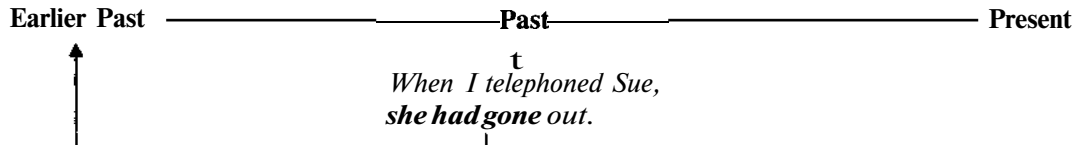
'd = had *hadn't = had not*

Some verbs are 'regular', other verbs are 'irregular':

- Past participle of regular verbs заканчиваются на *-ed*, например, *work* → *worked*. При присоединении к глаголам окончания *-ed* иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, *stop* → *stopped*. См. 188.3, 4, 6. Относительно произношения *-ed* см. 187.2.
- Irregular verbs имеют различные формы past participle, например, *come* → *come*; *see* → *seen*. См. 190.

2 Use

a Когда речь идет о прошедшем времени, иногда мы обращаемся к более раннему времени.



Past perfect (например, *she had gone out*) употребляется для выражения действия, состоявшегося перед другим действием в прошедшем времени (например, *when I telephoned*).

More examples:

*We arrived at the cinema at 8.00, but the film **had started** at 7.30.*

*When I spoke to the woman I realized I **had met** her somewhere before.*

b Past perfect - это прошедшая форма present perfect. Compare:

PRESENT PERFECT

*/ **haven't eaten** all day today, so I was very hungry now.*

PAST PERFECT

*/ **hadn't eaten** all day yesterday, so I was very hungry when I got home.*

c Сравните употребление past perfect и past simple:

*We got to the station at 8.00, but the train **had left** at 7.30.*

*When Sue arrived, we **had had** dinner.*

[Когда прибыла Сью, мы уже поужинали.] (Мы поужинали, а затем прибыла Сью.)

*We got to the station at 7.20 and the train **left** at 7.30.*

*When Sue arrived, we **had** dinner.* [Когда Сью прибыла, мы поужинали.] (Сью прибыла, а затем мы поужинали.)

EXERCISE 14A

Peter arrived late at different places yesterday.
What had happened when he arrived at each place?

Example:

1 *When he arrived at the station, his train had already left.*

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 the station | his train already leave |
| 2 the theatre | the play) already start |
| 3 the post office | it already close |
| 4 the furniture shop | they sell the table he wanted |
| 5 his friend's house | his friend go out |
| 6 the football stadium | the game nearly finish |

EXERCISE 14B

Choose the correct form.

Example:

The office was empty when the police arrived.
The robbers had *left/left*.

- 1 We had just started lunch when the telephone *had rung/rang*.
- 2 When I opened the safe, the money *had disappeared/disappeared*.
- 3 Andrew was late for school yesterday. When he got to the classroom, the lesson *had started/ started*.
- 4 They waited until everyone was ready and then they *had started/started* the meeting.

EXERCISE 14C

Put one verb in each sentence into the past perfect simple and the other verb into the past simple.

Example:

Mario *felt* (feel) very nervous when he first drove in Britain because he *hadn't driven* (not | drive) on the left before.

1 Andrew _____ (do) the test before, so he _____ (find) it very easy.

2 I _____ (not | laugh) at the joke because I _____ (hear) it before.

3 We _____ (leave) the restaurant when we _____ (have) dinner.

4 When I found my wallet I _____ (discover) that somebody _____ (took) the credit cards out of it.

15 Past perfect continuous (Прошедшее совершенное длительное время)

1 Form

Past perfect continuous образуется с помощью *had been + ... -ing*.

| AFFIRMATIVE | | NEGATIVE | | QUESTION | | |
|-------------|-------------------------|----------|-----------------------------|------------|-----|----------------------|
| I | <i>had been working</i> | I | <i>had not been working</i> | <i>had</i> | I | <i>been working?</i> |
| you | | you | | | you | |
| he | | he | | | he | |
| she | | she | | | she | |
| it | | it | | | it | |
| we | | we | | | we | |
| you | | you | | | you | |
| they | they | they | | | | |

Эта форма иногда называется 'past perfect progressive'.

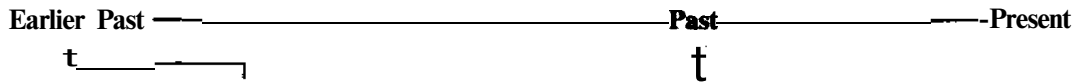
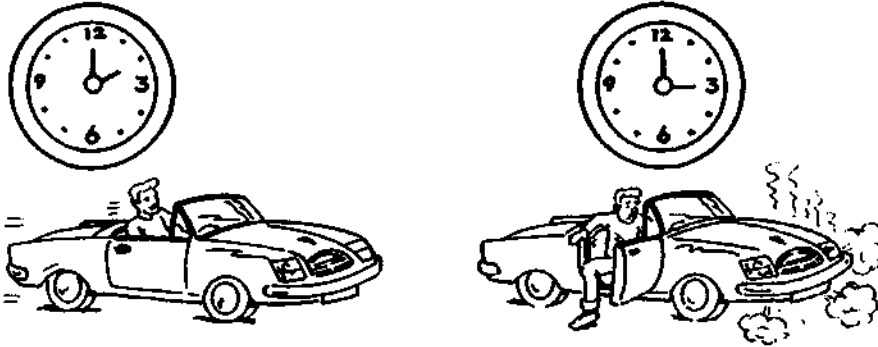
CONTRACTIONS

'd - *had* *hadn't* = *had not*

При присоединении к глаголам окончания *-ing* иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, *stop* → *stopping*. См. 188.3–6.

2 Use

a Когда речь идет о прошедшем времени, иногда мы обращаемся к более раннему времени.



Dave had been driving for an hour when his car broke down.

Past perfect continuous (например, *Dave had been driving for an hour*) употребляется для выражения действия, которое происходило в течение определенного времени в прошлом (например, *when his car broke down*).

More examples:

I'd been walking for about half an hour when it suddenly started to rain.

Mr Woods had been working for 50 years when he finally retired in 1965.

b Past perfect continuous - это прошедшая форма present perfect continuous.

Compare:

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

I've been working hard all day, so I'm very tired now.

PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

I'd been working hard all day, so I was very tired last night.

EXERCISE 15A

Complete the sentences using the past perfect continuous of the verbs in brackets.

Example:

I'd been standing (stand) there for nearly a half an hour when I realized I was at the wrong bus-stop.

1 Maria's sister _____ (study) at university for eight years before she finally passed her exams.

2 'I'm really sorry I was so late last night.' 'That's OK. We _____ (not | wait) long.'

3 The strange thing was that we _____ (just | talk) about ghosts when we heard the noise upstairs.

4 'Robert moved from Manchester to London in 1988.' 'How long _____ (he | live) in Manchester?'

EXERCISE 15B

Join each idea in A with an idea **from B**. Make sentences using the past perfect continuous of the verbs in brackets.

Example:

1 *I felt very cold because I had been standing outside for over two hours.*

| A | B |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1 I felt very cold because | they were lost |
| 2 I (play) tennis so | they were very tired |
| 3 The children's hair was wet because | I finally went to see the doctor |
| 4 I (not feel) well for weeks before | I (stand) outside for over two hours |
| 5 They (travel) all day so | they (swim) in the sea |
| 6 They (drive) for about half an hour when they realized | I was feeling hot and sticky |

Note

– **Некоторые** глаголы, например *know*, *want*, обычно не употребляются в формах времени continuous. См. 27.

16 Future (Будущее время): *will*

1 Form

a *will* + infinitive without *to* (but see b below)

AFFIRMATIVE

| | |
|-------------|------------------|
| / | <i>will work</i> |
| <i>you</i> | |
| <i>he</i> | |
| <i>she</i> | |
| <i>it</i> | |
| <i>we</i> | |
| <i>you</i> | |
| <i>they</i> | |

NEGATIVE

| | |
|-------------|----------------------|
| / | <i>will not work</i> |
| <i>you</i> | |
| <i>he</i> | |
| <i>she</i> | |
| <i>it</i> | |
| <i>we</i> | |
| <i>you</i> | |
| <i>they</i> | |

QUESTION

| | | |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| <i>will</i> | <i>I</i> | <i>work?</i> |
| | <i>you</i> | |
| | <i>he</i> | |
| | <i>she</i> | |
| | <i>it</i> | |
| | <i>we</i> | |
| | <i>you</i> | |
| | <i>they</i> | |

CONTRACTIONS

'll = *will* *won't* = *will not*

b *Will* употребляется со всеми лицами (*/, you, he, they* и др.). Можно также употреблять *shall* вместо *will* с */* и *we*, например, *I/we shall work* (но в повседневной речи обычно используются стяжения *I'll* and *we'll*). Отрицательная форма от *shall* - *shall not* (стяжение: *shan't*).

2 Use

a *Will* употребляется для выражения будущего действия.



Tomorrow will be another cold day in all parts of the country.

More examples:

In the future, machines will do many of the jobs that people do today.

Who do you think will win the football match on Sunday?

*We **won't** arrive home before midnight tonight.*

В будущем действии, часто употребляется *will* со следующими глаголами и выражениями:

think expect believe be sure be afraid hope

I expect they'll be here at around 10 o'clock tomorrow morning.

I'm sure you'll enjoy the film if you go and see it.

Will также употребляется с наречиями вероятности, например, *probably, perhaps, certainly*.

*Martin **will probably** phone us this evening.*

Perhaps I'll see you tomorrow.

b *Will* также употребляется в том случае, когда собираются что-то сделать в момент речи.



'Would you like something to drink?' 'Oh, thank you. I'll have some orange juice.'

'There's someone at the door.' 'Is there? Oh, I'll see who it is.'

'I'm going out shopping.' 'Oh, are you? I'll come with you, then. I need to get some things myself.'

EXERCISE 16A

Derek is 18 years old now.
What will he **be** like in 10 years from now?
How will his life be different then?



Complete what Derek says using *will/won't*.

Example:

1 I hope I'll have a job in 10 years' time.

1 I hope I | have a job in 10 years time.

2 Perhaps I | have a good job.

3 I probably | not | be very rich.

4 I | not | look the same as I do now.

5 I think I | be married.

6 I | probably | have children.

Are these things true for you?

EXERCISE 16B

Complete the sentences using *I'll* or *won't* and the verbs in the box.

| | | | | |
|------|--------|--------|--------|----------|
| go | answer | not go | put on | not have |
| lend | wait | | | |

Example:

I'm tired, I think /7/ go to bed early tonight.

1 'I haven't got any money.' 'Haven't you? Oh, _____ you some if you like.'

2 'The telephone is ringing.' 'Oh, _____ it.'

3 I'm a bit cold. I think _____ on a sweater.

4 'Would you like something to eat?' '_____ anything at the moment, thank you. I'm not very hungry.'

5 'I'm going out for a walk.' 'It's raining.' 'Oh, is it? Well, _____ out now, then, _____ until it's stopped.'

EXERCISE 16C

Peter wants to see Sally. He is talking to her on the telephone. Complete the conversation using *will/won't*.

Peter: Will you be at home this evening, Sally?

Sally: Well, I'm working late. I don't expect I ___1___ until after 9.00, so I ___2___ home until quite late.

Peter: Oh, I see. What about tomorrow? ___3___ (you) free for lunch?

Sally: No, I'm afraid I ___4___ in a meeting at lunchtime.

Peter: What time do you think ___5___ (the meeting) ?

Sally: I'm not sure, but it probably ___6___ before 2.00. Listen, Peter.

Why don't we meet for a coffee after work tomorrow evening?

Peter: What time ___7___ (you) finished tomorrow?

Sally: I ___8___ free by 6.00.

Peter: All right. I ___9___ you at your office at 6.00, then.

Sally: Right. I ___10___ you then.

be
finish
not | be
be
be
end
not | finish
be
be
meet
see

Note

- *Will* также употребляется для выражения: предложения, например: *I'll post this letter for you.* (СМ. 49.1); просьбы, например: *Will you post this letter for me?* (СМ. 48.3); отказа, например: *The window won't open.* (СМ. 52); обещания, например: *I will be careful, I promise.* (СМ. 53); приказа и угрозы, например: *Stop making that noise or I'll scream!* (СМ. 53).

17 Future (Будущее время): *going to*

1 Form

be + going to + infinitive

| AFFIRMATIVE | | NEGATIVE | QUESTION |
|------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>I am</i> | <i>going to work</i> | <i>I am not</i> | <i>am I</i> |
| <i>you are</i> | | <i>you are not</i> | <i>are you</i> |
| <i>he she is</i> | | <i>he she is not</i> | <i>he she is</i> |
| <i>it</i> | | <i>it</i> | <i>it</i> |
| <i>we you are they</i> | | <i>we you are not they</i> | <i>are you they</i> |

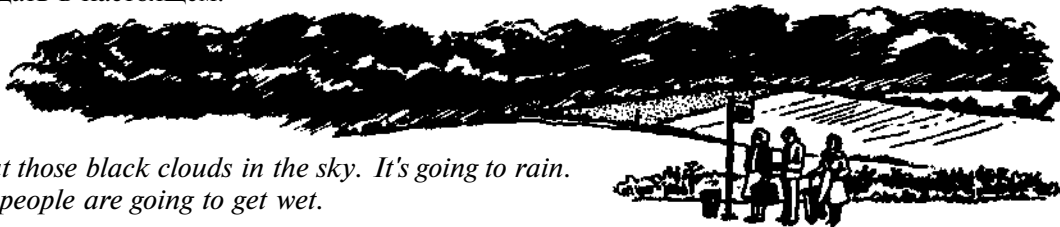
CONTRACTIONS

'm = am
 're = are aren't = are not
 's = is isn't = is not

2 Use

В предложениях с *going to* присутствует связь между будущим и настоящим временем:

- a** *Going to* употребляется для выражения действия в будущем, результаты которого можно наблюдать в настоящем.



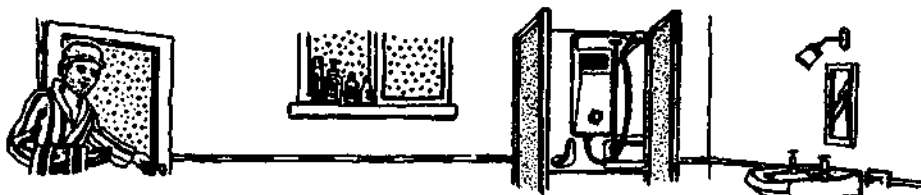
*Look at those black clouds in the sky. It's going to rain.
 Those people are going to get wet.*

More examples:

*Hurry up! It's getting late. You're going to miss your train.
 Look out! That ladder is going to fall!*

В связи с этим в предложениях с *going to* часто речь идет о недалеком будущем.

- b** *Going to* также употребляется для выражения намерения в будущем. *Going to* употребляется в том случае, когда уже решено что-то сделать.



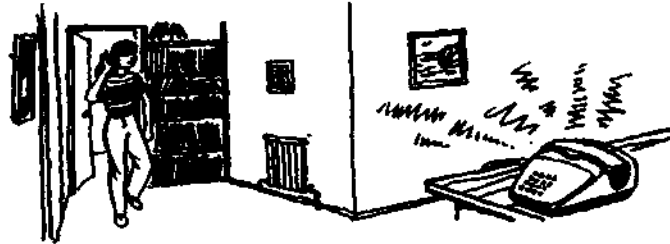
I'm going to have a shower.

More examples:

'Why have you moved all the furniture out of this room?' 'I'm going to clean the carpet.'
'Lynne has just sold her car.' 'Is she going to buy a new one?'

EXERCISE 17A

What is going to happen in the pictures?



Example:

She's going to answer the phone.



EXERCISE 17B

Complete the sentences using *going to* and the verbs in brackets.

Example:

'I've made up my mind I'm going to change (change) my job.' 'What are you going to do (you | do)?' 'I'm not sure yet.'

1 'What ____ (you | wear) at the party on Saturday?' 'I haven't decided yet.'

What about you? ____ (you | wear) your new black dress?

2 'Why have you bought all that wallpaper? What ____ (you | do)?'

'I ____ (decorate) the living room.'

3 He's decided that he ____ (not | leave) school this summer. He ____ (stay) on for another year.

4 'I ____ (buy) a new motorbike.' 'How ____ (you | pay) for it? You haven't got enough money.'

'I ____ (ask) my bank to lend me the money.'

Note

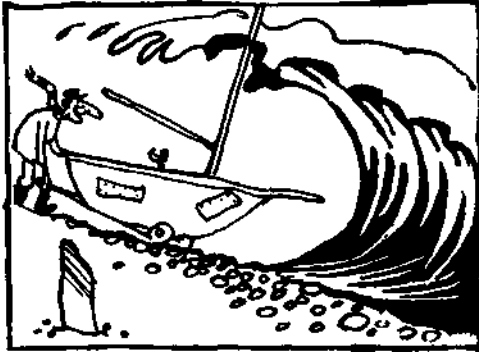
-См. также 18 Future: *will* и *going to*.

-Форма прошедшего времени *was/were + going to* употребляется для выражения 'будущее время в прошедшем', например: / *was going to stay at home last night, but I decided to go out instead.* СМ. 25.

18 Future: *will* and *going to* (Будущее время: *will* и *going to*)

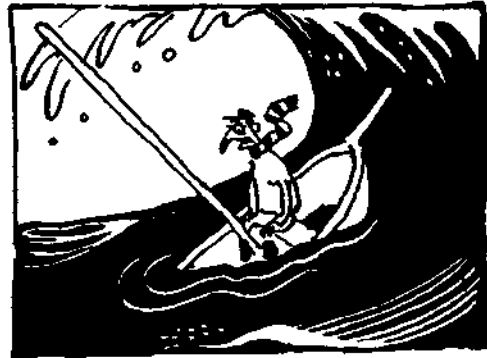
- 1 *Will* и *going to* употребляются для выражения будущего действия, но между ними существуют отличия:

Will употребляется для выражения действия, которое, как считается или предполагается, произойдет в будущем.



That boat doesn't look very safe. It'll sink in that heavy sea.

Going to употребляется для выражения действия в будущем, предпосылки которого имеются в настоящем.



Look at that boat! It's going to sink.



Don't climb up that tree. You'll fall and hurt yourself.



Look out! You're going to fall!

- 2 *Will* и *going to* употребляются для выражения действий, которые мы намереваемся выполнить, но здесь существуют различия:

Will употребляется в том случае, когда принимается решение что-то сделать в момент речи.

'Oh dear! I've spilt some wine on my jacket.' *'Don't worry. I'll clean it for you.'*

What shall I do tomorrow? I know! I'll paint the kitchen.

Going to употребляется в том случае, когда уже принято решение что-то сделать.

'Why have you moved all the furniture out of this room?' 'I'm going to clean the carpet.'

'Why are you putting on those old clothes?' 'I'm going to paint the kitchen.'

EXERCISE 18A

Complete the sentences using *will* or *going to* and the verbs in brackets.

Example:

'What can I do this evening? I know! *I'll go* (go) and see Sue.'

1 'Someone told me that you're moving from London.' 'That's right. I _____ (live) in Manchester.'

2 'Would you like to come to my house this evening?' 'Yes, all right. I _____ (come) at 9 o'clock.'

3 I don't feel very well. I think I _____ (faint).

4 'It's Simon's birthday soon. I've decided to buy him the new Blues Brothers record.' 'Oh, he doesn't like the Blues Brothers any more.' 'Oh, really? Well, I _____ (get) him something to wear.'

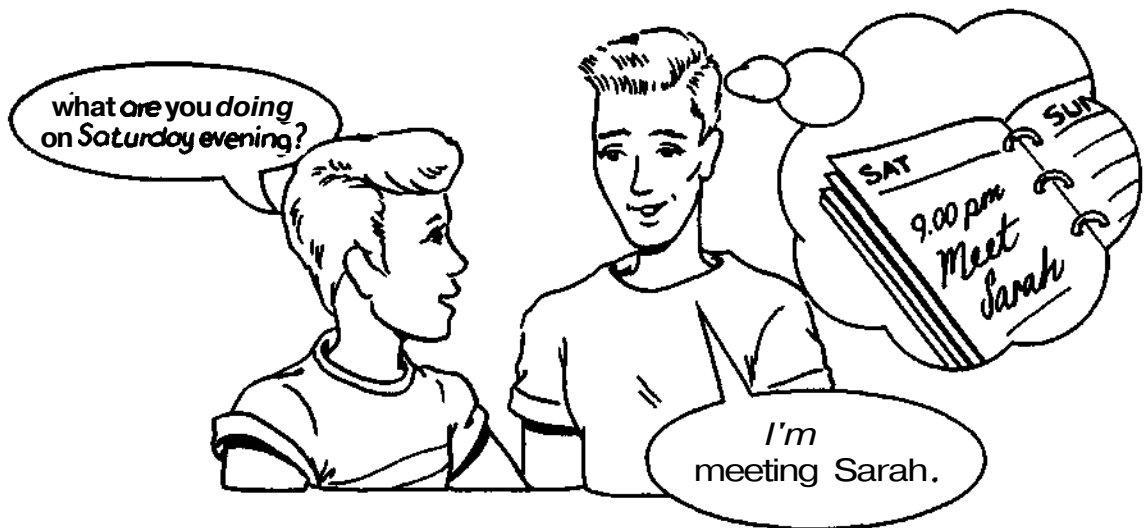
5 Oh, no! Look at those cars! They _____ (crash)!

6 'I could lend you some money if you like.' 'Could you? I _____ (pay) you back on Friday.'

9 Present continuous for the future

(Настоящее длительное время для выражения будущего действия)

Present continuous употребляется для выражения действия, которое уже спланировано или намечено выполнить в будущем.



'What are you doing on Saturday evening?' 'I'm meeting Sarah.'

Sarah is taking an exam on Monday.

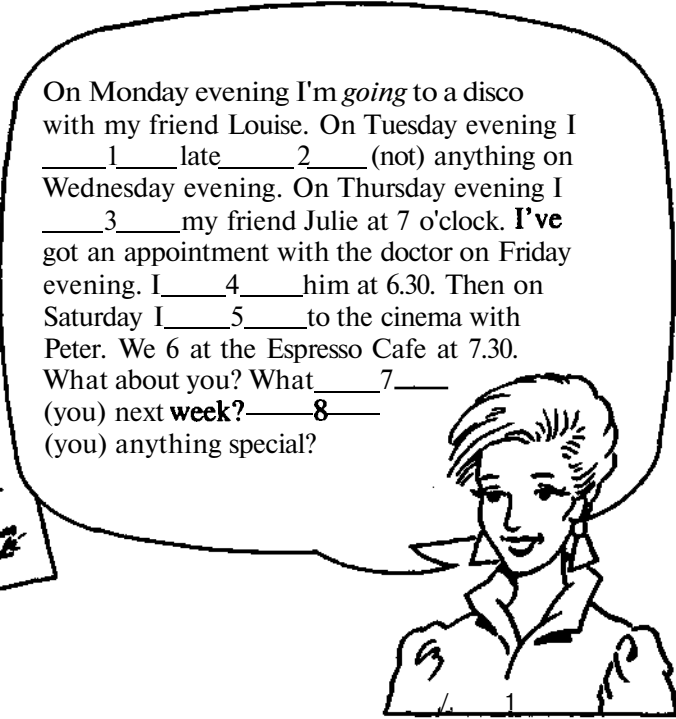
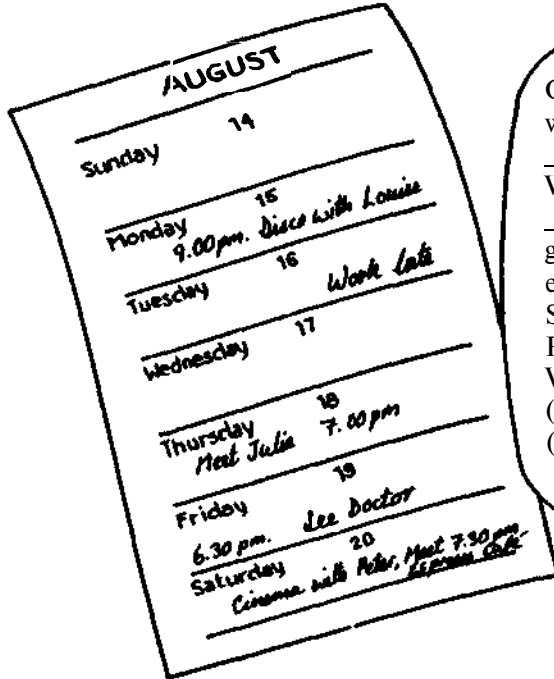
We're visiting some friends in Scotland next weekend.

Когда с этой целью употребляется present continuous, то часто выражается будущее время (например, *on Saturday evening, on Monday, this afternoon, next weekend*).

EXERCISE 19A

Look at Sally's diary for next week.
Then complete what she says she is doing next week.
Use the words in the box.

work meet do go see



Note

– Относительно формы present continuous CM. 1.1.

20 Future: present continuous and *going to*
(Будущее время: настоящее длительное время и *going to*)

- 1** Когда речь идет о действиях, которые уже намечены или спланированы для выполнения в будущем, можно использовать present continuous (см. 19) или *going to* (см. 17).
I'm having lunch with Lynne tomorrow.
I'm going to have lunch with Lynne tomorrow.
- 2** Когда делается прогноз относительно будущего, можно использовать *going to* (или *will*), но не present continuous.
It's going to rain tomorrow. (Нельзя сказать: *It's raining tomorrow.*)

EXERCISE 20A

Complete the sentences using the present continuous or *going to*. Sometimes either structure is possible.

Examples:

I (see) Sarah this afternoon. *I'm seeing Sarah this afternoon. I'm going to see Sarah this afternoon.*

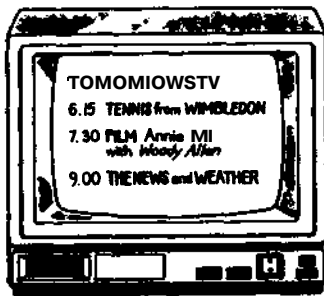
Hurry up! We (miss) our bus. *Hurry up! We're going to miss our bus.*

- 1 It (snow) later tonight.
- 2 She (meet) them tomorrow morning.
- 3 What (you | do) this afternoon?
- 4 Be careful! You (break) that glass.
- 5 He (not | come) next Saturday.
- 6 Look out! You (hurt) yourself with that knife.

21 Present simple for the future (Настоящее простое время для выражения будущего)

Present simple употребляется для выражения событий в будущем, которые являются частью расписания или программы.

Here are some of the programmes on TV tomorrow evening.



'What time does the tennis start tomorrow evening?' 'At 6.15.'
The film starts at 7.30 and finishes at 9.00.

More examples:

What time does your plane leave tomorrow?
Next summer the school holidays begin on July 25th and end on September 10th.

Present simple употребляется таким образом, когда речь идет о чем-то в будущем как факте, плане или договоренности, которые не подлежат изменению.

EXERCISE 21A

Complete the sentences using the present simple of the verbs in brackets.

Example:

Our boat *leaves* (leave) Dover at 2.00 on Friday and *arrives* (arrive) in Calais at 6.00.

- 1 The conference_____ (start) on June 3rd, and_____ (finish) on June 10th.
- 2 We've got plenty of time. Our plane_____ (not | take off) until 9 o'clock.
- 3 Tonight's concert_____ (begin) at 8.00 and it_____ (not | end) until 11.00.
- 4 When_____ (the next train | leave) for Bristol?

**22 Present simple for the future after *when, if*, etc
(Настоящее простое время для выражения будущего после *when, if* и др.)**

Present simple употребляется для выражения будущего времени в придаточных предложениях времени и условий после *when, while, as soon as, after, before, until, if, unless, as/so long as* и *provided/providing (that)*.

| <i>will/won't</i> | present simple |
|--|--|
| <i>I'll buy a newspaper</i> <i>We won't go out</i> <i>We'll go to the beach</i> <i>I'll go to the party</i> | <i>when I go out.</i> <i>until it stops raining.</i> <i>if the weather is nice.</i> <i>provided you go too.</i> |

EXERCISE 22A

Put one verb in each sentence into the present simple and the other verb into the *will/won't* form.

Example:

If I *fail* (fail) the exam, I *ll take* (take) it again.

- 1 When I _____ (see) him I _____ (give) him your message.
- 2 I _____ (buy) a new car as soon as I _____ (have) enough money.
- 3 If the weather _____ (be) nice tomorrow, we _____ (go) sailing.
- 4 I _____ (look after) your cat while you _____ (be) on holiday.
- 5 He (not | do) anything until he _____ (hear) from us.
- 6 The door _____ (not/open) unless you (push) it _____ hard.
- 7 We _____ (play) tennis this evening as long as it _____ (not | rain).
- 8 I _____ (lend) you the money provided you _____ (pay) me back tomorrow.

Note

– Present perfect может также употребляться после *when, if* и др. в том случае, когда первое действие завершится перед вторым, например: *I'll lend you the newspaper when I've finished it.*

23 Future continuous (Будущее длительное время): *will be + ... -ing*

1 Form

a *will be + ... -ing* (but see b below)

| AFFIRMATIVE | | NEGATIVE | | QUESTION | | |
|-------------|------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|-------------|-------------|--------------------|
| <i>I</i> | <i>will be working</i> | <i>I</i> | <i>will not be working</i> | <i>will</i> | <i>I</i> | <i>be working?</i> |
| <i>you</i> | | <i>you</i> | | | <i>you</i> | |
| <i>he</i> | | <i>he</i> | | | <i>he</i> | |
| <i>she</i> | | <i>she</i> | | | <i>she</i> | |
| <i>it</i> | | <i>it</i> | | | <i>it</i> | |
| <i>we</i> | | <i>we</i> | | | <i>we</i> | |
| <i>you</i> | | <i>you</i> | | | <i>you</i> | |
| <i>they</i> | | <i>they</i> | | | <i>they</i> | |

Эта форма иногда называется 'future progressive'.

CONTRACTIONS

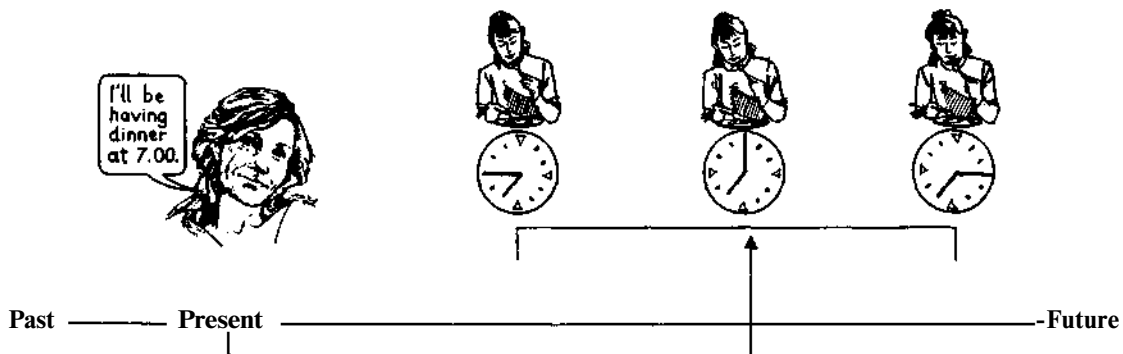
'll = *will* won't = *will not*

При присоединении к глаголам окончания *-ing* иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, *live* → *living*. См. 188.3–6.

b *Shall* может употребляться вместо *will* с *I* и *we*, например, *I/we shall be working* (но в разговорной речи обычно используются стяжения /ʃ/ и *we'll*). Отрицательная форма от *shall* - *shall not* (стяжение: *shan't*).

2 Use

a *Will be + ... -ing* употребляется для выражения действия, которое будет в развитии в определенное время в будущем.



I'll be having dinner at 7.00.

Don't phone me at 8.00. I'll be doing my homework then.

What will you be doing this time next week?

b *Will be + ... -ing* также употребляется для выражения действий в будущем, которые уже спланированы или которые являются частью обычного распорядка.

I'll be driving into town later on. Do you want a lift?

'Would you like me to give Peter a message for you?' 'Oh, I don't want to trouble you.'

'It's no trouble, really. I'll be seeing Peter tomorrow anyway.'

Will be + ... -ing часто употребляется как вежливая форма вопроса о чьих-либо планах, особенно, при желании что-то сделать для **кого-то**.

'Will you be going out this morning?' 'Yes, why?' 'Oh, could you get me a newspaper?'

Will you be using your camera at the weekend?' I wondered if I could borrow it.

Когда *will be + -ing* употребляется с этой целью, то часто предполагается, что отсутствует желание вносить изменения в чьи-то планы.

EXERCISE 23A

Lynne Carter is going from London to Manchester on business tomorrow.

Look at **Lynne's** plans.

What will Lynne be doing at these times tomorrow?

| | |
|---------------|------------------------------------|
| 8.00 - 8.55 | Fly to Manchester. |
| 10.00 - 12.00 | Visit the ABC fraud company. |
| 13.00 - 14.30 | Have lunch with Mary and Ron King. |
| 15.00 - 16.00 | Visit Derek Hall. |
| 16.15 - 16.45 | Take a taxi to the airport. |
| 17.15 - 18.05 | Fly back to London. |

Example:

8.30

At 8.30 tomorrow she 'll be flying to Manchester.

1 11.00 2 13.30 3 15.30

4 16.30 5 17.30

EXERCISE 23B

Complete the sentences in A using the *will be + -ing* form. Find a question in B to go with each sentence.

Example:

1 *I'll be going past the post office. Shall I post your letter?*

A

1 I ____ (go) past the post office.

2 ____ (you | speak) to Robert?

3 I ____ (not | use) my car tonight.

4 We ____ (get) some concert tickets.

5 When ____ (you | visit) Sue again?

6 ____ (you | drive) into town today?

B

Would you like to borrow it?

Shall we get one for you?

Can you give her something?

Could I have a lift?

Shall I post your letter?

Can you give him a message?

24 Future perfect (Будущее совершенное время): *will have* + past participle

1 Form

a *will have* + past participle (but see b below)

| AFFIRMATIVE | | | NEGATIVE | | | QUESTION | | | |
|-------------|-----------|----------|----------|---------------|----------|----------|------|------|-----------|
| I | | | I | | | will | I | | |
| you | will have | finished | you | will not have | finished | | you | have | finished? |
| he | | gone | he | | gone | | he | | gone? |
| she | | | she | | | | she | | |
| it | | | it | | | | it | | |
| we | | | we | | | | we | | |
| you | | | you | | | | you | | |
| they | | | they | | | | they | | |

CONTRACTIONS

'll = *will* won't = *will not*

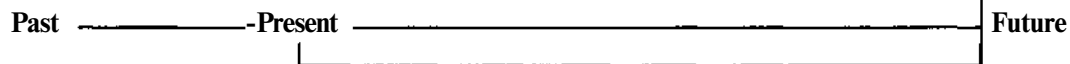
Some verbs are 'regular', other verbs are 'irregular':

- Past participle of regular verbs заканчиваются на *-ed*, например, *finish* → *finished*. Когда к глаголу присоединяется *-ed*, иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, *stop* → *stopped*. См. 188.3, 4, 6. Относительно произношения *-ed* см. 187.2.
- Irregular verbs имеют различные формы past participle, например, *go* → *gone*; *be* → *been*. См. 190.

b *Shall* может употребляться вместо *will* с / и *we*, например, *I/we shall have finished* (но в разговорной речи обычно используются стяжения *I'll* и *we'll*). Отрицательная форма *shall* – *shall not* (стяжения *shan't*).

2 Use

Will have + past participle может употребляться для выражения действия, которое завершится к определенному времени в будущем (но не позже этого времени).



Когда употребляется эта конструкция, речь идет о будущем времени, и наши взоры как бы обращены с точки зрения будущего времени, чтобы выразить завершение действия.

I'll have finished dinner by 8.00.

I'll have worked here for a year next September.

EXERCISE 24A

What will life be like in the year **2100**? Complete the sentences using the *will have* + past participle form.

Example:

By 2100, the world's population *will have increased* (increase) to around 30,000 million.

- 1 Life_____ (become) more automated by then.
- 2 Computers_____ (take over) many of the jobs that people do today.
- 3 The earth's supplies of oil, coal and gas_____ (run out).
- 4_____ (scientists | find) other sources of energy?
- 5 How_____ education_____ (change) ?
- 6_____ (we | find) a way to feed all the people in the world?

Note

-Возможна также форма continuous: *will have been* + ... *-ing*, например: *They'll be tired when they arrive. They'll have been travelling all day.*

25 Future in the past (Будущее время в прошедшем): *was/were going to*

Was/were going to + infinitive можно употреблять для выражения действия, спланированного в прошлом для будущего.



Future → **Past** ————— **Present** ————— **Future**

They were going to get married, but in the end they changed their minds.

Обратите внимание, что когда используется эта конструкция, то часто имеется в виду, что спланированное будущее действие не произошло.

/ was going to stay at home last night, but I decided to go out instead.

We were going to eat at the Italian restaurant, but it was full, so we ate somewhere else.

EXERCISE 25A

Join each idea in A with an idea from B. Make sentences using *was/were going to* and the verbs in brackets.

Example:

1 / *was going to take a taxi home last night, but I didn't have enough money, so I had to walk.*

| A | B |
|---|--|
| 1 I (take) a taxi home last night, | but it rained all afternoon, so we stayed at home. |
| 2 We (write) to them when we were on holiday, | but my boss offered me more money, so I decided to stay. |
| 3 She (drive) to Scotland last weekend, | but I didn't have enough money, so I had to walk. |
| 4 We (play) tennis yesterday afternoon, | but she had seen it before, so she went to bed early. |
| 5 She (watch) the film on TV last night, | but her car broke down, so she went by train. |
| 6 I (change) my job last year. | but we changed our minds and phoned them instead. |

Note

- Иногда можно также выразить future in the past с помощью *would*, например, / *was very surprised you failed the exam. I thought you would pass easily.*

26 Continuous forms with *always* (Формы длительного времени с *always*)

1 *Always* может употребляться с continuous или past continuous в значении 'слишком часто'.

He's always saying stupid things.

Our neighbours are always having arguments.

She was always crying when she was a baby.

С помощью такого употребления *always* выражается гнев или раздражение (то, что случается слишком часто).

2 *Always* обычно обозначает 'во всех случаях'. В этом значении *always* употребляется с формами простых, а не длительных времен. Compare:

***always* with simple forms**

She always comes to work at 8.30.

I always pay my rent by cheque.

They always had dinner at 8 o'clock.

***always* with continuous forms**

She's always coming to work late.

I'm always paying for you when we go out.

Why don't you pay sometimes?

They were always having arguments.

Обратите внимание, что *always* следует перед смысловым глаголом (например, *she always comes*), но после вспомогательного глагола *be* (например, *she's always coming*).

- 3 Когда форма continuous употребляется для выражения чего-то, что происходит слишком часто, вместо *always* можно употреблять **слова** *forever* и *continually*.

You're forever losing things.

He's continually saying stupid things.

- 4 *Always* не употребляется лишь с формой continuous с отрицательным оттенком (для выражения очень частых действий). Эта конструкция также употребляется, когда что-то происходит чаще, чем ожидается.

She's always helping other people.

I'm always meeting Maria in the park. (by accident)

EXERCISE 26A

Complete the sentences using *always* and the present continuous or past continuous of the verbs in brackets.

Examples:

He's a really miserable man. **He's always complaining** (complain) about something.

When I was a child, my sister **was always teasing** (tease) me.

- 1 Simon is very untidy. He _____ (leave) his clothes lying on the bathroom floor.
- 2 When we were children, my brother was bigger than me and he _____ (hit) me.
- 3 My sister really makes me angry. She _____ (borrow) my things without asking me.
- 4 My memory is getting very bad these days. I _____ (forget) things.
- 5 Our old car was very unreliable. It _____ (break down).
- 6 My parents are very lucky. They _____ (win) prizes in competitions.

27 Verbs not used in the continuous (Глаголы, не употребляющиеся в формах длительного времени)

- 1 Некоторые глаголы (например, *like*, *understand*) обычно употребляются лишь в формах простых, а не длительных времен. Можно сказать / *like* or *she didn't understand*, но нельзя сказать *I'm liking* or *she wasn't understanding*.

Ниже приведены некоторые из наиболее важных глаголов, которые обычно не употребляются в формах continuous:

а Глаголы мышления

| | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| <i>think</i> [полагать] | <i>believe</i> | <i>understand</i> | <i>know</i> |
| <i>see</i> [понимать] | <i>recognize</i> | <i>suppose</i> | <i>remember</i> |
| <i>imagine</i> | <i>forget</i> | <i>mean</i> | <i>realize</i> |

I think you're right. (Not: ~~I'm thinking~~ ...)

Do you know Billy Palmer? (Not: Are you ~~knowing~~ ... ?)

She ~~didn't~~ understand what you said. (Not: ~~She wasn't understanding~~ ...)

b "Чувственные" глаголы

| | | | | | | |
|-------------|----------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| <i>like</i> | <i>dislike</i> | <i>hate</i> | <i>love</i> | <i>prefer</i> | <i>want</i> | <i>wish</i> |
|-------------|----------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|

I like this music. (Not: ~~*I'm liking...*~~)

Do you want to go now? (Not: ~~*Are you wanting... ?*~~)

c Глаголы восприятия

| | | | | |
|------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|
| <i>see</i> | <i>hear</i> | <i>smell</i> | <i>taste</i> | <i>feel</i> |
|------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|

We heard someone outside. (Not: ~~*We were hearing...*~~)

This spaghetti tastes delicious. (Not: ~~*This spaghetti is tasting...*~~)

d Другие глаголы

| | | | | |
|------------------------|-------------|------------------|----------------|-------------|
| <i>have</i> [обладать] | <i>own</i> | <i>belong to</i> | <i>owe</i> | <i>need</i> |
| <i>include</i> | <i>cost</i> | <i>contain</i> | <i>weigh</i> | |
| <i>sound</i> | <i>be</i> | <i>seem</i> | <i>deserve</i> | |

How long has Sally had her motorbike? (Not: ~~*How long has Sally been having... ?*~~)
/ *weigh 70 kilos.* (Not: ~~*I'm weighing...*~~)

We were at home last night. (Not: ~~*We were being...*~~)

2 Но обратите внимание, что некоторые из вышеперечисленных глаголов имеют более одного значения; эти глаголы можно употреблять в формах continuous, когда они описывают действия. Compare:

SIMPLE USES

I think you're right. (*think* = считать, полагать)

I've had my car for six months. (*have* = иметь, обладать)

Do you see what I mean? (*see* = понимать)

CONTINUOUS USES

Ssh! I'm thinking. (*think* = думать)

I've been having lunch. (*have* = принимать)

Are you seeing the doctor tomorrow? (*see* = посещать)

Сравните также употребление *be* с формами simple и continuous tenses:

He's stupid. (вообще)

He's being stupid. [Он сейчас ведет себя глупо.]

3 *Can* и *could* часто употребляются с глаголами восприятия: *see, hear, smell, taste, feel* и некоторыми глаголами мышления, например, *understand, remember*.

I can see you.

We could hear someone outside.

4 Сравните *hear, see* и *listen, look, watch*.

Когда мы слышим (*hear*) или видим (*see*), то это не всегда преднамеренные действия и обычно эти глаголы не употребляются в формах continuous.

When I was in the garden I heard the telephone ring.

Когда мы слушаем (*listen*), смотрим (*look*) или наблюдаем (*watch*), то это преднамеренные действия и эти глаголы можно употреблять в формах continuous.

Ssh! I'm listening to the radio.

*They **were** watching TV last night.*

5 Глаголы физического чувства, например *feel, ache* и *hurt*, могут употребляться и в формах simple continuous tenses.

*I am **feeling**/I **feel** ill.*

*My head is **aching**/My head **aches**.*

EXERCISE 27A

Choose the correct form.

Example:

She says she didn't take the money, but / **don't believe**/I'm not **believing** her.

1 You're very quiet. What do you **think/are you thinking** about?

2 What do you **think/are you thinking** about my idea?

3 How long **has Simon known/has Simon been knowing** Maria?

4 What **does this word mean/is this word meaning**?

5 **Did you hear/Were you hearing** the news?

6 **You don't watch/You aren't watching** the TV at the moment. Why don't you switch it off?

7 I'm sorry, but / **didn't remember/I wasn't remembering** to get your newspaper when I went shopping.

8 **Do you like/Are you liking** this painting?

9 **She has always wanted/She has always been wanting** to be a doctor.

10 The man was a stranger to me. / **had never seen/I had never been seeing** him before.

Note

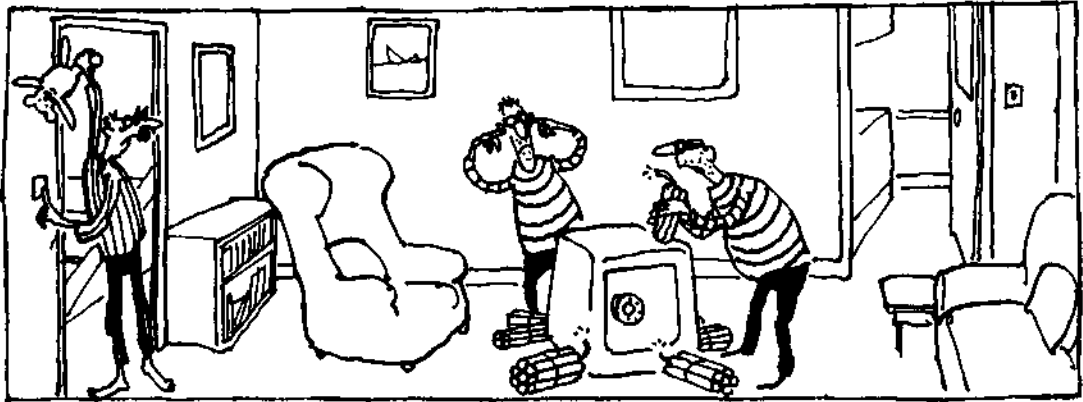
- Глаголы, которые не употребляются в continuous, могут иметь окончание *-ing* и выступать, например, как подлежащее: *Knowing how to drive is very useful* и после предлогов, например: *I'm looking forward to having a car of my own*.

28 Review of the present and the past (Обзор прошедших и настоящих времен)

EXERCISE 28A

Complete the sentences using a suitable present or past form of the verbs in brackets.

- (i) Maria Fernandez is Spanish. She *lives* (live) in Madrid, where she ____1____ (work) for an export company. She ____2____ (be) with this company for two years now. At the moment she ____3____ (study) English on a one-month intensive course in London. She ____4____ (be) in London for one week now. She ____5____ (arrive) there last Saturday. This is not Maria's first time in Britain. She ____6____ (be) there twice before.
- (ii) I woke up when I ____1____ (hear) a noise downstairs. I ____2____ (get) out of bed quietly because my wife ____3____ (still | sleep) and ____4____ (go) to the top of the stairs. It was dark, but I could see two men downstairs in the living room. They ____5____ (try) to open the safe. When I ____6____ (switch on) the light, the two men ____7____ (run) into the kitchen and ____8____ (escape) out of the back door. Then, before I ____9____ (have) a chance to do anything, I ____10____ (hear) a police car pull up outside the house. A neighbour of mine ____11____ (see) the men breaking into my house and ____12____ (phone) for the police.



EXERCISE 28B

Choose the correct form.

- (i) It's 6.30 in the evening and Sally has just come home. 'Simon is in the kitchen.

Sally: Hi, Simon. Something *smells/is smelling* nice. What (1) *do you cook/are you cooking?*

Simon: (2) */ make/I'm making* some onion soup. Would you like some?

Sally: No, thanks. I'm not hungry at the moment. (3) *I've just had/I just have* something to eat in town.

Simon: Oh? What (4) *did you have/do you have?*

Sally: I (5) *I've met/I met* Peter at 5.00 and (6) *we were going/we went* to Alfredo's for a *pizza*. Can I just taste the soup? (7) *It's looking/It looks* delicious. Umm! Very good. I think it's the best onion soup (8) *I've ever tasted/I've ever been tasting!*

(ii) **Andrew's** friend, **Les**, has bought a new bicycle.

Les: Hi, Andrew. (1) *Do you like/Are you liking* my new bike?

Andrew: Yes, very much! I didn't know you'd bought a bike. How long (2) *have you had/did you have it?*

Les: Oh, (3) *I've only had/I've only been having* it for a few days. (4) */ bought/I've bought* it last weekend.

Andrew: How much (5) *did it cost/has it cost?*

Les: £120. (6) *I'd been saving/I'm saving* for over a year to buy it.

(iii) Mrs Wood has hurt her arm. She is at the **doctor's**.

Doctor: Does your arm hurt when you move it, Mrs Woods?

Mrs Woods: Yes, a little. (1) *It's hurting/It's been hurting* me for about a week now. (2) *I fell/I was falling* off a ladder when (3) */ cleaned/I was cleaning* the windows at home last Tuesday. (4) *Are you thinking/Do you think* that (5) *I've broken/I've been breaking* my arm, doctor?

Doctor: No, (6) *you aren't breaking/haven't broken* it, Mrs Woods. But I think you should go to hospital for an **X-ray**.

29 Review of the future (Обзор будущих времен)

EXERCISE 29A

Choose the correct form.

Example:

I can't go to the beach this afternoon. *I'll play/I'm playing* tennis.

1 *It's raining/It's going to rain* tomorrow.

2 *Do you do/Are you doing* anything this evening?

3 I'll write to you when */ arrive/I'll arrive* in Brazil.

4 I feel terrible. I think *I'll be/I'm going to be* sick.

5 'I've got wine or beer. Which would you like?' 'Oh, thank you. *I'll have/I'm going to have* beer, please.'

6 If the weather *is/will be* nice this afternoon, we'll have a picnic.

7 'What are you doing with that ladder?' 'I'll *repair/I'm going to repair* the roof.'

8 'It's raining outside. Would you like to borrow an umbrella?' 'Oh, thank you. *I'll bring/I'm going to bring* it back tomorrow.'

9 We're going on holiday next Monday. This time next week *we'll be lying/we'll lie* on a beach in Turkey.

10 Ben and Patty Crawford are on holiday in Europe. *They'll have visited/They'll be visiting* seven countries by the time they get home to Canada at the end of the month.

30 Imperative and *let's* (Повелительное наклонение и *let's*)

1 Повелительное наклонение

- a Imperative употребляется для различных целей, например, отдавать приказы, делать предложения, запросы и предупреждения.

Stop!

Have some more coffee.

*Tell your boss you **can't** work late tonight.*

Help me with these bags, please.

Look out! Be careful.



- b Imperative имеет ту же форму, что и инфинитив без *to*.

Sit down.

Open the window.

- c Отрицательная форма imperative образуется с помощью *don't/donot*.

Don't sit down.

Don't open the window.

*Do **not** feed the animals.* (например, надпись в зоопарке)

- d Для создания более усиленной формы imperative нужно перед ним поставить *do*. Это делается, например, когда необходимо быть вежливым или когда подчеркивается нетерпение, нетерпеливость.

Do sit down.

Do stop making that noise!

- e Imperative обычно не имеет подлежащего, но можно использовать существительное или местоимение, для того чтобы уточнить, к кому обращаются.

Andrew shut the door, please.

Have some more coffee, Kate.

Sit down, everybody.

- f После imperative можно употреблять краткие общие вопросы *will/won't/would you* и *can/can't/could you* ?

*Shut the door, **will** you?*

*Sit down, **won't** you?*

Help me with these bags, could you?

2 *Let's*

- a *Let's* (= *let us*) + infinitive без *to* употребляется в качестве первого лица множественного числа повелительного наклонения для внесения предложений.

We're late. Let's hurry.

'What shall we do this evening?' 'Let's stay at home.'

- b Отрицательную форму можно образовать с помощью *let's not* или *don't let's*.

*Let's not wait. /**Don't** let's wait.*

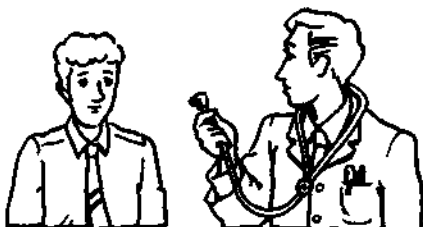
Некоторые считают, что форма *let's not* является более 'правильной'.

- c** Do перед *let's* можно употреблять для эмпазы.
Do *let's hurry.*
- d** После *let's* можно употреблять краткий общий вопрос *shall we?*
Let's go to the cinema, shall we?

EXERCISE 30A

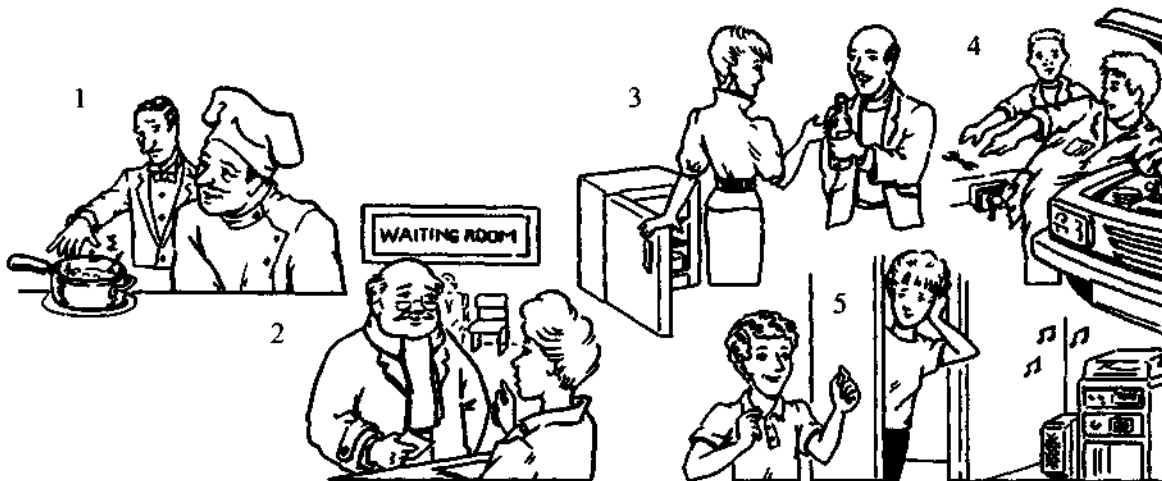
What are these people saying? Find the words in the box.

Example:



| | |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| Put | that! It's hot. |
| Take off | me the spanner. |
| Do turn | — your shirt, please. |
| Please take | that music down, Andrew! |
| Don't touch | a seat, Mr Woods. |
| Pass | this in the fridge, could you? |

Take off your shirt, please.



EXERCISE 30B

You are with a friend. Reply to your friend by making suggestions. Use *Let's* and the words in the box.

Example:

Friend: 'I'm hungry.' You: '*Let's have something to eat.*'

- 1 'I'd like to see a film.'
- 2 'I don't feel like waiting for the bus.'
- 3 'I'm cold.'
- 4 'It's Sue's birthday soon.'
- 5 'It's raining hard outside.'

| | |
|-------|------------------|
| have | a taxi |
| buy | in this evening |
| take | something to eat |
| light | her a present |
| go | a fire |
| stay | to the cinema |

1 Be (БЫТЬ)

1 Form

Present form of *be*

AFFIRMATIVE

| | |
|-------------|------------|
| <i>I</i> | <i>am</i> |
| <i>you</i> | <i>are</i> |
| <i>he</i> | <i>is</i> |
| <i>she</i> | <i>is</i> |
| <i>it</i> | |
| <i>we</i> | |
| <i>you</i> | <i>are</i> |
| <i>they</i> | |

NEGATIVE

| | |
|-------------|----------------|
| <i>I</i> | <i>am not</i> |
| <i>you</i> | <i>are not</i> |
| <i>he</i> | |
| <i>she</i> | <i>is not</i> |
| <i>it</i> | |
| <i>we</i> | |
| <i>you</i> | <i>are not</i> |
| <i>they</i> | |

QUESTION

| | |
|------------|--------------|
| <i>am</i> | <i>I?</i> |
| <i>are</i> | <i>you ?</i> |
| | <i>he?</i> |
| <i>is</i> | <i>she?</i> |
| | <i>it?</i> |
| | <i>we?</i> |
| <i>are</i> | <i>you?</i> |
| | <i>they?</i> |

CONTRACTIONS

'm = am

're = are

's = is

aren't = are not

isn't = is not

Past form of *be*

AFFIRMATIVE

| | |
|-------------|-------------|
| <i>I</i> | <i>was</i> |
| <i>you</i> | <i>were</i> |
| <i>he</i> | |
| <i>she</i> | <i>was</i> |
| <i>it</i> | |
| <i>we</i> | |
| <i>you</i> | <i>were</i> |
| <i>they</i> | |

NEGATIVE

| | |
|-------------|-----------------|
| <i>I</i> | <i>was not</i> |
| <i>you</i> | <i>were not</i> |
| <i>he</i> | |
| <i>she</i> | <i>was not</i> |
| <i>it</i> | |
| <i>we</i> | |
| <i>you</i> | <i>were not</i> |
| <i>they</i> | |

QUESTION

| | |
|-------------|--------------|
| <i>was</i> | <i>I?</i> |
| <i>were</i> | <i>you ?</i> |
| | <i>he?</i> |
| <i>was</i> | <i>she?</i> |
| | <i>it?</i> |
| | <i>we?</i> |
| <i>were</i> | <i>you?</i> |
| | <i>they?</i> |

CONTRACTIONS

wasn't = was not

weren't = were not

Use

Be употребляется для получения и предоставления информации о людях и предметах.

My name is Maria. I'm from Spain.

Is Ken ready No, he isn't.

'Were you at home last night?' 'No, I wasn't. I was at the cinema.'

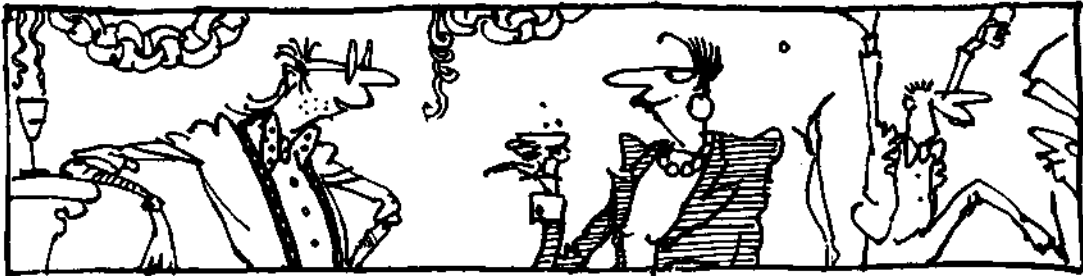
Anna Pavlova was a famous Russian dancer.

EXERCISE 31A

Complete the conversations using the words in the box.

| | |
|-----------|------------------|
| am ('m) | am not ('m not) |
| are ('re) | are not (aren't) |
| is ('s) | is not (isn't) |

(i) James is at a party. He has just seen his friend Rosie.



James: Hello, Rosie. How *are* you?

Rosie: Oh, hello, James. I 1 fine, thanks. How 2 you?

James: I 3 too bad, thank you.

(a few moments later)

James: Who 4 that girl over there? Do you know her?

Rosie: Yes, her name 5 Carla. She 6 Italian.

James: 7 she a student at the college?

Rosie: No, she 8.

(ii) Sally is waiting outside the bus station. Her friend Peter is late.

Peter: Hello, Sally. Sorry 1 I very late?

Sally: Yes, you 2.

Peter: What 3 the time?

Sally: It 4 almost half past seven.

Peter: Really? Oh, I 5 sorry, Sally 6 you angry?

Sally: No, I 7 angry, but I 8 very hungry. Let's go for something to eat.

(iii) Mr and Mrs Ash are from Canada. They have just arrived in England. They are speaking to a customs officer at Heathrow Airport in London.

Officer: Where 1 you from?

Mrs Ash: We 2 from Canada.

Officer: 3 you here on holiday?

Mrs Ash: Yes, we 4.

Officer: 5 this your first visit to England?

Mrs Ash: Well, it 6 my husband's first visit, but I've been here before.

Officer: I see. 7 these your suitcases?

Mrs Ash: Yes, they 8.

Officer: And what about this bag? 9 this yours, too?

Mrs Ash: No, it 10.

EXERCISE 31B

There was a robbery in London at 10 o'clock last night.
A police inspector is interviewing Eddie Cooper about the robbery.



Complete the conversation. Use *was* and *were*.

Inspector: *Were* you in London last night, Cooper?

Cooper: Yes, I 1

Inspector: Where 2 you at 10 o'clock last night?

Cooper: At 10 o'clock? I 3 in a pub called The Bell.

Inspector: And what about your friends Jack Callaghan and Frankie Dobbs?
4 they in the pub with you?

Cooper: No, they 5 n't, Inspector.

Inspector: Where 6 they, then?

Cooper: I don't know where they 7, but they 8 n't with me.

Inspector: 9 you on your own in The Bell?

Cooper: No, I 10 n't. My girlfriend Diana 11 with me.

Inspector: And 12 she with you all evening?

Cooper: Yes, she 13

Note

–**Относительно** *there + be*, eg, *There's a bank in West Street*, см. 32.

–*Be* также употребляется как вспомогательный глагол в формах continuous, например: *He's working* (present continuous), *He was working* (past continuous); и с *going to*, например: *He's going to work*. Относительно форм continuous см. 1, 5, 9, 15, 23; относительно *going to* см. 17, 20. *Be* также употребляется как вспомогательный глагол в страдательном залоге, например: *It was made in Japan*. См. 59–60.

32 *There is, there are* (Конструкция *There is, there are*)

- 1** Когда речь идет о чем-то существующем, обычно предложение начинается с *there + be*, а подлежащее ставится после *be*.

There is a bank in West Street. (We do not normally say: *A bank is in West Street.*)

Эта конструкция употребляется с 'неопределенными' подлежащими (eg, *a man, some letters, anybody*).

There's a man at the door.

There are some letters for you.

'*Is there anybody at home?*' 'No, there isn't.'

2 Эта конструкция может употребляться с различными формами *be*. Например:

There is a bank in West Street. (present tense)

There was a telephone call for you last night. (past tense)

There has been an accident. (present perfect)

There will be a lot of people at the party. (will form) etc (и др.)

Обратите внимание, что если подлежащее во множественном числе, *be* также принимает форму множественного числа. Compare:

There's a man at the door.

There was a telephone call for you last night.

There has been an accident.

There are some men at the door.

There were two telephone calls for you last night.

There have been a lot of accidents recently.

3 Compare *there is/are* and *it is/they are*:

There + be употребляется для выражения того, что что-то существует; личное местоимение *eg, it, they + be* (или другой глагол) употребляется для сообщения больших подробностей.

There's a letter for you. It's from Australia.

'There's a man at the door.' 'It's Mr Davis.'

There are some biscuits in the kitchen. They're in the cupboard.

EXERCISE 32A

Complete the sentences using *there* and the verb forms in the box.

is are was were has been will be

Example:

There was a terrible accident in Western Road yesterday.

- 1 Look _____ a policeman over there. Can you see him?
- 2 How many people _____ at the party last night?
- 3 I think _____ some snow later this evening.
- 4 Excuse me _____ a post office near here?
- 5 _____ six hotels in this street ten years ago, now _____ only two.
- 6 _____ a lot of cold weather recently.

EXERCISE 32B

Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

there it they is are

Example:

'Is there a police station near here?' 'Yes, there is. It's in East Street.'

- 1 _____ a good programme on TV this evening _____ about the history of pop music.
- 2 _____ some envelopes in my bedroom. _____ on my desk.
- 3 '_____ any beer in the kitchen?' 'Yes, _____ in the fridge.'
- 4 '_____ a man waiting outside. Who _____?' '_____ Jim Brown.'
- 5 'Look! _____ a light on in my bedroom!' '_____ somebody in there.'

53 *Have and have got (Иметь)*

- 1 В британском варианте английского языка часто употребляется *have got* вместо *have* в значении 'иметь, обладать'.

I've got a new camera.

*I **haven't** got any paper.*

Have you got a pen ?

He's got brown eyes and black hair.

I have a new camera.

*I **don't** have any paper.*

Do you have a pen ?

He has brown eyes and black hair.

В этих случаях *have got* имеет точно такое же значение, как и *have*; *got* здесь - 'пустое' слово. *Have got* более неформальное; оно очень часто употребляется в разговорной речи и, например, в письмах к друзьям.

2 Form

a Present form of *have got*

AFFIRMATIVE

| | |
|-------------|-----------------|
| <i>I</i> | <i>have got</i> |
| <i>you</i> | |
| <i>he</i> | <i>has got</i> |
| <i>she</i> | |
| <i>it</i> | |
| <i>we</i> | <i>have got</i> |
| <i>you</i> | |
| <i>they</i> | |

NEGATIVE

| | |
|-------------|---------------------|
| <i>I</i> | <i>have not got</i> |
| <i>you</i> | |
| <i>he</i> | <i>has not got</i> |
| <i>she</i> | |
| <i>it</i> | |
| <i>we</i> | <i>have not got</i> |
| <i>you</i> | |
| <i>they</i> | |

QUESTION

| | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| <i>have</i> | <i>I</i> | <i>got?</i> |
| | <i>you</i> | |
| <i>has</i> | <i>he</i> | |
| | <i>she</i> | |
| | <i>it</i> | |
| <i>have</i> | <i>we</i> | |
| | <i>you</i> | |
| | <i>they</i> | |

CONTRACTIONS

've got = have got haven't got = have not got
's got = has got hasn't got = has not got

b Present form of *have* (1)

AFFIRMATIVE

| | |
|-------------|-------------|
| <i>I</i> | <i>have</i> |
| <i>you</i> | |
| <i>he</i> | <i>has</i> |
| <i>she</i> | |
| <i>it</i> | |
| <i>we</i> | <i>have</i> |
| <i>you</i> | |
| <i>they</i> | |

NEGATIVE

| | |
|-------------|----------------------|
| <i>I</i> | <i>do not have</i> |
| <i>you</i> | |
| <i>he</i> | <i>does not have</i> |
| <i>she</i> | |
| <i>it</i> | |
| <i>we</i> | <i>do not have</i> |
| <i>you</i> | |
| <i>they</i> | |

QUESTION

| | | |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| <i>do</i> | <i>I</i> | <i>have?</i> |
| | <i>you</i> | |
| <i>does</i> | <i>he</i> | |
| | <i>she</i> | |
| | <i>it</i> | |
| <i>do</i> | <i>we</i> | |
| | <i>you</i> | |
| | <i>they</i> | |

CONTRACTIONS

don't = do not
doesn't = does not

c Present form of *have* (2)

В отрицательных формах и вопросах *have* может также употребляться без *got* и без *do/does*:

| AFFIRMATIVE | NEGATIVE | QUESTION |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| I you <i>have</i> | I you <i>have not</i> | <i>have</i> I? you? |
| he she <i>has</i> it | he she <i>has not</i> it | he? <i>has</i> she? it? |
| we you <i>have</i> they | we you <i>have not</i> they | <i>have</i> we ? you? they? |

CONTRACTIONS

've = *have* **haven't** = *have not*
's = *has* **hasn't** = *has not*

Но это не очень распространено в разговорной речи.

3 Когда речь идет о чем-то повторяемом, обычно употребляется *have* (с употреблением *do/does* в отрицательных формах и вопросах), а не *have got*. Compare:

/ *often have headaches.*

I don't usually have much time for lunch.

I've got a terrible headache at the moment.

*I **haven't** got much time today.*

Have (got) не употребляется в формах continuous в значении 'иметь, обладать'.

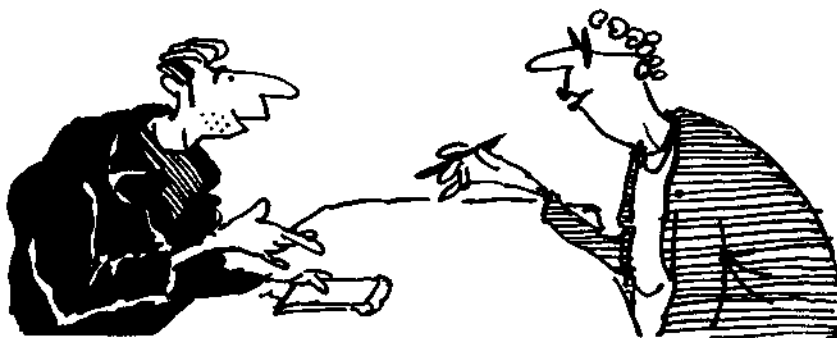
Например, нельзя сказать: *I'm having got a **new camera**.*

Когда речь идет о прошлом, обычно употребляется *had*, а не *had got*.

I had a headache last night. (Not: *I had got a **headache**...*)

Did употребляется в отрицательных формах и вопросах в прошедшем времени.

/ **didn't** *have a pen.*



Did you have a key?

Got не употребляется в кратких ответах.

'*Have you got a pen?*' 'Yes, I **have**.' (Not: 'Yes, I have **got**.')

EXERCISE 33A

Complete the sentences using *have got* where possible. If a **form** of *have got* is not possible, use the correct form of *have*.

Example:

'Excuse me, *have you got* (you) the **time**?' 'Yes, it's twenty-five past six.'

1 'Let's have meatballs for **supper**—— (we) any **potatoes**?' 'No, we _____ but we some **rice**.'

2 My brother _____ dark hair now, but when he was a child he _____ fair hair.

3 'I'll phone you **tomorrow**.' '_____ (you) my telephone **number**?'

4 '_____ (we) any **aspirins**?' 'Yes, there are some in the bathroom cupboard.

Why? _____ (you) a **headache**?' 'No, I'm fine, but Andrew _____ a terrible **toothache**.'

5 '_____ (your sister) a car at the **moment**?' 'Yes, she _____.'

6 I couldn't get the concert tickets yesterday because I _____ (not) enough money.

Note

– *Have to* и *have got to* употребляются для выражения необходимости или долга, например: *I have to go/have got to go now*. См. 38–39.

– *Have* (не *have got*) также употребляется как вспомогательный глагол в формах perfect например, *I have worked* (present perfect). Относительно форм perfect см. 6, 9, 14, 15, 24.

4 *Have for actions (Have для обозначения действий)*

Have может употребляться в ряде выражений для обозначения действий. Например:

*have breakfast/lunch/dinner/meal/a drink/a cup of tea/
some coffee/a beer/a cigarette*
have a bath/a shower/a wash/a shave/a sleep/a rest/a dream
have a swim/a walk/a game of tennis, a game of football, etc
have a holiday/a day off work/a party/a good time, a bad time, etc
*have a conversation/a talk/a chat/a quarrel/a row/a fight/
a disagreement/an argument*
have a baby (= give birth to a baby)
have a look (= look)
have a try/a go (= try)

ⓘ *Have got* в этих выражениях не употребляется.

/ usually have lunch at around 1 o'clock. (Not: / usually have got ~~lunch~~...).

ⓘ *Have* может употребляться в этих выражениях в формах continuous (поскольку описываются действия).

Sally is having a shower at the moment.

Are you having a good time?

We were having dinner when Peter arrived.

- 4 Отрицательные формы и вопросы образуются с помощью *do/does* в present simple и *did* в past simple.

/ don't normally have a bath in the mornings.

When does Lynne usually have her holiday?

Did you have a good time at the zoo yesterday?

- 5 Стяжения *have ('ve, 's)* и *had ('d)* обычно не используются.

I have a look at the newspaper every morning. (Not: ~~I've a look...~~)

They had an argument about money. (Not: ~~They'd an argument...~~)

EXERCISE 34A

Complete each sentence using the correct form of the most suitable expression in the box. Use each expression only once.

| | | |
|----------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| have a look | have a rest | have a shave |
| have breakfast | have a game of tennis | have a cigarette |
| have a swim | have a baby | have a good time |

Example:

'Are you hungry?' 'No, I've *just had breakfast* (just), thank you.'

1 'Have you stopped smoking?' 'Yes, I _____ (not) since the beginning of the New Year.'

2 Can I _____ at that photo?

3 'Simon and I _____ yesterday.' 'Who won?'

4 She usually _____ in the sea every morning before breakfast.

5 What was the party like last night? _____ (you) ?

6 'My sister _____ (just).' 'Is it a girl or a boy?'

7 'I'm tired.' 'Let's _____ for a few minutes, then.'

8 Are you going to _____ today, or are you growing a beard?

35 Modal verbs: general (Модальные глаголы: общие положения)

К 'модальным вспомогательным глаголам' или 'модальным глаголам' относятся: *can, could, may, might, will, would shall, should, ought to, must, need* и *dare*.

- 1 Use

Modal verbs употребляются для выражения, например, возможности, готовности, вероятности, способности, обязанности, долга, обязательства, уверенности, разрешения.

It might rain. (возможность) *You must be home by 11 o'clock.* (обязанность)

Will you help me? (готовность) *You haven't eaten all day. You must be hungry.* (уверенность)

Can she swim? (способность) *May I borrow your car?* (разрешение)

2 Form

- а Утвердительное предложение образуется с помощью modal verb, расположенного между подлежащим и смысловым глаголом.

/ can swim.

We should go now.

Modal verbs имеют одну и ту же форму для всех лиц. В третьем лице единственного числа отсутствует окончание *-s*.

She can swim (Not: ~~*She cans ...*~~)

He should go now. (Not: ~~*He shoulds ...*~~)

После всех modal verbs (кроме *ought*) употребляется infinitive без *to* eg *swim, go*. После *ought* употребляется *to* + infinitive eg *to swim, to go*.

We ought to go now.

- б Отрицание образуется с помощью добавления *n't/not* после modal verb.

She can't swim.

We shouldn't go.

It might not rain.

Вопросы образуются с помощью перестановки подлежащего и modal verb. Compare:

She can swim. → *Can she swim?*

We should go. → *Should we go?*

Обратите внимание, что *do* не употребляется в вопросах и отрицательных формах. Например, нельзя сказать: *Does she can swim?* *She doesn't can swim*, etc.

- в Может употребляться конструкция modal verb + *be* + ... *-ing*.

It's getting late. We really must be going now.

I may be working late tomorrow.

- г Иногда вместо modal verbs употребляются такие выражения, как *be able to, be allowed to* и *have to*. Эти выражения имеют определенные значения и формы, которые не характерны для modal verbs.

I'd like to be able to play the piano. (*Can* не имеет инфинитивной формы;

нельзя сказать: *I'd like to can play ...*)

She had to go to the doctor's yesterday. (*Must* не употребляется в прошедшем времени;

нельзя сказать: ~~*She must go ... yesterday.*~~)

- д Когда речь идет о прошедшем времени, можно употреблять modal verb + *have* + past participle. Эта конструкция употребляется, например, для выражения действий, которые, вероятно, имели место, или действий, которые не произошли.

'Peteris late.' *'Hemay have missed his train.'* (= Вероятно, он опоздал на поезд.)

I feel really tired today. I should have gone to bed earlier last night. (Но я не уснул очень рано прошлой ночью.)

- Относительно подробностей о модальных глаголах см. 36–55.

36 Ability (Способность, возможность): *can, could, be able to*

1 *Can*

Can употребляется для выражения способности или возможности. Отрицательная форма *can - cannot* (стяжение: *can't*).

Can you swim?

He can play the guitar.

I can't open this bottle.

Can you meet me tomorrow evening?

Be able to может употребляться вместо *can* eg *Are you able to swim?* Но *can* более употребительный модальный глагол.

2 *Could and was/were able to*

a *Could* может употребляться для выражения того, что у кого-то была общая возможность что-то сделать в прошлом.

I could swim when I was 4 years old.

My sister could talk when she was 15 months old.

Was/were able to также употребляется в этом значении.

I was able to swim when I was 4 years old.

b Но когда необходимо сказать, что кто-то имел возможность что-то сделать и что это было сделано в определенной ситуации, необходимо употреблять *was/were able to* (*could* не употребляется).

Even though I'd hurt my leg, I was able to swim back to the boat. (Not: ... ~~I could swim back~~ ...)

The manager wasn't in the office for very long, but we were able to speak to him for a few minutes. (Not: ... ~~we could speak to him~~ ...)

Вместо *was/were able to* в этом значении можно употреблять *managed to* (+ infinitive) или *succeeded in* (+ -ing форма).

Even though I'd hurt my leg, I managed to swim back to the boat/succeeded in swimming back to the boat.

Обычно *managed to* или *succeeded in* употребляется в том случае, когда действие было трудно выполнить.

c Существует исключение с глаголами восприятия: *see, hear, smell, taste, feel* и некоторыми глаголами мышления, например, *understand, remember*. *Could* употребляется с этими глаголами, когда фактически действие происходит в конкретной ситуации.

We could see a man in the garden.

I could hear a noise outside my bedroom door.

d *Could not* (стяжение: *couldn't*) употребляется как для выражения общей возможности, так и конкретной ситуации.

My grandmother couldn't dance.

He tried very hard, but he couldn't swim back to the boat.

3 *Could have ...*

Could have + past participle употребляется для выражения способности или возможности выполнения чего-то в прошлом, но фактически не выполненного.

You could have helped me. Why didn't you?

I could have gone to China on holiday last year, but I decided not to.

4 Выражение способности или возможности другими формами: *be able to*.

Can не имеет формы infinitive, *-ing* формы или participle. Таким образом, когда необходимо, соответствующие формы можно образовывать с *be able to*.

I'd like to be able to play the piano. (We cannot say ~~*I'd like to can play...*~~)

In the future, people will be able to live on other planets. (We cannot say ... ~~*people will can live...*~~)

She enjoys being able to speak foreign languages. (We cannot say ~~*She enjoys canning...*~~)

I've been able to drive since I was 18. (We cannot say ~~*I've could...*~~)

EXERCISE 36A

Complete the sentences using *can* or *could* where possible. If *can* or *could* is not possible, use a form of *be able to*.

Examples:

He has been living in France for 6 months. He *can* speak French very well now.
I'll *be able to* go shopping later today.

- 1 When Robert was younger he _____ run quite fast.
- 2 Look! You _____ see the mountains from this window.
- 3 Kate _____ dance really well when she was a young girl.
- 4 How long have you _____ play the guitar?
- 5 Look! I _____ lift this chair with one hand!
- 6 I'm sorry, but I won't _____ come to the party on Saturday.

EXERCISE 36B

Complete the sentences using *could* or *was/were able to*. Sometimes either form is possible.

Example:

Simon *could/was able to* read music when he was 7.

- 1 We _____ put out the fire before much damage was done.
- 2 My daughter _____ walk when she was only 11 months old.
- 3 I _____ finish all the work you wanted me to do **yesterday**.
- 4 '_____ (you) speak French before you went to live in **Paris**?'
'I _____ (not) speak very **well**.'
- 5 They were talking quite loudly. I _____ hear everything they said.

EXERCISE 36C

Robert Wells is 52 years old. Sometimes he feels that he has wasted his life.
Read about Robert. Replace the words in italics with *could have ...*, as in the example.

Example:

When Robert was 26 *he had the chance to get* married, but he decided not to.

When Robert was 26 *he could have got* married, but he decided not to.

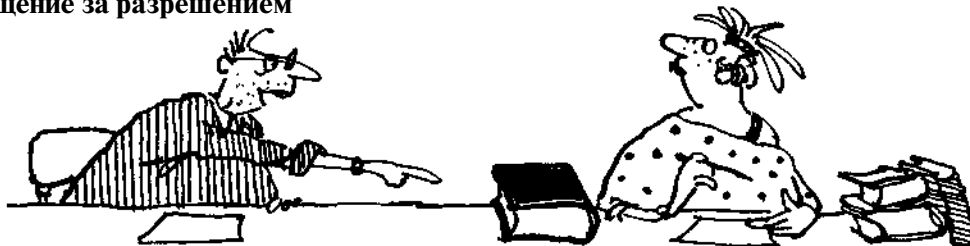
- 1 *Robert had the ability to go* to university, but he didn't want to go.
- 2 *He had the intelligence to pass* his final exams at school, but he didn't take them.
- 3 A lot of people thought *he had the ability to be* a professional footballer when he was younger, but he **didn't** try.
- 4 *He had the opportunity to start* his own business once, but he didn't want to.
- 5 *He had the chance to emigrate* to Australia a few years ago, but he decided not to.

Note

- Относительно форм модальных глаголов *can* и *could* см. 35.2.
- *Can/could* (= 'ability') употребляется в просьбах, например: *Can you help me?* (см. 48) и предложениях, например: *I could lend you some money* (см. 49.3).
- *Could* также имеет сослагательное значение 'смог бы, смогла бы, смогли бы', например: *I could repair the car if I had the right tools.* (= Я смог бы отремонтировать автомобиль ...) См. 69.3, 71.3.

37 Permission (Разрешение): *can, could, may, might, be allowed to*

1 Обращение за разрешением



Can I borrow your dictionary?

Can, could и *may* употребляются для обращения за разрешением.

Can I use your pen for a moment?

Could I ask you a personal question?

May I make a suggestion?

Здесь *could* – менее прямая и более вежливая форма, чем *can*. *May* – более официальная (и некоторые считают, что более 'правильная'), чем *can* или *could*, но *can* и *could* – более употребительные.

Might может также употребляться для обращения за разрешением в менее прямой и более официальной форме.

Might I make a suggestion?

2 Разрешение

Когда дается разрешение, употребляется *can* или *may* (но не *could* или *might*).

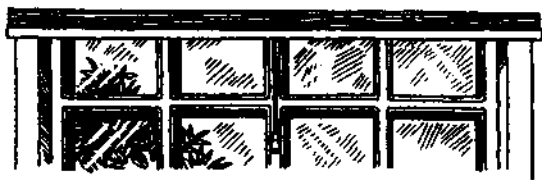
'*Can I use your pen for a moment?*' 'Yes, of course you **can**.'

You can borrow my camera if you want to.

'*Could I make a suggestion?*' 'Of course you **may**.'

3 Выражение разрешения

Когда речь идет о вещах, на которые уже есть или еще нет разрешения (например, когда существует закон или правило), употребляется *can ('t)* или *be (not) allowed to*.



You can't smoke/aren't allowed to smoke in this room.

More examples:

*You can get **married/are** allowed to get married in Britain when you are 16.* (Это закон.)

The children normally go to bed at 9 o'clock, but they can stay up/are allowed to stay up later on Saturdays. (Так решили их родители.)

4 Could и was/were allowed to

Could употребляется для выражения общего разрешения что-то сделать в прошлом.

When I was 18, I could borrow my parents' car whenever I wanted to.

Was/were allowed to также употребляется в этом значении.

When I was 18, I was allowed to borrow my parents' car whenever I wanted to.

Но когда необходимо сказать, что кому-то разрешили что-то сделать и это было сделано в определенной ситуации в прошлом, необходимо употребить *was/were allowed to (could* не употребляется).

/ was allowed to borrow my parents' car last night. (Not: I could ~~borrow~~ ...)

Эти различия подобны тем, которые существуют между *could* и *was/were able to* (см. 36).

EXERCISE 37A

What are these people asking?
Find their questions in the box.

Example:



May I sit _____ in?
Do you think I could close _____ a look at your magazine?
Could I have _____ this on?
Can I try _____ here?
May I come _____ your bike for half an hour?
Can I borrow _____ the window?

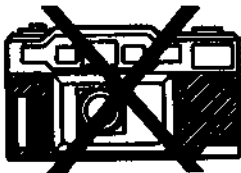
Could I have a look at your magazine?



EXERCISE 37B

What do these notices mean? Make sentences using the words in the box. Make two sentences for each notice, as in the example.

Example:



| | | |
|-----|----------------------|---|
| You | can ('t) | take _____ in this street. park _____ in this room. feed _____ on the grass. smoke _____ photographs. turn _____ the animals. walk _____ left. |
| | are (n't) allowed to | |

You can't take photographs.

You aren't allowed to take photographs.



EXERCISE 37C

Complete the sentences using *could* or *was/were allowed to*.
Sometimes either form is possible.

Example:

I was *allowed to* see him for a few moments yesterday.

- 1 Andrew _____ leave school early yesterday because he **wasn't** feeling well.
- 2 Until the 19th century, people _____ travel freely between most countries without a passport.
- 3 Sue's children _____ watch the film on TV last night.
- 4 Her son has to wear a uniform in his new school, but in his old school he _____ wear whatever he liked.

Note

– Относительно форм modal verbs *can*, *could*, *may* и *might* см. 35.2.

38 Obligation and necessity (Обязанность и необходимость)

(1): *must*, *have to*, *have got to*1 *Must* и *have to*

- a *Must* и *have to* употребляются для выражения обязанности или необходимости, но иногда между ними могут существовать различия:



Must обычно употребляется, когда полномочия исходят от говорящего.

You must be home by 10 o'clock.
(Я настаиваю на этом.)

I've got a terrible pain in my back. I must go and see the doctor.

(Я считаю это необходимым.)

You must drive carefully.

(Я настаиваю на этом.)



Have to обычно употребляется, когда полномочия исходят не от говорящего.

/ have to be home by 10 o'clock.
(Мои родители настаивают на этом.)

/ have to go and see the doctor at 9.00 tomorrow morning.

(У меня назначена встреча.)

You have to drive on the left in Britain.

(Это - закон.)

- b** *Must* (+ infinitive) употребляется только в настоящем и будущем времени. Когда речь идет об обязанности или необходимости в прошлом, употребляется *had to*.

I had to work late yesterday. (Not: / *must work late yesterday.*)

- c** *Must* не имеет формы infinitive, *-ing* формы или participle. Таким образом, когда необходимо, соответствующие формы можно образовывать с *have to*.

I'll have to work late tomorrow. (We cannot say **I'll must ...**)

He hates having to get up early. (We cannot say He hates **rousting ...**)

She's had to work hard all her life. (We cannot say She's **mustcd ...**)

Обратите внимание, что в вопросах и отрицательных формах с *have to* употребляется *do/does* в present simple и *did* в past simple.

What time do you have to start work?

We don't have to hurry. We've got plenty of time.

Did you have to walk home last night?

2 Have got to

Have got to часто употребляется вместо *have to* для выражения обязанности и необходимости. *Have got to* - более неофициальная форма.

/ *have to* hurry.

Do you have to go?

| *I've got to hurry.*

| *Have you got to go?*

Have to, а не *have got to* обычно употребляется в том случае, когда речь идет о том, что происходит неоднократно, особенно, когда употребляется однословное наречие частоты, например, *always, often*. Compare:

I always have to work late on Wednesday evenings.

Do you often have to get up early?

| *I've got to work late this evening.*

| *Have you got to get up early tomorrow?*

Got употребляется, главным образом, в present tense. Для выражения действия в past tense, обычно употребляется *had to*, а не *had got to*.

I had to work late last night. (Not: / *had got to work late last night.*)

Эти различия подобны тем, которые существуют между *have* и *have got*, употребляемые для выражения 'владения, обладания' (см. 33).

EXERCISE 38A

(i) Mrs Woods isn't very well. The doctor is speaking to her.

Complete what the doctor says using *must* и глаголы *drink, take, stay* и *continue*. Use each verb only once.

Doctor: Well, Mrs Woods, your temperature is a little **high**, so you 1 in bed for the next few days. You can eat whatever you like, but you 2 plenty of liquids. And I'll give you some medicine. You 3 it three times a day after meals. And you 4 to take it for the next ten days.

(ii) Now Mrs Woods is explaining the **doctor's** instructions to Mr Woods.
Complete what Mrs Woods says using *have to* и глаголы *drink, take, stay* и *continue*.

Mrs Woods: The doctor gave me some medicine. I ___1___ it three times a day after meals. And I ___2___ to take it for the next ten days. I'm not allowed to get up at the moment. I ___3___ in bed for the next few days. Oh, and I'm allowed to eat whatever I like, but I ___4___ plenty of liquids.

EXERCISE 38B

Complete the sentences using *must* or a form of *have to*. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Examples:

I couldn't go to the party last night because I *had to* babysit for my sister.
I *have to/must* get up early tomorrow morning.

- 1 You ___ get a visa to visit the United States.
- 2 Annie will ___ do her homework tomorrow.
- 3 It's getting very late. We ___ go now.
- 4 I ___ stay in bed yesterday because I wasn't very well.
- 5 Mr Mason ___ wear glasses since he was a child,
- 6 I *don't like* ___ work at weekends.

Note

- Относительно формы модального глагола *must* см. 35.2.
- Относительно отрицательных форм *mustn't, don't have to, haven't got to, needn't* и *don't need to* см. 39.

39 Obligation and necessity (Обязанность и необходимость) (2) : *mustn't, don't have to, don't need to, haven't got to, needn't*

1 Compare *mustn't* and *don't have to*:

Annie has got a bad cold.
[Энни очень простужена]



Mustn't употребляется в том случае, когда существует необходимость не делать чего-то.

Sally is on holiday.
[Сэлли на каникулах.]



Don't have to употребляется в том случае, когда нет необходимости что-то делать.

You *mustn't* get up today. (= Не вставай.)

You *mustn't* wash that sweater. It has to be dry-cleaned. (= Не стирай его.)

/ *don't have to* get up today. (= Нет необходимости **вставать**..)

You *don't have to* wash that shirt. It isn't dirty. (= Нет необходимости стирать.)

2 *Don't need to*, *haven't got to* или *needn't* может также употребляться для выражения действия, которого нет необходимости выполнять.

/ *don't need to* get up today.

I *haven't got to* get up today.

I *needn't* get up today.

Обратите внимание, что *needn't* часто употребляется в случае, когда говорящий дает разрешение что-то не делать.

You *needn't* pay me back the money you owe me until next week. [Вы можете не возвращать мне деньги, которые должны, до следующей недели].

EXERCISE 39A

Choose the correct form.

Example:

You've been late for work twice this week. You *mustn't/needn't* be late again **tomorrow**.

1 You *mustn't/don't have to* open the door before the train stops. You could fall out.

2 We *mustn't/don't have to* hurry. **We've** got plenty of time.

3 We *mustn't/haven't got to* make any noise going into the house. It's very late and everybody is asleep.

4 You *mustn't/needn't* tell Nicki about the party. I've already told her.

5 You *mustn't/don't need to* phone the station about the time of the trains. **I've** got a timetable.

6 I *mustn't/haven't got to* go now. I can stay a bit longer if you want me to.

Note

-Относительно формы модальных глаголов *must* и *needn't* см. 35.2.

-См. также 41 *Needn't have* и *didn't need to*.

➤ **Review of permission and obligation (Обзор модальных глаголов, выражающих обязанность и необходимость): *can, can't, must, mustn't, needn't, be allowed to, have to, don't have to***

EXERCISE 40A

Complete these sentences using the modal verbs in the box. Sometimes two answers are possible.

| | | | | |
|------|---------|-----|-------|---------|
| must | mustn't | can | can't | needn't |
|------|---------|-----|-------|---------|

Examples:

You needn't wait any longer, You *can* go now.

We mustn't make a noise. We *must* be quiet.

You must move your car. You *can't/mustn't* park here.

1 You mustn't leave the door unlocked. You _____. lock it.

2 You can only smoke in the canteen. You _____ smoke in this room.

3 We needn't do the washing up now. We _____ do it tomorrow.

4 We can stay a bit longer. We _____ go now.

5 You can't keep on using my tennis shoes. You _____. buy your own.

6 You can keep those magazines. You _____ give them back to me.

EXERCISE 40B

What do these signs and notices mean?

Find the explanations in the box.

Example:



You have to stop.

| | | |
|-----|-------------------|---|
| You | allowed to | swim here. |
| | aren't allowed to | stop. overtake. walk here. |
| | have to | be a member to get in. |
| | don't have to | park here. be quiet. |

1



2



3



4



5



6



41 *Needn't have* and *didn't need to*

1 С помощью *needn't have* + past participle выражается выполненное действие, которое не следовало бы выполнять - это было пустой тратой времени.

/ needn't have made so much food for the party. Nobody was very hungry. [Мне не следовало бы готовить так много блюд на вечеринку.] (= Не было необходимости готовить так много блюд, но я приготовил.)

I needn't have told Kate what happened. She already knew. [Мне не следовало бы говорить Кейт, что случилось.] (= Не было необходимости рассказывать об этом Кейт, но я рассказал.)

2 С помощью *didn't need to* + infinitive выражается действие, в выполнении которого не было необходимости (но не говорится, выполнено это действие или нет).

Compare:

She needn't have waited. [Ей не следовало бы ожидать (но она ожидала)]

She didn't need to wait. [Ей не было необходимости ожидать (мы не знаем, ожидала она или нет.)]

They needn't have worried. [Им не следовало бы беспокоиться (но они беспокоились.)]

They didn't need to worry. [Им не было необходимости беспокоиться (мы не знаем, беспокоились они или нет.)]

3 Когда употребляется *didn't need to*, то это часто означает, что кто-то что-то не выполнил (потому, что в этом не было необходимости).

I didn't need to unlock the door because it was already unlocked.

I didn't need to write to you so phoned you instead.

Но *didn't need to* (с ударением на *need*) может также употребляться, когда не было необходимости что-то сделать, но кто-то это сделал.

/ didn't need to write to you, but I wrote to you anyway.

EXERCISE 41A

Complete the sentences using *needn't have* where possible. If *needn't have* is not possible, use *didn't need to*.

Examples:

Did you water the garden? 'Yes, but I *needn't have done* (do) it. Just after I'd finished it started to rain!'

I *didn't need to wake* (wake) her up because she was awake before me.

1 She _____ (get up) early last Saturday, so she stayed in bed until 10 o'clock.

2 I didn't wear my coat when I went out. I _____ (wear) it. It wasn't cold.

3 He was very anxious before the exam, but he _____ (worry). It wasn't as difficult as he'd expected.

4 She _____ (pay) the man, but she gave him some money anyway.

5 She _____ (pay) the man, so she didn't give him any money.

6 Thank you very much for the flowers, but you really _____. (buy) them for me.

42 Obligation and advice (Обязанность и совет): *should, ought to, had better, be supposed to, shall*

1 *Should* и *ought to*

a *Should* и *ought to* может употребляться для выражения обязанности и долга, обращения за советом и выражения совета и, вообще, для оценки, что правильно или хорошо.

You should learn to swim. /You ought to learn to swim.

You shouldn't tell lies. /You oughtn't to tell lies.

What do you think I should do? /What do you think I ought to do?

Should и *ought to* очень близки по значению, но часто предпочтение отдается *ought to* для выражения компетенции, которая исходит не от самого говорящего, а существует, например, в соответствии с законом или правилом.

Обратите внимание, что после *should* употребляется infinitive без *to*, например, *learn, tell, a* после *ought* употребляется *to* + infinitive *eg to learn, to tell.*

b *Should have/ought to have* + past participle употребляется для выражения того, что кто-то сделал что-то неправильно в прошлом.

I should have posted this letter yesterday, but I forgot. (Я не отправил его.)

I'm really tired this morning. I shouldn't have stayed up so late last night. (Я засиделся допоздна.)

Haven't you finished your homework yet? You ought to have done it last night. (Вы не выполнили его.)

2 *Had better*

Had better (+ infinitive без *to*) выражает настоятельную рекомендацию в определенной ситуации.

I'm going to an interview tomorrow. I'd better iron my shirt.

It's going to be cold tonight. We'd better turn on the heating.

(**d better* = *had better*)

Had (не *have*) с *better* всегда употребляется в этой конструкции, но значение соотносится к настоящему или будущему, но не к прошедшему времени.

Отрицание образуется следующим образом: *had better not.*

We'd better not be late.

Had better часто может иметь оттенок угрозы или предупреждения и сильнее, чем *should* или *ought to.*

3 *Be* + *supposed to*

Supposed to может употребляться для выражения действия как результата долга, предварительной договоренности или существующих правил.

You're supposed to start work at 8.00 every morning.

I'm supposed to see Maria this afternoon.

Not supposed to употребляется для выражения запрещения.

You know you 'renot supposed to eat in the classroom.

Часто существует разница между тем, что по предложению должно произойти, и тем, что происходит на самом деле.

I'm supposed to see Maria this afternoon, but I'm not going to have enough time.

Put those sweets away! You know you 'renot supposed to eat in the classroom.

He was supposed to phone me yesterday, but he didn't.

Обратите внимание, что *supposed to* также употребляется в значении 'said to' [говорят], например, *I'd like to read that book. It's supposed to be very good.* СМ. 64.2.

4 Shall

Shall I? может употребляться в том случае, когда необходимо знать чье-то мнение или когда нужен совет или указание.

I've missed my last bus. What shall I do?

I'm not sure what to do. Shall I apply for the job or not?

How long shall I cook this spaghetti?

EXERCISE 42A

Complete the advice using *should* or *ought to*; find the advice for the problems.

Example: 1 'I've lost my credit card.'

'You should report it to the credit card company immediately. 7

'You ought to report it to the credit card company immediately.'

PROBLEMS

1 'I've lost my credit card.'

2 'I can't wake up in the mornings.'

3 'I'm bored with my job.'

4 'I've got a terrible headache.'

5 'I was very rude to my parents.'

6 'My car keeps on breaking down.'

ADVICE

'I think you | sell it.'

'Perhaps you | look for another job.'

'Don't you think you | apologize to them?'

'Perhaps you | buy a new alarm clock!'

'You | report it to the credit card company immediately.'

'Perhaps you | take some aspirin.'

EXERCISE 42B

Make sentences using *should (n't) ... ,ought (n't)to should (n't)have ...* or *ought (n't)to have ...* and the words in brackets.

Example: My car is always dirty. (I | clean | it more often.)

/ should clean it more often. /I ought to clean it more often.

1 You think your friend works too hard. You tell him/her:

(You | not work | so hard.) (You | relax | more.)

2 Your friend overslept this morning and was late for work. His boss said to him.

(You | buy | an alarm clock!)

3 Kate didn't feel well yesterday, but she went to work and now she feels really terrible. (She | not go | to work yesterday.) (She | stay | in bed.)

4 Mr Woods walked straight out into the road without looking. He was nearly killed by a bus. (He | not walk | into the road without looking.) (He | look | first.)

EXERCISE 42C

Complete the sentences using *had better* and the verbs in the box.

Example: The phone is ringing. I'd *better answer it*.

park stay hurry answer put out be not leave

- 1 This knife is very sharp. You _____ careful when you use it.
- 2 Oh no! Look! There's a '**No Parking**' sign here. We _____ somewhere else.
- 3 You're not very well. I think you _____ in bed today.
- 4 We're late. We _____.
- 5 **There's** a lot of crime in this area. We _____ any doors or windows unlocked.
- 6 The plane is just going to take off. You _____ that cigarette.

EXERCISE 42D

Complete the sentences using the correct form of *be + supposed to* and the verbs in the box.

Example: I'm on a diet, so I'm not *supposed to eat* cream cakes.

arrive not eat go not open not park have

- 1 What are you doing with your birthday presents? You _____ them until your **birthday!**
- 2 I _____ to work yesterday, but I couldn't because I was ill in bed.
- 3 You _____ your car here at any time.
- 4 We _____ in Manchester at 6 o'clock this morning, but our plane was delayed.
- 5 Peter _____ a one-hour lunch break, but he sometimes takes a bit longer.

EXERCISE 42E

Complete each question using *shall I* and the most suitable verb in the box.

Example: How much money *shall I get* from the bank?

paint invite get tell put

- 1 Who _____ to my party, do you think?
- 2 Where _____ all these dirty plates and glasses?
- 3 What do you think? _____ my parents what has happened?
- 4 What colour _____ my bedroom? Have you got any ideas?

Note

–**Относительно** формы модальных глаголов *should*, *ought to* и *shall* см. 35.2.

43 Possibility (Возможность, вероятность): *may, might, could*

1 Present and future possibility

- a** *May, might* и *could* употребляются для выражения возможности и вероятности в настоящем и будущем времени.



'There's someone at the door.' 'It may be Sarah.' [Возможно, это Сара.]

We **aren't** sure what we are going to do tomorrow. We **might** go to the beach. [Вероятно, мы пойдем на пляж.]

'Where's Simon?' 'He **could** be in the living room.' [Может быть, он в гостиной.]

Might обычно выражает меньшую уверенность, чем *may*. *Could* обычно выражает меньшую уверенность, чем *may* или *might*.

+ + + *may* + + *might* + *could*

- b** Отрицательные формы *may not* и *might not* (contraction: *mightn't*), но не *could not*, употребляются в этом значении.

Simon **may not** be in the living room. [Вероятно, его нет в гостиной.]

We **might not** go to the beach. [Вероятно, мы не пойдем на пляж.]

- c** Обратите внимание на форму: *may/might/could* + *be* + ... -*ing*.

They **may be having** dinner at the moment. [Вероятно, они ужинают.]

2 Possibility in the past

- a** *May/might/could* + *have* + past participle может употребляться для выражения возможности и вероятности в прошлом.

'Where was Sally last night?' 'I think she **may have been** at the cinema.' (= Я полагаю, что она могла быть в кинотеатре.)

'Peter is late.' 'He **might have missed** his train.' (= Вероятно, он опоздал на поезд.)

'I can't find my wallet anywhere.' 'You **could have left** it at home.'

(= Может быть, вы оставили его дома.)

'She walked straight past me without saying hello.' 'She **might not have seen** you.'

(= Вероятно, она вас не увидела.)

- b** *Could* и *might* (но не *may*) с *have* + past participle также употребляется для выражения чего-то возможного в прошлом, но не произошедшего.

'I forgot to lock my car last night.' *'You were very lucky. Someone could have stolen it.'*
You were stupid to try to climb that tree. You might have killed yourself.

EXERCISE 43A

Rephrase these sentences using the modal verbs in brackets.

Examples:

Perhaps she is ill. (may) *She may be ill.*

Perhaps they went out. (might) *They might have gone out.*

1 Perhaps you're right, (could)

6 Perhaps they left **early**. (could)

2 Perhaps she'll win the **race**. (might)

7 Perhaps he **isn't** coming now. (might)

3 Perhaps she forgot about the **meeting**. (may)

8 Perhaps I'll see you **tomorrow**. (may)

4 Perhaps they were **asleep**. (might)

9 Perhaps they're going on **holiday**. (could)

5 Perhaps he doesn't know the **address**. (may)

10 Perhaps she didn't catch the bus. (may)

Note

-Относительно форм модальных глаголов *may*, *might* и *could* см. 35.2.

-*Could* также употребляется для предположения возможных действий. Например: *We could go out tonight.* См. 50.3.

-*Might* также имеет значение сослагательного наклонения 'вероятно', например: *If I won a lot of money, I might stop working.* [... Я бы, вероятно, прекратил работать]. См. 69.3, 71.3.

44 Possibility (Возможность и вероятность): *can*

- 1** *Can* употребляется для выражения 'теоретической возможности или вероятности'.

Anyone can learn to swim. [Каждый может научиться плавать.]

В этом случае *can* часто имеет значение близкое 'иногда'.

My brother can be very nice. [Мой брат иногда очень красив.]

May, *might* или *could* (не *can*) употребляется для выражения того, что что-то, вероятно, произойдет в будущем, или того, что, вероятно, что-то справедливо в момент речи (см. 43).

It may rain later. (Not: ~~*It can rain later.*~~)

'Where's Ken?' 'He could be outside.' (Not: ~~*'He can be outside.'*~~)

Compare:

It can be cold in England. [Иногда в Англии холодно.]

It may be cold tomorrow. [Вероятно, завтра будет холодно.]

- 2** *Could* употребляется для выражения теоретической возможности или вероятности в прошлом.

My brother could be really horrible when he was a child.

EXERCISE 44A

Complete the sentences using *can* or *could* and the verbs in the box. Use each verb only once.

| | | | | | | |
|------|----|------|-------|------|---------|-------|
| grow | be | make | reach | live | survive | cross |
|------|----|------|-------|------|---------|-------|

Example:

Tigers *can be* dangerous.

- 1 Elephants _____ for up to 70 years.
- 2 Temperatures near the South Pole _____ minus 43 degrees centigrade.
- 3 A hundred years ago ships _____ the Atlantic in 10 days.
- 4 Camels _____ for up to 17 weeks in the desert without water.
- 5 Dinosaurs _____ up to 5 metres long.
- 6 Anyone _____ mistakes.

Note

- Относительно формы модального глагола *can* см. 35.2.
- Can* также употребляется для выражения предполагаемого действия. Например: *We can have dinner now if you like.* См. 50.3.

45 Probability (Вероятность): *should, ought to*

- 1 *Should* или *ought to* может употребляться для выражения чего-то вероятного в момент речи или в будущем.



Sally should be at work by now. She's normally there at this time. [Сэлли, вероятно, сейчас на работе.]

I should finish work early today. I haven't got much to do. [Я, вероятно, закончу работу сегодня рано.]

He ought to pass his driving test easily. He's a very good driver. [Он, вероятно, легко сдаст экзамен по вождению.]

2 *Should have ... and ought to have ...*

Should have/ought to have + past participle употребляется, когда ожидалось, что действие должно произойти, но не известно, произошло ли оно.

They should have arrived by now. (Но: Я не знаю, приехали ли они.)

I wonder if he passed his driving test this morning. 'He *ought to have passed it easily.*' (Но: Я не знаю, сдал ли он экзамен.)

Эта конструкция также используется, когда ожидается, что действие должно произойти, но оно не произошло.

They should have arrived by now, but they aren't there yet.

He ought to have passed his driving test easily. I was surprised that he failed.

EXERCISE 45A

Complete the sentences using *should* or *ought to* and the correct form of the verbs in the box. Use each verb only once.

| | | | |
|------|--------|---------|----------|
| pass | fee | win | not take |
| sell | arrive | receive | |

Example:

I've only got £15, but that *should be/ought to be* enough. We won't need to buy very much.

- 1 You _____ my letter first thing tomorrow morning. I posted it early today.
- 2 I was surprised Liverpool lost the football match. They _____ easily.
- 3 I _____ my car easily. I only want £950 for it and it's in very good condition.
- 4 Andrew _____ the exams last week. He worked very hard for them.
- 5 'How long will it take to drive to the park?' 'Well, it _____ long. It isn't very far.'
- 6 I'm still waiting for the 7 o'clock bus. It _____ half an hour ago.

Note

- Относительно формы модальных глаголов *should* и *ought to* см. 35.2.

➔ Deduction (Вывод): *must, can't*

1 *Must, can't*

Must употребляется в выводах для выражения уверенности в чем-то.

It's not very warm and you're not wearing a coat. You must be cold. [Вам, должно быть, холодно.]

Mrs Woods must know London very well. She has lived there all her life. [Госпожа Вудз, должно быть, хорошо знает Лондон.]

- b** *Can't* (не *mustn't*) употребляется в качестве отрицательной формы от *must* в этом значении. *Can't* употребляется для выражения невозможности чего-то.
Peter was here a moment ago, so he can't be far away. (= Невозможно, чтобы он был уже далеко.)
Annie can't be asleep. There's a light on in her bedroom. (= Невозможно, чтобы она уже спала.)
- c** Обратите внимание на форму: *must/can't + be + ... -ing*.
You've been working hard all day. You must be feeling tired. [Должно быть, вы устали.]
Simon has bought two tickets for the concert, so he can't be going on his own. [Не может быть, что он пойдет в кино сам.]
- d** *Can* также употребляется в вопросах, выражающих возможность или вероятность.
The telephone is ringing. Who can that be?
Sally is late. Where can she be?
- 2 Must have ... and can't have ...**
- a** *Must/can't + have + past participle* употребляется для выражения выводов относительно прошедшего времени.
Those shoes you bought are very nice. They must have been expensive. [Должно быть они дорогие.]
You can't have been at the swimming pool yesterday! The swimming pool was closed all day yesterday! [Вряд ли вы были в плавательном бассейне вчера!]
Couldn't have ... здесь может употребляться вместо *can't have ...*.
You couldn't have been at the swimming pool yesterday! The swimming pool was closed all day yesterday!
- b** *Can have ...* и *could have ...* употребляется в вопросах, касающихся вероятности в прошедшем времени.
Where can they have gone?
Sally is very late. What could have happened to her?

EXERCISE 46A

Answer the questions in A using *must* or *can't*, give a reason from B.

Example:

1 They *can't be* Greek. They're speaking Italian.

A

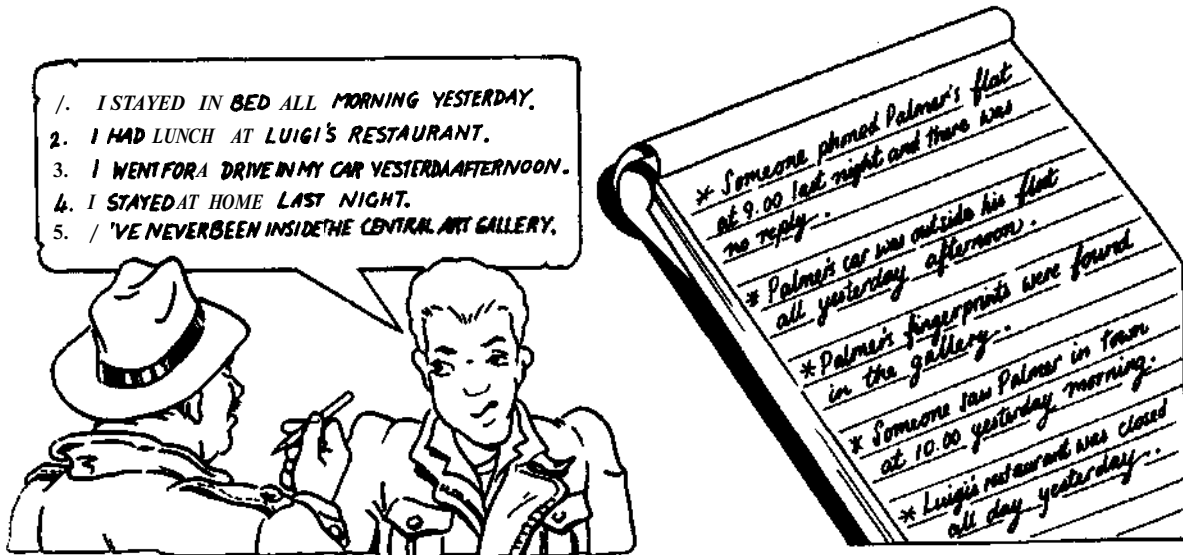
- 1 Are they Greek?
- 2 Is he ill?
- 3 Is the heating on?
- 4 Are they asleep?
- 5 Is she happy?
- 6 Is he a doctor?

B

- It's very cold in here.
 He's too young.
 She's just passed her driving test.
 They're speaking Italian.
 Their bedroom lights are off.
 He's got a high temperature.

EXERCISE 46B

There was a robbery at the Central Art Gallery in London yesterday. A detective is questioning Billy Palmer about the robbery. The detective knows that Palmer is lying to him. Look at what Palmer says on the left. Then look at the clues on the right.



Make deductions using *must have ...* or *can't/couldn't have* Give the reason for each deduction.

Example:

1 Palmer *can't* / *couldn't* have stayed in bed all morning yesterday. Someone saw him in town at 10.00 yesterday morning.

Note

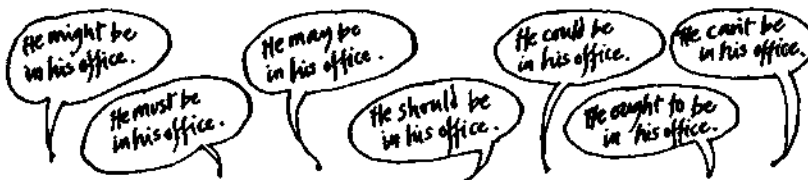
-Относительно формы модальных глаголов *must, can('t)* и *could(n't)* см. 35.2.

47 Review of possibility, probability and deduction (Обзор выражения возможности, вероятности и выводов): *may, might, could, should, ought to, must, can't*

EXERCISE 47A



Look at the examples:



Find the correct place in the table for the words in the box.

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------|------------|
| <i>might</i> | <i>should</i> | <i>must</i> | <i>may</i> |
| <i>ought to</i> | <i>can't</i> | <i>could</i> | |

Saying how sure we are:

YES definitely _____
 I probably *should*; _____
 I possibly *may*; _____
 NO definitely not _____

EXERCISE 47B

Rephrase the sentences using the correct form of the words in brackets.

Examples:

I'm sure she is in bed. (must) *She must be in bed.*

We'll probably arrive before 11 o'clock, (should) *We should arrive before 11 o'clock.*

Perhaps he was ill. (may) *He may have been ill.*

It's impossible that they missed the plane. (can't) *They can't have missed the plane.*

- 1 Perhaps she'll phone **later**. (might)
- 2 I'll probably be at home by 6 o'clock. (should)
- 3 Perhaps they went **home**. (could)
- 4 It's impossible that he's telling the **truth**. (can't)
- 5 I'm sure you've heard the **news**. (must)
- 6 Perhaps I won't go out this **evening**. (may)
- 7 It's impossible that she saw us. (can't)
- 8 I'm sure the bus has **left**. (must)
- 9 Perhaps he didn't apply for the job. (might)
- 10 She'll probably be here **soon**. (ought to)

48 Requests (Просьба): *can, could, may, will, would*

1 Попросить что-то

С помощью *can, could* и *may* можно попросить что-то.

Can I have a glass of water, please?

Could I have the bill, please? (например, в ресторане)

May I have some more coffee?

Could - менее прямая и более вежливая форма, чем *can*; *may* - более официальная форма, чем *can/could*.



2 Попросить разрешение

Can, could и *may* также употребляется для обращения за разрешением (см.: 37.1).

Can I borrow your dictionary?

Could I ask you a personal question?

Excuse me. May I have a look at your newspaper?

3 Попросить кого-то что-то сделать

1 *Can you?* [не можете ли **вы?**] часто употребляется для обращения к кому-то с просьбой что-то сделать для кого-то.

Can you post this letter for me please?

Can you switch on the light, please?

Could употребляется как менее определенная и более вежливая форма *can* в этом значении.

Could you pass me that newspaper please?

Could you give me some advice?

2 *Will you?* [не хотите ли **вы?**] также употребляется для обращения к кому-то с просьбой что-то сделать.

Will you switch on the light, please?

Would употребляется как менее определенная и более вежливая форма *will* в этом значении.

Would you post this letter for me?

'The phone is **ringing**.' '**Would you answer it?**'

3 *Would* с глаголом *mind* (= '**возражать**' или '**быть против**') также употребляется для выражения вежливой просьбы.

Would you mind switching on the light?

4 Иногда просьба может выражаться с помощью *would like* как вежливой формой того, что мы хотим.

I'd like a glass of water, please.

I'd like to ask you a personal question.

EXERCISE 48A

What are these people asking? Find their questions below.

Example:



Can I close the window?

| | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Could you tell | the TV for me, please? |
| Would you mind changing | the window? |
| Would you answer | the menu, please? |
| May I have | the phone, please? |
| Can I close | me where the hospital is, please? |
| Will you switch on | me the cloth, please? |
| Can you pass | places with me? |



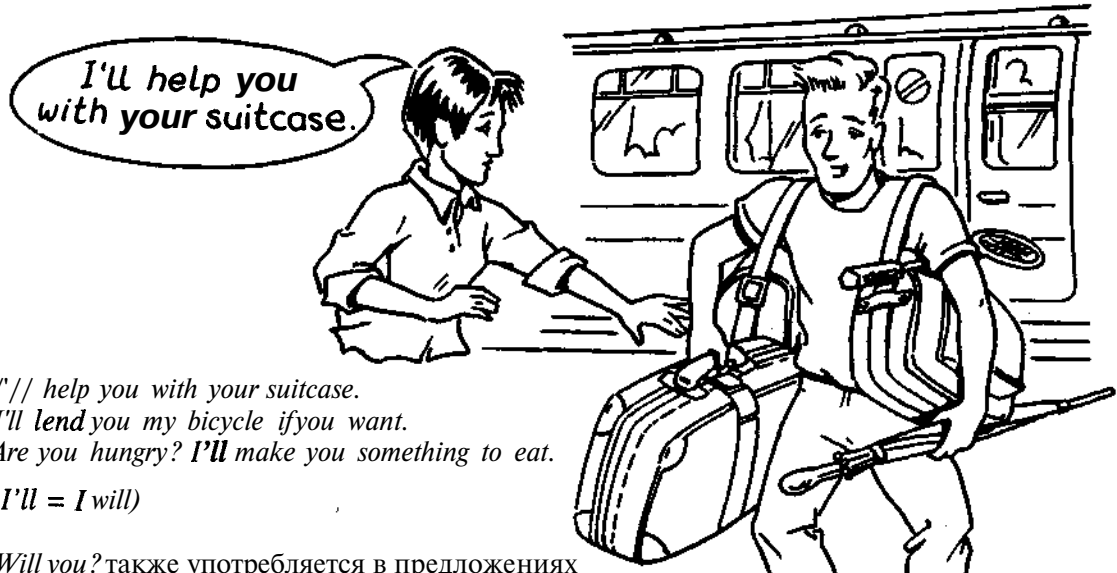
Note

– Относительно форм модальных глаголов *can, could, may, will* и *would* см. 35.2.

– Обратите внимание на значения *yes* и *no* после просьбы с *mind*, например: **'Would you mind waiting?'** **'No, that's all right.'** [Ничего, все нормально.] **'Yes, I would!'** [Да, я против.]

49 Offers (Предложение): *will, shall, can, could, would*

- 1 *Will* употребляется для выражения желания или предложения что-то сделать.



I'll help you with your suitcase.

I'll help you with your suitcase.
I'll lend you my bicycle if you want.
Are you hungry? I'll make you something to eat.

(*I'll = I will*)

Will you? также употребляется в предложениях и приглашениях.

What will you have to drink?
Will you have dinner with us?

- 2 *Shall /?* (= не хотели бы вы, чтобы я?) употребляется для выражения предложения сделать что-то для кого-то.

Shall I help you?
Shall I open the door for you?
Shall I post this letter for you?

- 3 *Can/could* (= 'возможность') также употребляется для выражения предложения сделать что-то для кого-то.

I can post this letter for you.
I could lend you some money if you want.

Иногда, когда *can* или *could* используется для обращения за 'разрешением', на самом деле предлагается что-то сделать.

Can I make you something to eat?
Could I carry that bag for you?

В этом случае *could* - менее прямая и более вежливая форма, чем *can*.

- 4 *Would* с такими глаголами, как *like, prefer* и *rather*, также употребляется для выражения вежливой формы предложения и приглашения.

Would you like to go to a party on Saturday?
Would you like me to help you?
Would you prefer to stay in or go out this evening?

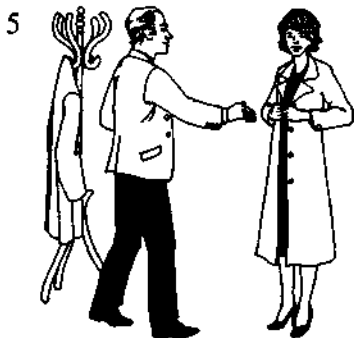
EXERCISE 49A

Make offers in these situations using the words below.

Example:

| | |
|---|--|
| Shall I switch off I'll help Would you like me to phone Can I take Would you like Could I carry I can lend | something to drink? you an umbrella if you like. your coat? the light? some bags for you? for the doctor? you do the washing up. |
|---|--|

Would you like something to drink?



Note

– Относительно форм модальных глаголов *will, shall, can, could* и *would* см. 35.2.

50 Suggestions (Предложение): *shall, let's, why don't we, how/what about, can, could*

1 *Shall we?* употребляется для выражения просьбы или предложения.

Where shall we go?

What time shall we leave?

Shall we stay at home?

Shall we play tennis tomorrow?

2 Предложение можно также выразить следующим образом:

1 **Let's (+ infinitive without to)**

Let's watch TV.

Let's go for a swim.

(*Let's - Let us*)

b **Why don't we (+ infinitive without to) ?**

Why don't we go for a swim?

Why don't we play tennis?

c **How/Whatabout (+ -ing form/noun) ?**

How about playing tennis/a game of tennis?

3 *Can* и *could* употребляется для предложения возможных действий.

We can watch TV if you like.

We could go to the cinema tomorrow.

В этом случае, *could* - менее прямая и более вежливая форма, чем *can*.

EXERCISE 50A

Peter and Sally are trying to decide what to do this evening.

Complete the conversation using the words in the box. Use some words more than once.

Why don't we Let's shall we How about could

Peter: So, what *shall we do* this evening?

Sally: **Well**, we haven't got much **money**—1___staying in and watching TV?

Peter: Oh, no! I'm fed up with watching TV.

Sally: 2___go out for a drink, then. We can afford one drink each.

Peter: All right. Where 3___go?

Sally: 4___go to The Tropical Bar? They have really good music there.

Peter: Yes, but the drinks are very expensive.

Sally: That's true. Well, we 5___go to the pub on the corner.

Peter: Yes. They have very good videos 6___go there.

Sally: I thought you said you were fed up with watching TV!

Note

-Относительно форм модальных глаголов *shall, can* и *could*, см. 35.2.

51 Habits (Привычные действия): *used to*, *will*, *would*

1 *Used to*

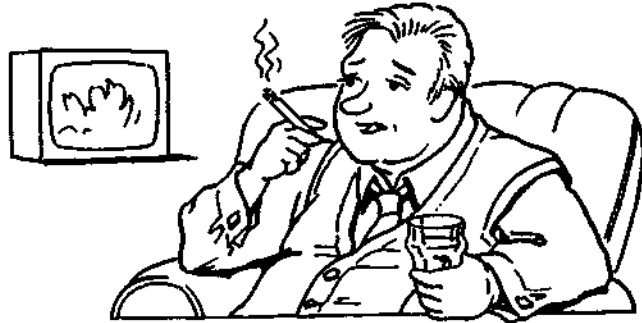
a Use

Used to + infinitive употребляется для выражения привычных действий в прошлом, которые сейчас завершены.

Robert when he was younger



Robert today



Robert **used to** play football when he was younger, but he stopped playing 20 years ago.

[Роберт регулярно играл в футбол в прошлом, но сейчас он не играет.]

More examples:

Kate **used to go** swimming a lot, but she never goes swimming now.

When I was a child, I **used to suck** my thumb.

Used to также употребляется для описания состояния и ситуаций в прошлом, не существующих сейчас.

Robert **used to be** very slim when he was younger.

I **used to live** in London, but I moved in 1980.

Used to употребляется только для выражения в прошлом. Когда речь идет о настоящих привычных действиях или состояниях, употребляется present simple.

Robert **never plays** football now.

Kate **goes** sailing quite often nowadays.

I **live** in Manchester.

Robert **is** quite fat.

Used to не употребляется для выражения длительности действия, т.е. как долго что-то происходило.

I **worked** in Rome for six months. (Not: ~~I used to work~~ in Rome for six months.)

b Form

Used to + infinitive принимает одну и ту же форму во всех лицах.

| | | |
|------------|----------------|------------------------|
| I | | <i>play football.</i> |
| <i>You</i> | <i>used to</i> | <i>live in London.</i> |
| <i>He</i> | | <i>be very slim.</i> |
| <i>She</i> | | |
| <i>etc</i> | | |

Обычно отрицательная форма от *used to* - *didn't use to* (= *did not use to*).

I didn't use to live in London.

*You **didn't** use to like classical music.*

Может также употребляться *never used to*, например: *You never used to like classical music.*

Вопросительная форма обычно образуется с помощью *did ... use to ... ?*

*Where did you use to **live**?*

Did you use to like classical music?

Обратите внимание на отличительное произношение *used* /ju:st/ и *use* /ju:z/ в этой конструкции.

2 *Will* и *would*

a *Will* может употребляться для выражения обычного или привычного поведения, свойственного кому-то.

*Simon loves music. He'll **sit** for hours listening to his stereo.*

Kate is very kind. She'll always help people if she can.

Would употребляется в том же значении для выражения действия в прошлом.

When I was a child my father would sometimes take me fishing.

My grandmother was very absent-minded. She would often buy something and then leave the shop without it.

Will и *would* в этом случае не ударны.

b Если на *will* или *would* падает ударение ('), то это предполагает критику.

*He '**will** slam the door when he comes in. It really makes me angry.*

'She borrowed my camera without asking.' '*She'**would** do a thing like that. She's always borrowing things without asking.'*

3 *Used to* и *would*

Когда речь идет о привычных действиях в прошлом, могут употребляться *used to* или *would*.

*When we were children, we used **to/would** play Cowboys and Indians together.*

*When I was a child, my elder brother used **to/would** take me to the cinema every Saturday morning.*

Когда речь идет о состоянии в прошлом, может употребляться *used to*, но не *would*.

My grandfather used to be a policeman. (Not: My ~~grandfather~~ would be ...)

I used to have a moustache, but I shaved it off. (Not: I would ~~have~~ ...)

EXERCISE 51A

Put one verb in each sentence into the *used to* form and the other verb into the present simple.

Examples:

When Margot first became a doctor, she *used to work* (work) in a small hospital in Brighton, but now she *works* (work) in a large hospital in London.

- 1 Robert _____ (be) interested in football, but he _____ (not | be) very interested in it any more.
- 2 Nowadays Kate _____ (never | go) dancing, but she _____ (go) a lot before she was married.
- 3 That shop _____ (be) a **grocer's** when I was a child. Now it _____ (be) a supermarket.
- 4 Britain _____ (have) military service, but it _____ (not | have) it any more.
- 5 France _____ (be) a republic now, but it _____ (be) a monarchy.
- 6 '_____ (you | like) history when you were at school?' 'No, I didn't, but now I _____ (find) it quite **interesting**.'

EXERCISE 51C

Which of these sentences can be completed with either *used to* or *would*? Which of them can only be completed with *used to*?

Examples:

We *used to* live in a village in the North of England.

When Robert was younger, he *used to/would* go running every morning.

- 1 When Andrew was a small baby he _____ cry a lot.
- 2 When I was little, I _____ be afraid of the dark.
- 3 When we were children, we _____ visit my grandmother every Sunday afternoon.
- 4 When Mrs Woods was younger, she _____ play tennis every weekend.
- 5 Years ago I _____ have a motorbike.
- 6 There _____ be quite a lot of cinemas in the town, but now there **aren't** any.

Note

-Относительно форм модальных *will* и *would* см. 35.2.

-Не смешивайте *used to* + infinitive, например: *He **used to** get up very early* и *be used to* + **-ing** форма, например: *He's **used to** getting up early*. СМ. 89.

EXERCISE 51B

Complete the sentences using *will* or *would* and one of the verbs in the box.

Example:

Robert has got a very bad memory. **He'll often forget** (often) where **he's** parked his car.

| | | | | | |
|----------|-------|------|----|-------|--------|
| carry on | spend | lend | go | throw | forget |
|----------|-------|------|----|-------|--------|

- 1 Kate is very generous. She _____ (always) you money if you need it.
- 2 **Ken's** grandfather was very mean. He _____ (never) anything away if he could use it again.
- 3 Mr Woods is a real **chatterbox!** He _____ talking for hours and hours if you give him a chance.
- 4 When Simon was a child, he _____ (often) hours just looking out of the window.
- 5 '**I'm** always tired these days.' '**Well**, you _____ to bed so late every night, it isn't **surprising!**'

52 Refusals (Отказ): *won't*, *wouldn't*

Won't (=will not) употребляется для выражения отказа что-то выполнить или сделать со стороны людей или предметов.

Annie *won't* do her homework. [Энни отказывается выполнить домашнее задание.]

This machine *won't* work. [Эта машина не хочет работать (не работает).]

Wouldn't (would not) употребляется для выражения отказа что-то выполнить или делать со стороны людей или предметов в прошлом.

This machine *wouldn't* work yesterday. [Эта машина не хотела работать вчера (не работала).]

EXERCISE 52A

Replace the words in italics with ... *won't* ... or ... *wouldn't* ... , as in the examples.

Examples:

I asked my father, but *he refused to lend* me the money.

I asked my father, but *he wouldn't lend* me the money.

I've decided to take the job and I *refuse to change* my mind.

I've decided to take the job and I *won't change* my mind.

1 I pushed hard, but *the window refused to open*.

2 He's proposed to her, but she *refuses to marry* him.

3 I switched on the machine, but it *refused to work*.

4 I've warned her several times about leaving the windows unlocked, but *she refuses to listen to me*.

5 We've asked him, but *he refuses to help* us.

6 We couldn't drive to the country last weekend because *my parents refused to let* me use their car.

53 Promises and threats (Обещания и угрозы): *will*

Will может употребляться для выражения сильного намерения, как, например, в обещаниях и угрозах.

I *will be careful with the car, I promise*.

I *promise I won't be late tomorrow*.

Stop making that noise or I'll scream!

EXERCISE 53A

Complete each sentence using *will* or *won't* and a verb from the box. Then say if the sentence is a promise or a threat.

| | | | | | | |
|-------|----|------|-----|-------|-----|-------|
| leave | do | tell | hit | throw | pay | speak |
|-------|----|------|-----|-------|-----|-------|

Example:

Don't touch my camera or I'll hit you! a threat

- 1 Don't worry. I _____ you the money tomorrow.
- 2 It's getting late. If you don't hurry up, I _____ without you.
- 3 I _____ anyone what you said. Don't worry.
- 4 I'm very sorry I shouted at you. I _____ it again.
- 5 Get out of my room or I _____ you out!
- 6 If you don't help me, I _____ to you ever again.

54 *May/might as well*

May/might as well (+ infinitive without *to*) употребляется для выражения того, что должно быть выполнено, поскольку нет достаточных оснований не выполнить.

'*Shall we get a taxi or wait for the bus?*' 'We might as well wait for the bus. We're not in a hurry, are we?'

'*Why don't we go out for a walk?*' 'We may as well, I suppose. We haven't got anything else to do.'

EXERCISE 54A

Make sentences from the table to go with these ideas.

Example:

You may as well switch off the TV. Nobody is watching it.

- 1 ____ . It's not very far.
- 2 ____ . I'm too ill to go on holiday.
- 3 ____ . It isn't going to stop raining.
- 4 ____ . No one wants any more to eat.
- 5 ____ . There's a chance I'll get it.

| | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| You may as well switch off | to the station. |
| We might as well stay | the table. |
| We may as well walk | the hotel bookings. |
| I might as well apply | the TV. |
| You might as well cancel | at home today. |
| I might as well clear | for the job. |

55 Other uses of (Другие случаи употребления) *should*

1 Verb + *should*

Сочетание *that ... should* может употребляться после глаголов *suggest, insist, recommend, agree*; в неофициальном стиле *that* часто опускается.

I suggest (that) he should see the doctor.

She insisted (that) I should take the money.

I agreed (that) we should tell the police.

Другие конструкции также возможны после этих глаголов. Например:

/ suggest (that) he sees the doctor. (the present)

She insisted (that) I took the money. (the past)

2 Adjective + *should*

Сочетание *(that) ...should* может употребляться после прилагательных, которые выражают чувства, например, *surprised, sorry, shocked, interesting*.

I was surprised (that) she should fail the exam.

I am sorry (that) he should feel so unhappy.

It is interesting (that) you should say that.

Сочетание *(that) ...should* употребляется также после таких прилагательных, как *important* и *essential*.

It is important (that) we should arrive on time.

Подобное значение может также быть выражено и без *should*.

I was surprised (that) she failed the exam.

It is important (that) we arrive on time.

EXERCISE 55A

Report these ideas using the verbs in brackets followed by *(that) ...should*, as in the example.

Example:

'You must visit us,' they said to me. (insist)

They insisted (that) I should visit them.

1 'Why don't you apply for the job?' she said to me. (suggest)

2 'Stay in bed for a few days,' the doctor said to him. (recommend)

3 'You must help me,' he said to me. (insist)

4 'Let's go to the cinema,' they said to us. (suggest)

5 'I'll pay for the damage,' I said to him. (agree)

6 'Try the new Greek restaurant,' my friend said to us. (recommend)

EXERCISE 55B

Complete each sentence using *should* and the most suitable verb in the box. Use each verb only once.

Example:

The situation is very difficult, but it is important that everyone *should stay* calm.

| | | | | | |
|------|------|----|------|------|------|
| come | give | up | pass | stay | feel |
|------|------|----|------|------|------|

- 1 The doctor suggested that I _____ smoking.
- 2 It's essential that Sarah _____ the exams if she wants to go to university.
- 3 It was embarrassing that Simon _____ into the room just as we were talking about him.
- 4 I'm sorry that you _____ so angry. I didn't mean to upset you.

Note

- *Should* может употребляться после *if*, если возможность выражена не совсем определенно, например: *If I should see Maria, I'll give her your message.* *Should* может также употребляться вместо *if*, например: *Should I see Maria, I'll give her your message.* СМ. 68.3, 73.4.
- *Should* в этом значении также употребляется после *in case*, например: *I'll take an umbrella with me when I go out in case it should rain.* СМ. 164.4.

56 *Wish and if only*1 *Wish и if only + past tense*

Wish и *if only* могут употребляться с прошедшим временем и выражать сожаление относительно настоящего времени (для выражения желания, которое на момент речи не сбыточное).

I wish I had a car. [Я хотел бы иметь автомобиль.]

I wish he wasn't so horrible to me. [Я хотел бы, чтобы он не был столь жесток ко мне.]

She wishes she could play the guitar. [Она хотела бы играть на гитаре.]

If only we knew Maria's address. [Если бы только мы знали адрес Марии.]

If only более эмфатично, чем *wish*.

Were вместо *was* часто употребляется после *wish* и *if only*, особенно в официальном стиле.

I wish he weren't so horrible to me.

If only I were better-looking.

2 *Wish и ifonly + would*

I wish you would stop making that noise.

Would употребляется после *wish* и *ifonly* в том случае, когда необходимо что-то предотвратить или сделать по-иному.

/ wish you wouldn't slam the door when you come in. It makes me angry.

I wish he wouldn't leave his clothes lying all over the bathroom floor.

Ifonly you would stop complaining!

3 *Wish и ifonly + past perfect*

Для выражения сожаления по поводу случившегося или не случившегося в прошлом может употребляться *wish* и *ifonly* с past perfect (*had + past participle*).

Oh, I'm tired. I wish I'd gone to bed earlier last night. [Жаль, что вчера я не лег спать раньше.]

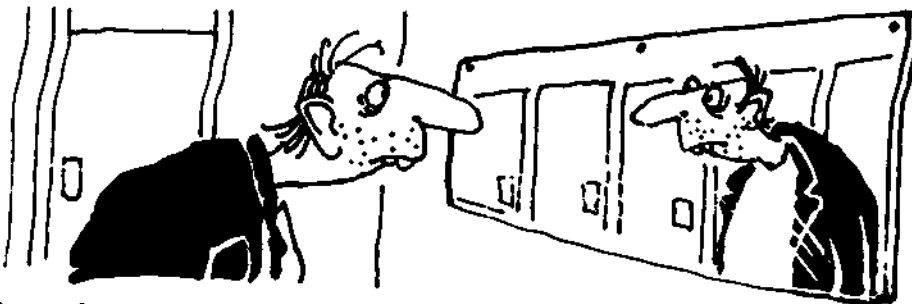
/ wish I hadn't stayed out so late. [Жаль, что я так долго отсутствовал.]

Ifonly you had explained the situation to me. [Если бы вы объяснили мне ситуацию.]

EXERCISE 56A

Read what this man thinks about himself on the left.

Complete what he says on the right.



I'm so shy.

I don't know what to say to people.

1 I get embarrassed so quickly.

2 I can't relax.

3 I find it so difficult to make friends.

4 I'm not good-looking.

5 My ears are so big.

I wish I weren't so shy.

If only I knew what to say to people.

I wish _____

I wish _____

I wish _____

I wish _____

If only _____

EXERCISE 56B

Some people are complaining about the things they would like other people to do or to stop doing. Complete what they are saying. Use *would/wouldn't* and the words in the box.

Example:

A zoo keeper: 'I wish people *wouldn't feed the animals.*'

- | |
|---|
| take their litter home pick the flowers clean the bath after they've used it do their homework on time feed the animals keep together on a tour |
|---|

- 1 A teacher: 'I wish my students _____.'
- 2 A hotel chambermaid: 'If only guests _____.'
- 3 A park keeper: 'I wish people _____.'
- 4 A street cleaner: 'If only people _____.'
- 5 A travel guide: 'I wish people _____.'

EXERCISE 56C

Each of these people did something yesterday which they now regret. What does each person wish?

Use *He/She wishes ...* and the words in the box.

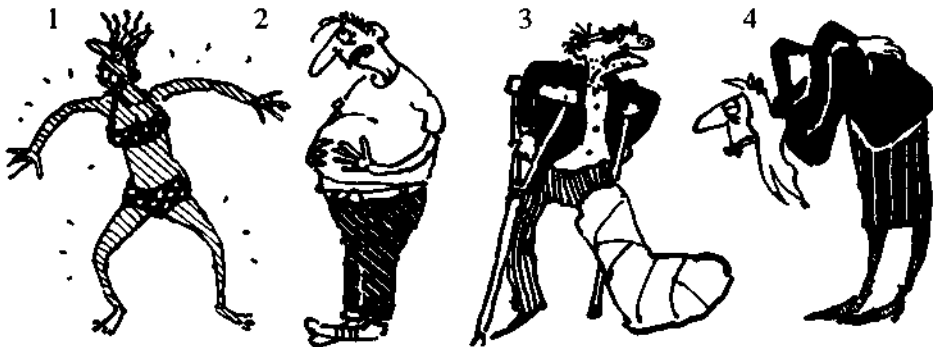
Example:



- | |
|--|
| (try) to lift a heavy table on her own (go) out in the rain without an umbrella (eat) less (drive) more carefully (stay) in the sun so long |
|--|

Mrs A has caught a bad cold.

She wishes she hadn't gone out in the rain without an umbrella.



Miss B has got very bad sunburn.

Mr C has got an awful stomachache.

Mr D has hurt his leg in a car crash.

Mrs E has hurt her back.

57 *Would rather* (Предпочитать)

- 1 *Would rather* означает 'предпочитать'. После *would rather* употребляется infinitive без *to*.

would rather + infinitive without to

'*Would you like to go on holiday in June ?*' '*I'd rather go in July.*'

Would you rather meet on Monday or Tuesday?

Отрицательная форма образуется следующим образом с *would rather not*:

I'd rather not lend him any money.

Обратите также внимание на конструкцию *would rather (do something) than (do something else)*.

I'd rather take a taxi to the station than go by bus.

- 2 *Would rather + past tense* может также употребляться для выражения того, что одно лицо предпочитало бы, чтобы другое что-то сделало.

would rather + subject + past tense

I'd rather you didn't open that window. I'm cold.

'*Do you want me to go home ?*' '*I'd rather you stayed here.*'

I'd rather John didn't borrow my car.

Здесь употребляется прошедшее время, например, *you didn't open, you stayed, John didn't borrow*, однако значение относится к настоящему или будущему времени, но не к прошедшему.

EXERCISE 57 A

Complete the sentences using *would rather* and the verbs in the box. Use each verb only once.

Example:

What would you like to drink? *Would you rather have* (you) wine or beer?

listen do not play go have stay

- 1 'Shall we go out this evening?' 'I think I ____ at home.'
- 2 It's a beautiful day. Shall we go to the beach or ____ (you) to the country?
- 3 'Would you like to watch TV?' 'I ____ to some music.'
- 4 We could wait for the next bus or walk home. What ____ (you) ?
- 5 The weather is too hot for me. I ____ tennis this afternoon.

EXERCISE 57B

You are speaking to a friend. Complete the sentences using *I'd rather you* and the past **form** of the verbs in the box. Use each verb only once.

| | | | | |
|------|----------|-------------|-------|-------------|
| come | not open | stay | phone | not turn on |
|------|----------|-------------|-------|-------------|

Example:

You could go now if you want to, but *I'd rather you stayed* a bit longer.

1 _____ the window. I'm rather cold.

2 **I** could phone the restaurant if you like, but _____ them.

3 _____ the TV if you don't mind. I've got a terrible headache.

4 '**Shall** I come and see you tomorrow **morning**?' '_____ in the afternoon. I'll be quite busy in the **morning**.'

58 *It's time* (Пора, время)

1 После конструкции *it's time* (for someone [для **кого-то**]) может употребляться *to* infinitive.
It's time for us to leave. *It's time to go to bed now.*

2 *It's time* + past tense может также употребляться, когда речь идет о том, что кто-то должен был что-то уже сделать.

*Your bedroom is in a terrible mess. **Don't** you think it's time you cleaned it?*
I'm tired. It's time I went to bed.

Здесь употребляется past tense, например, *you cleaned*, *I went*, однако значение соотносится с настоящим или будущим временем, но не с прошедшим.

Можно также употреблять *it's about time*.

*Your bedroom is in a terrible mess. **Don't** you think it's about time you cleaned it?*

EXERCISE 58B

Complete the sentences using *it's time* and a past tense.

Andrew's hair looks awful. He hasn't washed it for a long time. He says: *It's time I washed my hair.*

1 Simon received a bill two weeks ago, but he still hasn't paid it. His friends asks him: Don't you think _____?

2 You're taking an important exam next month, but you haven't started studying for it yet. You say: _____

3 Sally promised to phone a friend, Mike, two weeks ago, but she still hasn't phoned him. Her mother says: Don't you think _____?

4 There is something wrong with your car. **You've** been thinking of taking it to the garage for weeks **now!** You say: _____

19 The passive: general (Страдательный залог: общие положения)

1 Form

а Страдательный залог глаголов в различных временных формах образуется с помощью *be* (например, *is, was, is being, have been*) + past participle.

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| Present simple: | am/are/is + past participle <i>The office is locked every evening.</i> |
| Present continuous: | am/are/is + <i>being</i> + past participle <i>The house is being painted at the moment.</i> |
| Past simple: | was/were + past participle <i>My car was stolen last night.</i> |
| Past continuous: | was/were + <i>being</i> + past participle <i>The bridge was being repaired last week.</i> |
| Present perfect simple: | have/has + <i>been</i> + past participle <i>Sarah has been invited to the party.</i> |
| Past perfect simple: | had + <i>been</i> + past participle <i>/ thought that you had been told the news.</i> |

Past continuous passives (**have/has/had** + *been being* + past participle) употребляется очень редко.

The past participle of regular verbs ends in *-ed* eg *locked, painted*. Irregular verbs have different past participle forms eg *steal* → *stolen*, *tell* → *told* (СМ. 190).

When we add *-ed* to verbs, there are sometimes changes in spelling eg *stop* → *stopped*. СМ. 188.3, 4, 6. Относительно произношения *-ed* см. 187.2.

3 Compare these active and passive sentences:

Active: Someone locks the office every evening.

Passive: The office is locked every evening.

Active: Someone has invited Sarah to the party.

Passive: Sarah has been invited to the party.

Обратите внимание, что дополнение глагола в действительном залоге (например, *the office, Sarah*) становится подлежащим в страдательном залоге.

с Правила выбора времени в страдательном залоге те же, что и в действительном. Например, если речь идет о том, что находится сейчас в развитии, употребляется present continuous.

The house is being painted at the moment.

2 Use

a Passive часто употребляется в том случае, когда неизвестно, кто или что является производителем действия.

My car was stolen last night. [Мой автомобиль был угнан прошлой ночью.] (Мне не известно, кто угнал автомобиль.)

b Passive употребляется также в том случае, когда производитель действия не представляет интереса.

The factory was painted during the war.
Sarah has been invited to the party.

В этих предложениях для нас интерес представляет фабрика и Сара, а не то, кто покрасил фабрику или кто пригласил Сару.

c Passive также употребляется в том случае, когда нет необходимости указывать конкретно, кто или что производит что-то. Compare:

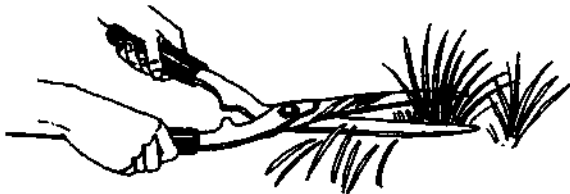
Active: *I made a mistake.*

Passive: *A mistake was made.*

EXERCISE 59A

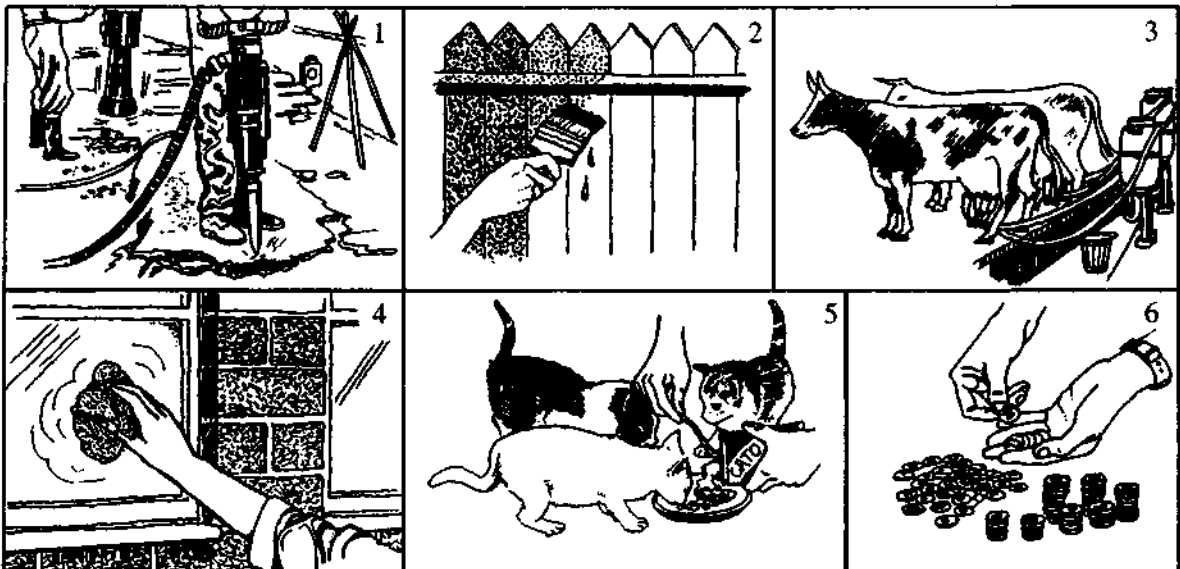
What is being done in these pictures? Complete the sentences using the present continuous passive of these verbs: *paint, feed, milk, count, repair, cut, clean*.

Example:



The grass is being cut.

- 1 The road _____
- 2 The fence _____
- 3 The cows _____
- 4 The windows _____
- 5 The cats _____
- 6 The money _____



EXERCISE 59B

Compare the two pictures. Picture A shows a room some time ago in the past. Picture B shows the same room as it is now. What is different? Complete the sentences using the present perfect simple passive of these verbs: *repair, paint, take out, put up, clean*. Use some verbs more than once.

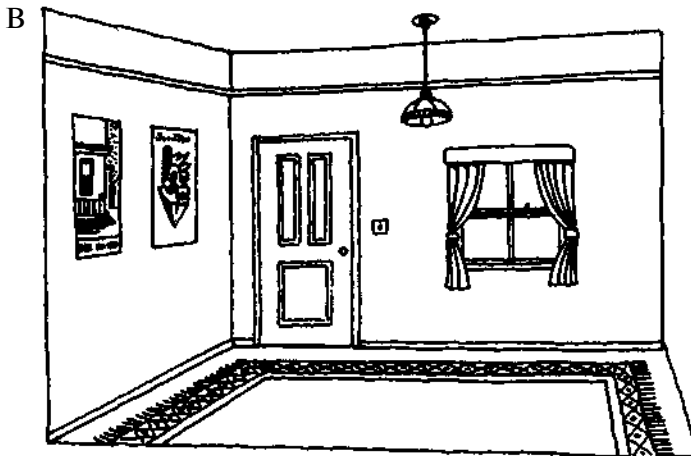
Example:

In picture B ...

The door *has been repaired*.

Some new curtains *have been put up*.

- 1 The window ____
- 2 The carpet ____
- 3 The walls ____
- 4 The light ____
- 5 Some posters ____
- 6 The old fireplace ____



EXERCISE 59C

Complete the sentences.

(i) Use the present simple passive of the verbs in the box.

| | | | | | |
|-----|------|---------|-------|--------|------|
| use | play | destroy | speak | export | make |
|-----|------|---------|-------|--------|------|

Example:

Bread *is made* from wheat.

- 1 Football ____ all over the world.
- 2 Millions of cars ____ from Japan every year.
- 3 A compass ____ for showing direction.
- 4 How many languages ____ in Switzerland?
- 5 Millions of trees ____ by pollution every year.

(ii) Use the past simple passive of the verbs in the box.

| |
|--|
| discover invent play assassinate paint build |
|--|

Example:

President John F. Kennedy was *assassinated* in Dallas in 1963.

1 The 1990 World Cup for soccer _____ in Italy.

2 When _____ television _____ ?

3 The first pyramids of Egypt _____ around 3000 BC.

4 Penicillin _____ by Alexander Fleming in 1928.

5 The *Mona Lisa* (*La Gioconda*) _____ by Leonardo da Vinci.

(iii) Use the past continuous or past perfect passive of the verbs in the box.

| |
|---|
| not invite clean sell repair interview steal |
|---|

Example:

I couldn't wear my suit last Saturday. It was *being cleaned*.

1 When I got back to the car **park**, my car wasn't there. It _____

2 We couldn't use the photocopier this morning. It _____

3 By the time I arrived at the concert hall, there were no tickets left. They _____

4 We didn't go to the party on Saturday because we _____

5 The man admitted stealing the money while he _____ by the police.

EXERCISE 59D

Choose the correct form: active or passive.

Example:

A valuable painting ~~stole~~/*was stolen* from the Central Art Gallery late last night. The thieves ~~entered~~/*were entered* the gallery through a small upstairs window.

1 Walt Disney ~~created~~/*was created* the cartoon character Mickey Mouse.

2 This problem ~~discussed~~/*was discussed* at the last meeting.

3 In 1964 Martin Luther King ~~won~~/*was won* the Nobel Peace Prize. In 1968 he ~~assassinated~~/*was assassinated* in Memphis, Tennessee.

4 The president ~~arrived~~/*was arrived* in Rome yesterday afternoon. Later he ~~interviewed~~/*was interviewed* on Italian TV.

5 Teachers ~~have given~~/*have been given* a new pay rise by the government. The news ~~announced~~/*was announced* earlier today.

Note

-Относительно страдательного залога см. также 60–64.

*) The passive: infinitive and *-ing* forms (Страдательный залог: инфинитив и *-ing* формы)

- 1 Существует форма passive infinitive: *be* + past participle. Она употребляется после модальных глаголов (*must, can, will, etc*) и ряда других конструкций (например, *going to, have to, want to* и *would like to*).
This door must be kept locked.
The job can't be done.
He's going to be interviewed next week.
The new motorway will be opened next summer.
I don't want to be disturbed.
- 2 Существует форма passive perfect infinitive: *have been* + past participle. Она может употребляться для выражения прошедшего времени.
The newspaper may have been thrown away last night.
We should have been told about the dangers.
- 3 Существует также *-ing* форма в страдательном залоге: *being* + past participle.
/ don't like being cheated.
He remembers being given the book.

EXERCISE 60A

Put these sentence into the passive (leaving out someone, they, we).

Example:

Someone might steal the car. The car might be stolen.

- 1 Someone will clean the room.
- 2 They had to cut down that tree.
- 3 Someone should tell Sally what happened.
- 4 They're going to build a new hospital.
- 5 We can solve the problem.
- 6 Someone has to finish the job.
- 7 They may send the man to prison.
- 8 We must do something now.

EXERCISE 60B

Complete the sentences using the passive perfect infinitive.

Example:

Why doesn't Kate know about the meeting? She should have been told (tell) ages ago.

- 1 'Sally is late this evening.' 'She might _____ (delay) at work.'
- 2 Why is all this rubbish still here? It ought to _____ (throw away) yesterday.
- 3 The sweater I wanted to buy **isn't** in the shop window any more. It must _____ (sell).
- 4 It was lucky that you didn't fall off the ladder. You might _____ (kill).
- 5 You shouldn't have left all that money in your hotel room. It could _____ (steal).

EXERCISE 60C

Put these sentences into the passive, as in the example.

Example:

I don't like people shouting at me. / *don't like being shouted at.*

1 I don't like people staring at me.

2 I can't stand people telling me what to do.

3 I don't like people interrupting me.

4 I dislike people making jokes about me.

5 I enjoy people praising me.

Are these things true for you?

61 Using *get* instead of *be* in the passive (Употребление *get* вместо *be* в страдательном залоге)

Иногда для образования страдательного залога глаголов употребляется *get* (+ past participle) вместо *be* (+ past participle). Это происходит, например, когда речь идет о вещах, **проходящих** случайно или неожиданно.

My flat got burgled when I was on holiday.

I was surprised that I didn't get invited to the party.

My parents' fence got blown down in the storm.

Get употребляется главным образом в неофициальном стиле.

EXERCISE 61 A

Billy Palmer was a burglar once. He is speaking about a night some years ago when everything went wrong for him.

Complete Palmer's story using the past simple passive with *get*.

'It was terrible. First of all, my jeans *got ripped* (rip) as I was climbing over the garden wall. Then I ____1____ (stick) climbing through the bathroom window. Then I ____2____ (bit) by a dog inside the house. The dog made so much noise that everyone in the house woke up and I ____3____ (hit) over the head with an umbrella. Then, when I finally got out of the house, there was a police car waiting there. But, to my surprise, I ____4____ (not | caught) that night. Although it wouldn't really have mattered if I had. Two weeks later, I ____5____ (arrest) burgling another house and I ____6____ (sentence) to three years in prison.'

2 Verbs with two objects in the passive (Глаголы с двумя дополнениями в страдательном залоге)

Некоторые глаголы, например *give*, могут иметь два дополнения.

Someone gave Jimmy the money. (*Jimmy* и *the money* - два дополнения.)

В подобных случаях можно образовать два разных предложения в страдательном залоге.

Jimmy was given the money. The money was given to Jimmy.

Вообще, для предложений в страдательном залоге более обычно, когда их начинают с лица.

Вот некоторые глаголы, которые могут иметь два дополнения: *send, offer, show, pay, teach, promise* и *tell*.

I was sent a telegram.

She will be told the news.

EXERCISE 62A

Put these sentences into the passive, beginning with the words given.

Example:

They promised Robert an interview for the job.

Robert was promised an interview for the job.

1 They showed Sarah the photographs.

4 I hope that someone will give Sally the message. I hope that Sally _____.

Sarah _____

2 Normally, they pay me my salary every month. Normally, I _____

5 They didn't ask me for my address. I _____

3 I think that they have sent us the wrong tickets. I think that we _____

6 I thought that someone had told you about the meeting. I thought that you _____

3 The passive with *by* and *with* (Страдательный залог с *by* и *with*)

1 *By* + agent (агент)

Compare:

Active: Marconi invented the radio.

Passive: *The radio was invented by* Marconi.

Active: The strong winds blew down a number of trees.

Passive: *A number of trees were blown down by* the strong winds.

Иногда подлежащее в предложении в действительном залоге (например, *Marconi, the strong winds*) употребляется как 'агент' в предложении в страдательном залоге. Когда это имеет место, для введения агента в страдательном залоге употребляется *by*.

By + агент употребляется лишь только в том случае, когда важно знать, кто или что ответственно за выполнение чего-то.

2 *With* + instrument (орудие)

With употребляется в сочетании с орудием, которое выступает как агенс и что-то выполняет. Compare:

I was hit with an umbrella. I was hit by an old lady.

3 *With* + material (вещество)

With также употребляется, когда речь идет о веществе или составных частях.

*The room was filled with smoke.
Irish coffee is made with whiskey.*

EXERCISE 63A

Complete the sentences using the past simple passive of the verbs in the box and *by*.

| | | | |
|--------|----------|---------|----------|
| paint | write | compose | and sing |
| invent | discover | direct | |

Example:

The Old Man and the Sea was written by Ernest Hemingway.

- 1 Radium _____ Pierre and Marie Curie.
- 2 *The Goldrush* _____ Charlie Chaplin.
- 3 *Imagine* _____ John **Lennon**.
- 4 The safety razor _____ King Camp Gillette.
- 5 *The Chair* _____ Vincent van Gogh.

EXERCISE 63B

Complete the sentences with *by* or *with*. Example:

My desk was covered *with* papers.

- 1 These photos were taken _____ a very cheap camera.
- 2 These photos were taken _____ my sister.
- 3 The cake was made _____ dried fruit.
- 4 The cake was made _____ my aunt.
- 5 The garage was **painted** _____ a new kind of paint.
- 6 The garage was painted _____ a friend of mine.
- 7 The safe was blown **open** _____ the robbers.
- 8 The safe was blown **open** _____ dynamite.

64 *It is said that he ... /He is said to ... etc* (Говорят ... и др.)

1 Когда речь идет о том, что другие люди говорят, считают и т.д., можно употреблять две формы в страдательном залоге. Compare:

Active: *People say that Mr Ross is a millionaire.*

Passive (1): *It + passive + that-clause*
It is said that Mr Ross is a millionaire.

Passive (2): Subject + passive + *to* infinitive
Mr Ross is said to be a millionaire.



Эти формы в страдательном залоге часто употребляются в официальном стиле со следующими глаголами:

| | | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------------|-------------|
| <i>say</i> | <i>think</i> | <i>believe</i> | <i>consider</i> | <i>understand</i> | <i>know</i> |
| <i>report</i> | <i>expect</i> | <i>allege</i> | <i>claim</i> | <i>acknowledge</i> | |

It is believed that they own a lot of land in the north.

They are believed to own a lot of land in the north.

It is reported that the president is seriously ill.

The president is reported to be seriously ill.

It is expected that a new law will be introduced next year.

A new law is expected to be introduced next year.

Когда мнение и т.д. относится к более раннему действию, употребляется 'perfect infinitive' (*to have* + past participle). Compare:

It is believed that the fire started late last night.

The fire is believed to have started late last night.

It was thought that two prisoners had escaped.

Two prisoners were thought to have escaped.

2 *Be supposed to*

Supposed to может употребляться в значении "говорят, считают".

I'd like to read that book. It's supposed to be very good. [Считают, что она очень хорошая.]

He's supposed to have been married before. [Полагают, что он был ранее женат.]

Supposed to иногда предполагает некоторое сомнение относительно истинности или неистинности чего-то.

Обратите внимание, что *supposed to* употребляется также для выражения ожидаемого действия как результата долга, предварительной договоренности или существующих правил, например: *I'm supposed to see Maria this afternoon.* СМ. 42.3.

EXERCISE 64A

Read each sentence. Then make two new sentences in the passive, beginning with the words in brackets.

Example:

People expect that taxes will be reduced soon.

(It) (Taxes)

It is expected that taxes will be reduced soon.

Taxes are expected to be reduced soon.

1 People say that the monument is **over** 2000 years old.

(It) (The monument)

2 People expect that the president will resign.

(It) (The president)

3 People think the **fire** started at about 8 o'clock.

(It) (The fire)

4 Journalists reported that seven people had been injured in the fire.

(It) (Seven people)

EXERCISE 64B

Read each sentence. Then make a new sentence with *be + supposed to*, as in the example.

Example:

People say that Whitby is a very nice town.
Whitby is supposed to be a very nice town.

- 1 People say that the new film is very violent.
- 2 People say that those cars are rather unreliable.
- 3 People say that he moved to New York last year.
- 4 People say that the new restaurant is very expensive.
- 5 People say that the concert was very good.

65 *Have something done*

1 Form

| | have + object | + past participle |
|------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>/ am having</i> | a garage | <i>built at the moment.</i> |
| <i>How often do you have</i> | your hair | <i>cut?</i> |
| <i>We had</i> | our computer | <i>serviced last week.</i> |
| <i>Simon has just had</i> | a suit | <i>made.</i> |
| <i>You should have</i> | your eyes | <i>tested.</i> |
| <i>Are you going to have</i> | new carpets | <i>fitted in your flat?</i> |

The past participle of regular verbs ends in *-ed* eg *painted, serviced*. Irregular verbs have different past participle forms eg *build* → **built**, *cut* → *cut* (see 190).

When we add *-ed* to verbs, there are sometimes changes in spelling eg *fit* → **fitted**. See 188.6. For the pronunciation of *-ed*, see 187.2.

2 Use

- a Конструкция *have something done* употребляется для выражения ситуации, в которой для выполнения чего-то для одних привлекаются другие лица.



I'm having a garage built at the moment.

Compare:

I'm building a garage at the moment. [Я сейчас строю гараж. (Я строю гараж сам.)]

I'm having a garage built at the moment. [Мне строят сейчас гараж. (Я нанял кого-то, чтобы это сделали для меня.)]

More examples:

We had the carpet cleaned by a professional carpet cleaner. We didn't do it ourselves.
I usually have my car serviced at a garage in East Street.

- b** *Have something done* может также употребляться в ситуациях, когда никто не привлекается для выполнения чего-то.

I had my leg broken in a football match.

We had our fence blown down in a storm last week.

Have something done часто употребляется таким образом, когда с кем-то происходит что-то неприятное или неожиданное.

Обратите внимание, что *get something done* может часто употребляться вместо *have something done*, особенно, в неофициальном стиле, например: / **must get this jacket cleaned.**

EXERCISE 65A

What are these people having done? Make sentences using the words in the box.

Example:

1 *They're having their flat decorated.*

| | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| a photograph (take) | their flat (decorate) |
| a tooth (take out) | her windows (clean) |
| a suit (make) | her hair (do) |



EXERCISE 65B

Complete the sentences using the correct form of *have something done*.

Example:

I haven't *had my central heating serviced* (my central heating | service) since last autumn.

1 Are you going to _____ (these shoes | repair) or shall I throw them away?

2 My neighbours are _____ (an extension | build) onto their house at the moment.

3 I must _____ (my glasses | mend). They keep falling off.

4 Where do you _____ (your hair | do)? It always looks very nice.

5 I _____ (four new tyres | fit) on my car last month.

6 I've just _____ (my suit | dry-clean).

EXERCISE 65C

Something unpleasant happened to each of these people last week. Make sentences using *have something done*.

Example:

Kate *had her wallet stolen* (her wallet | steal) from her bag while she was out shopping.

- 1 Peter_____ (his flat | burgle) while he was out at work.
- 2 Mr and Mrs Woods_____ (the roof of their house | damage) in a storm.
- 3 Lynne_____ (the radio | steal) from **her** car.
- 4 My brother_____ (his nose | break) in a football match.

66 *When and if*

Compare:

If употребляется в том случае, когда нет **уверенности** в том, что что-то произойдет.

If I see Sarah, I'll invite her to the party.
[Если я увижу Сару, я приглашу ее на вечеринку. (Вероятно, я увижу Сару, вероятно, **нет**.)]

I'll visit Martin **if** I go to Manchester. [Я навещу Мартина, если поеду в Манчестер. (Вероятно, я поеду в Манчестер, вероятно, **нет**.)]

When употребляется в том случае, когда есть уверенность в том, что что-то произойдет.

When I see Sally, I'll invite her to the party.
[Когда я увижу Сэлли, я приглашу ее на вечеринку. (Я уверен, что увижу **Сэлли**.)]

I'll visit Martin **when** I go to Manchester.
[Я навещу Мартина, когда поеду в Манчестер. (Я уверен, что поеду в **Манчестер**.)]

EXERCISE 66A

Cindy lives in Brighton. She is going to visit her friend Sarah in London on Sunday. Complete the telephone conversation using *if* or *when*.

Sarah: What time are you coming on Sunday, Cindy?

Cindy: I'm not sure yet. There's a train from Brighton at 9.00. *If* I take that one, I'll arrive in London at 10.20. The next train is at 9.35_____1_____I catch that one, I won't be there until 11.25.

Sarah: Will you phone me _____2_____ you know which train you're catching? I'd like to meet you at the station_____3_____you arrive.

Cindy: Yes, all right. I may phone you tomorrow. But _____4_____ I don't, I'll phone you on Friday evening. OK?

Sarah: All right. What would you like to do _____5_____you're here on Sunday?

Cindy: Shall we go for a walk_____6_____the weather is fine?

Sarah: Yes, all right. We could go to the zoo_____7_____you like!

Note

– Иногда *if* = *when* (*ever*). См. 72.

– Относительно предложений с *if* см. также 67-74.

67 Conditionals: introduction (Условное наклонение: введение)

1 *If* может употребляться со многими различными конструкциями. Ниже представлены наиболее употребительные:

a Open present or future conditionals (see 68)

If + present simple + *will* + infinitive

If he asks me, I'll help him. [Если он меня попросит, я ему помогу. (Возможно, он попросит **меня**.)]

b Unreal present or future conditionals (see 69)

If + past simple + *would* + infinitive

If he asked me I would help him. [Если бы он попросил меня, я бы ему помог. (Но он не попросит меня или он, возможно, не **попросит**.)]

c Unreal past conditionals (see 71)

If + past perfect + *would have* + past participle

If he had asked me, I would have helped him. [Если бы он попросил меня, я бы ему помог. (Но он не попросил **меня**.)]

d General conditionals (see 72)

If + present simple + present simple

If he asks me, I always help him. [Если он меня попросит, я всегда ему помогу. (Когда бы он меня ни попросил ...)]

2 Придаточное предложение с *if* может находиться как перед главным предложением, так и после него.

If it rains, I'll stay at home.
I'll stay at home if it rains.

Часто после придаточного предложения с //, когда оно стоит перед главным предложением, ставится запятая (,).

3 Сослагательное наклонение может употребляться и без *if* (см.: 73).

Unless we hurry, we'll be late.
Suppose you won a lot of money, what would you do?

68 Open present or future conditionals (Открытое настоящее время или будущее условное наклонение)

1 Basic form (See also 3 below.)

| IF-CLAUSE (ПРИДАТОЧНОЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЕ С IF) | MAIN CLAUSE (ГЛАВНОЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЕ) |
|--|---|
| <i>If I go out, If you don't study, If they offer you the job</i> | <i>I'll buy a newspaper. you won't pass your exam. what will you do ?</i> |

if + present simple + will + infinitive without to

Эта конструкция часто называется 'первое сослагательное наклонение' ('first conditional').

2 Use

Эта конструкция употребляется в том случае, когда существует предположение, что действие в придаточном предложении с *if* произойдет в будущем.

If I go out, I'll buy a newspaper. [Если я выйду, я куплю газету. (Возможно, я куплю газету, возможно, нет.)]

If we have enough time, we'll visit Robert. [Если у нас будет достаточно времени, мы навестим Роберта. (Возможно, у нас будет достаточно времени, возможно, нет.)]

Эта конструкция также употребляется в том случае, когда существует предположение, что действие в придаточном предложении с *if* реально в настоящем времени.

If you're hungry, I'll make you something to eat. [Если вы голодны, я приготовлю вам что-то поесть. (Возможно, вы голодны, возможно, нет.)]

3 Other forms

a Можно также употреблять *shall* вместо *will* с *I* и *we* в главном предложении.

If I fail the exam, I shall take it again.

b В этой конструкции может употребляться модальный глагол, например, *can*, *may* вместо *will* в главном предложении.

If we have enough time, we can visit Robert.

c В главном предложении может также употребляться повелительное наклонение.

If you see Maria, give her a message for me, please.

d В придаточном предложении с *if* может употребляться present perfect или present continuous вместо present simple.

If you have finished the letter, I'll post it for you.

I'll come back later if you're working now.

e Можно также употреблять *should* после г/в случае, когда существует меньшая уверенность в возможности действия. Compare:

If I see Maria, I'll give her your message. | *If I should see Maria, I'll give her your message.*
(Возможно, я увижу Марию.) | (Я менее уверен, что увижу Марию.)

Когда существует меньшая уверенность в выполнении действия, предложение может начинаться с *should*.

Should I see Maria, I'll give her your message.

EXERCISE 68A

Put the verbs into the correct form: *will/won't* for the present simple. Are these things true?

Example:

If we *keep on* (keep on) using more and more cars, *we'll run out* (run out) of oil.

- 1 If we ____ (run out) of oil, we ____- (need) other kinds of energy.
- 2 Pollution ____ (increase) if we ____ (use) more oil and coal.
- 3 If pollution ____ (increase), more and more trees ____ (die).
- 4 The climate ____ (change) if more trees ____ (die).
- 5 If we ____ (try) to control pollution, it ____ (be) very expensive.
- 6 If we ____ (not control) pollution soon, it ____ (be) too late!

EXERCISE 68B

Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

Example:

If I don't leave now, I *might be* late.

have finished can lend might ~~be~~ should need
are feeling may go should phone

- 1 If you need any more money I ____ you some.
- 2 You can go now if you ____ .
- 3 If the weather is fine tomorrow, we ____ for a picnic.
- 4 Just ask me if you ____ any help.
- 5 If anyone ____ for me while I am out, tell them I'll be back at 4 o'clock.
- 6 Go to bed now if you ____ tired.

9 Unreal present or future conditionals (Нереальное настоящее или будущее сослагательное наклонение)

- 1 Basic form (See also 3 below.)

IF-CLAUSE

MAIN CLAUSE

*If I had a lot of money,
If he got up earlier,
If you didn't pass the exam,*

*I'd travel round the world.
he wouldn't be late for work.
would you take it again?*

if + past simple + *would* + infinitive without *to*

Эта конструкция часто называется 'второе сослагательное наклонение' ('second conditional').

2 Use

Эта конструкция употребляется для выражения нереальных настоящих или будущих ситуаций.

If I had a lot of money, I'd travel round the world. [Если бы у меня было много денег, я бы путешествовал по всему свету. (Но у меня денег немного.)]

If I didn't feel so tired, I'd come out with you. [Если бы я не был столь уставшим, я бы пошел с тобой. (Но я чувствую себя очень уставшим.)]

If the weather was nice, I'd go to the beach. [Если бы погода была прекрасной, я бы пошел на пляж. (Но погода не прекрасная.)]

Такие предложения также употребляются для выражения маловероятных настоящих или будущих ситуаций.

If she really loved you, she wouldn't be so horrible to you.
If I won a lot of money, I'd take a long holiday.

Форма past tense, например *had, loved*, не имеет значения прошедшего времени в этих предложениях; она имеет гипотетическое настоящее или будущее значение.

3 Other forms

a Часто после *if* употребляется *were* вместо *was*, особенно в более официальном стиле.

If the weather were nice, I'd go to the beach.
I'd come out for a walk with you if I weren't so busy.

Часто *if I were you* употребляется для выражения совета.

If I were you, I'd apply for the job.

b В главном предложении вместо *would* могут употребляться модальные глаголы *might* или *could*.

If I won a lot of money, I might stop working. (= ... Я бы, вероятно, прекратил работать.)
/ could repair the car, if I had the right tools. (= Я бы смог отремонтировать автомобиль ...)

EXERCISE 69A



Complete the sentences.

Example:

What *would* this woman *do* if she *knew* the boy was there?

- 1 If she _____ he was there, she _____ him to go away.
- 2 She _____ her purse and perhaps she _____ the police.
- 3 What _____ the boy _____ if he _____ the two policemen were nearby?
- 4 If he _____, he _____ to take the woman's purse.
- 5 Perhaps he _____ away if he _____ them.

do, know

know, tell

move, call

do, know

know, not | try

run, see

70 Open and unreal present or future conditionals (Открытое и нереальное настоящее или будущее сослагательное наклонение)

‘Открытое’ сослагательное наклонение (см.: 68) употребляется для выражения возможных настоящих или будущих ситуаций.

If you need the money, I'll lend it to you. [Если вам нужны деньги, то я вам одолжу (Вероятно, вам нужны **деньги**.)]

If we leave at 1.30, we'll arrive at 2.30. [Если мы уедем в 1.30, то прибудем в 2.30. (Вероятно, мы уедем в **1.30**.)]

‘Нереальное’ сослагательное наклонение (см.: 69) употребляется для выражения нереальных или маловероятных настоящих или будущих ситуаций.

If you needed the money, I'd lend it to you. [Если бы вам нужны были деньги, то я вам одолжил бы. (Но вам не нужны деньги или вы, вероятно, не нуждаетесь в **них**.)]

If we left at 2.00, we'd arrive late. [Если бы мы уехали в 1.30, то прибыли бы в 2.30. (Но мы не уедем в 2.00 или мы, вероятно, тогда не **уедем**.)]

EXERCISE 70A

Find the endings. Put the verbs into the correct form.

Example: 1 *I'd give up work if I were a millionaire.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 I'd give up work | if it _____ (be) a nice day tomorrow. |
| 2 We'll go for a picnic. | if I _____ (not have) such a big nose. |
| 3 If I took more exercise, | the world _____ (be) a better place. |
| 4 I'll watch TV tonight | I _____ (go) to the concert next week. |
| 5 I'd be better-looking | if I _____ (be) a millionaire. |
| 6 If people weren't so greedy, | if I _____ (not go) out. |
| 7 If I can get a ticket, | I _____ (not be) so unfit. |

71 Unreal past conditionals (Нереальное прошедшее сослагательное наклонение)

1 Basic form (See also 3 below.)

| IF-CLAUSE | MAIN CLAUSE |
|--|--|
| <i>If the weather had been nice yesterday,</i> | <i>I would have gone to the beach.</i> |
| <i>If I had studied hard,</i> | <i>I would have passed the exam.</i> |
| <i>If you hadn't missed your bus,</i> | <i>you wouldn't have been late for school.</i> |
| <i>If I hadn't helped you,</i> | <i>what would you have done?</i> |

if + past perfect + *would have* + past participle

Эта конструкция часто называется ‘третье сослагательное наклонение’ (‘third conditional’).

Стяжение *had* и *would* - ‘d. *If I'd (= had) studied hard, I'd (= would) have passed the exam.*

2 Use

Эта конструкция употребляется для выражения нереальных ситуаций в прошлом.

*If the weather had **been** nice yesterday, I would have gone to the beach.* (Но погода не была прекрасной.)

If I'd studied hard, I would have passed the exam. (Но я не занимался прилежно.)

If you hadn't missed your bus, you wouldn't have been late for school. (Но вы опоздали на автобус.)

3 Other forms

В главном предложении вместо *would* могут употребляться модальные глаголы *might* и *could*.

If you had taken the exam, you might have passed it. (= ... вы, вероятно, сдали бы его.)

I / could have repaired the car, if I'd had the right tools. (= Я бы смог отремонтировать автомобиль ...)

EXERCISE 71 A

Put **the** verbs into the correct form: the past perfect, or *would (n't) have* + past participle.

Example:

She would have spoken to you if she *had seen* (see) you.

- 1 If I _____ (not | be) so busy yesterday, I would have visited you.
- 2 If you had seen the film, you _____ (enjoy) it.
- 3 She would have gone to university if she _____ (have) the opportunity.
- 4 If he had been more careful, he _____ (not | have) an accident.

EXERCISE 71B

Read the situation. Then make a sentence with *if*.

Example:

I didn't have time. I didn't go shopping.

If I'd had time, I would have gone shopping.

- 1 She was ill. She didn't go to work.
- 2 It rained all morning. We didn't go out.
- 3 She didn't have enough money. She couldn't buy the shoes.
- 4 I wasn't hungry. I didn't have breakfast.
- 5 He was tired. He made a mistake.
- 6 We didn't have a map. We got lost.

72 General conditionals (Общее сослагательное наклонение)**1 Form**

| IF-CLAUSE | MAIN CLAUSE |
|---|---|
| <i>If I have a big lunch, If you mix yellow and blue,</i> | <i>it makes me sleepy. you get green.</i> |

if + present simple + present simple

2 Use

Эта конструкция употребляется для выражения привычных действий и общих истин (здесь *if* = *whenever*).

If I have a big lunch, it makes me sleepy. (= Когда бы я хорошо не пообедал ...)

If you mix yellow and blue, you get green. (= Когда бы вы не смешали желтый и синий цвета ...)

EXERCISE 72A

Join each idea in A with the most suitable idea from B.

Example:

1 *If I get a headache, I usually take some aspirin.*

A

- 1 If I get a headache,
- 2 I feel terrible,
- 3 If I drink too much coffee,
- 4 If flowers don't get any water,
- 5 You put on weight

B

- they die
- it makes me feel nervous
- if you don't get enough exercise
- I usually take some aspirin
- if I don't get 8 hours' sleep a night

*3 Conditional clauses without *if* (Придаточные предложения условия без *if*)

В придаточных предложениях условия вместо *if* могут употребляться другие слова:

1 *Unless*

Unless может употребляться в значении 'if ... not' ["если...не"].

Unless you put on some suncream, you'll get sunburnt. [Если вы не воспользуетесь кремом от солнца ...]

I won't go to the party unless you go too. [... если вы также не пойдете.]

Unless часто употребляется в выражениях угрозы, например: *Unless you stop making that noise, I'll scream!* и предупреждений, например: *You'll be hungry later unless you eat now.*

Compare *if* and *unless*:

*If you eat now, you won't be hungry later.
I'll go to the party if you go too.*

*Unless you eat now, you'll be hungry later.
I won't go to the party unless you go too.*

2 *As/So long as, provided/providing (that)*

As/so long as и *provided/providing(that)* употребляется в значении 'if but only if' ["лишь в случае, если"].

You can borrow my camera as long as you're careful with it. [... лишь в случае, если вы будете с ней осторожны.]

I'll go to the party provided you go too. [... лишь в случае, если вы также пойдете.]

3 *And* и *or (else)*

Для объединения двух идей иногда употребляется *and* вместо придаточного предложения условия.

Stay in bed for a few days and you'll be fine. [Отлежитесь в кровати в течение нескольких дней, и вы будете хорошо себя чувствовать.]

Or (else) может употребляться в значении 'if not' ["если не"] или 'otherwise' ["иначе"].

Don't try to lift that box or (else) you'll hurt yourself. [Не пытайтесь поднять тот ящик, иначе вы себя травмируете.]

4 *Should*

Should может употребляться вместо *if*, когда существует меньшая уверенность возможности выполнения действия. Compare:

If we have enough time, we'll visit Robert.
[Если у нас будет достаточно времени, мы навестим Роберта. (Вероятно, у нас будет достаточно **времени**.)]

Should we have enough time, we'll visit Robert. [Будь у нас достаточно **времени**, мы бы навестили Роберта. (Я не совсем уверен, что у нас будет достаточно **времени**.)]

В этом значении *should* может также употребляться после *if*, например: *If we should have enough time, we'll visit Robert.* СМ. 69.3.

5 *Suppose/supposing*

Suppose или *supposing* может также употребляться вместо *if*, особенно в предложениях с нереальным условием.

Suppose/Supposing *you won a lot of money, what would you do?*

EXERCISE 73A

Rephrase the sentences using *unless*.

Example:

If we don't leave now, we'll miss the start of the film.

Unless we leave now, we'll miss the start of the film.

- 1 If you don't **wear** your coat, you'll be cold.
- 2 I'll phone you, if you don't phone me first.
- 3 He **won't** receive the letter tomorrow if you don't post it before 1 o'clock today.
- 4 I won't go to school tomorrow if I don't feel better.
- 5 I can't write to you if you don't give me your address.
- 6 Your cough won't get better if you don't stop smoking.

EXERCISE 73C

Read the sentence. Make a new sentence with the same meaning using the word (s) in brackets.

Example:

If you don't lend me your map, I'll get lost. (or)

Lend me your map or I'll get lost.

If you do as I say, everything will be all right. (and)

Do as I say and everything will be all right.

- 1 If you don't stop making that noise, I'll hit you. (or)
- 2 If you take this umbrella, you won't get wet. (and)
- 3 If you don't drive more carefully, you'll have an accident. (or else)
- 4 If you help me, I'll help you. (and)

EXERCISE 73B

Choose the correct word or expression.

Example:

We'll have a picnic tomorrow **unless/provided** it rains.

- 1 *Unless/Provided* you tell the truth, everything will be all right.
- 2 In Britain you can marry at the age of sixteen *unless/providing* you have your parents' permission.
- 3 He won't forgive you *unless/as long as* you say you're **sorry**.
- 4 *Unless/Providing* you lend me the money, I won't be able to go on holiday.
- 5 I'll buy the car *unless/as long as it's* not too expensive.

EXERCISE 73D

Complete the sentences using *should* ~~*I/he/she*~~ and the verbs in the box.

Example: I think I'll arrive at the meeting on time, but *should I be* late, please start without me.

miss change ~~be~~ need fail

- 1 I think I've got enough money, but _____ any more, I'll borrow some.
- 2 I'm sure he'll pass the exam, but _____, he can always take it again.
- 3 I don't think I'll go to the party, but _____ my mind I'll let you know.
- 4 She expects to catch the last bus, but _____ it, she'll take a taxi.

EXERCISE 73E

Join each idea in A with the most suitable idea from B. Make sentences beginning *Suppose/Supposing*

Example: 1 *Suppose/Supposing I moved to Scotland, would you come and visit me?*

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 I moved to Scotland, _____ 2 someone finds my wallet, 3 they had stayed at our house, 4 they had offered you the job, 5 you had won the competition, | <p>B</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> would you have taken it? what would the prize have been? do you think they will take it to the police? • would you come and visit me? where would they have slept? |
|---|---|

4 Review of conditionals (Обзор сослагательного наклонения)

EXERCISE 74A

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in brackets: the present simple, past simple, past perfect, *will/won't* ... , *would (n't)*... or *would (n't) have*

Examples:

My father would have died if the doctors *hadn't operated* (not | operate) on him straight away.

Don't worry about getting home. If you *miss* (miss) the last bus, I'll give you a lift in my car.

My friend *would get* (get) better marks at school if she did more homework.

If she doesn't have much time, she normally *has* (have) a sandwich for lunch.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 I _____ (wear) some warm clothes today, if I were you. It's quite cold outside. 2 You _____ (not have) the accident if you'd been more careful. 3 If I _____ (have) enough money, I'd buy a new car. 4 If you _____ (wait) for a few minutes. I'll come into town with you. 5 I would have told you if I _____ (know). 6 People _____ (like) Robert more if he didn't always talk about himself. 7 I _____ (speak) to my boss about my holidays today if I get the chance. 8 If he _____ (make) a promise, he always keeps it. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 9 I'd go to the cinema more often if it _____ (not be) so expensive. 10 I _____ (not leave) my last job if the wages had been better. 11 He always _____ (get) angry if you talk to him about politics. 12 If you go out without a coat, you _____ (catch) a cold. 13 If you _____ (ask) me, I would have helped you. 14 What _____ (you do) if you saw someone drowning in the sea? 15 I'll go out this evening if I _____ (not be) too busy. |
|---|--|

75 Direct and reported speech: introduction (Прямая и косвенная речь: введение)

Когда необходимо передать то, что кто-то сказал, можно употреблять 'прямую речь' или 'косвенную речь':



В прямой речи передаются точно те же слова, которые сказал говорящий, и употребляются кавычки ('...' или "...").

Direct speech: *Annie said, 'I'm hungry.'*

В косвенной речи некоторые слова говорящего изменяются и не употребляются кавычки.

Reported speech: *Annie said (that) she was hungry.*
от: *Annie says (that) she's hungry.*

Когда употребляется глагол сообщения в прошедшем времени (например, *Annie said*), время в косвенной речи обычно меняется (например, *I'm* превращается в прошедшее время: *she was*).

Но когда употребляется глагол сообщения в настоящем времени (например, *Annie says*), время не претерпевает изменений (например, *I'm* остается в настоящем времени: *she's*).

For reported speech, see 77-80.

76 Say and tell

- 1 Обычно после *tell* для выражения, к кому обращаются, употребляется личное дополнение (например, *Sarah, me, us*). *Say*, как правило, употребляется без личного дополнения.
Compare:

say + something

tell + someone + something

/ said I was going home.
He says he can speak French.

I told Sarah I was going home.
He tells me he can speak French.

- 2 Если необходимо поставить личное дополнение с *say*, употребляется *to*.

I said to Sarah that I was going home.

- 3 В некоторых выражениях *tell* может употребляться без личного дополнения, например, *tell a story* [рассказать историю], *tell the time* [сказать, который час], *tell the truth* [сказать правду], *tell a lie* [солгать].

EXERCISE 76A

Complete the sentences using the correct form of *say* or *tell*.

Example:

I'll *tell* you all about my holiday when I see you.

- 1 Could you _____ me how to get to Paris?
- 2 Do you think she's _____ us the truth?
- 3 Have you _____ goodbye to everyone?

- 4 They _____ the plane was going to be late.
- 5 Did he _____ you that he could play chess?
- 6 Why didn't you _____ what you wanted?

77 Reported statements (Косвенные утверждения)

1 Времена



He said he was going home.

а Когда глагол сообщения употребляется в past tense (eg *he said, you told me*), время в косвенной речи обычно 'отодвигается назад':

- Глаголы в present tense меняются на форму past tense.

SPEAKER'S WORDS (СЛОВА ГОВОРЯЩЕГО)

'I'm going home.'
'I want to stop.'
'I don't like tea.'
'Sally has finished.'

REPORTED SPEECH (КОСВЕННАЯ РЕЧЬ)

He said he was going home.
You told me you wanted to stop.
She said she didn't like tea.
You said that Sally had finished.

- Глаголы в past tense переходят в прошедшее past perfect или они не изменяются.

'I spoke to them.'

/ said I had spoken to them. /I said I spoke to them.

'We arrived late.'

They said they had arrived late. /They said they arrived late.

- Глаголы в past perfect не изменяются.

'I had seen the film before.'

I told you I had seen the film before.

Modal verbs

Обратите внимание на формы этих модальных глаголов в past tense: *can* → *could*; *will* → *would*; *shall* → *should*; *may* → *might*.

SPEAKER'S WORDS

- '*I can swim.*'
- '*I will be at home.*'
- '*We may go by train.*'

REPORTED SPEECH

- He said he could swim.*
- She said that she would be at home.*
- They told me they might go by train.*

Past tense of modal verbs *could*, *would*, *should* и *might* в косвенной речи не изменяется.

- '*You could be right.*'
- '*You should see the film.*'

- I said you could be right.*
- They told me I should see the film.*

Must или не изменяется, или принимает форму past tense (**have to**) *had to*.

- '*I must go.*' \ *He said he must go. /He said he had to go.*

- b** Когда употребляется past tense глагола сообщения, времена в косвенной речи меняются не всегда. Если то, что сообщается, представляется истинным в настоящее время, иногда употребляется то же время, что и у говорящего.

SPEAKER'S WORDS

- '*The population of London is around 9 million.*'
- '*7 live in Brighton.*'

REPORTED SPEECH

- He said that the population of London is around 9 million.*
- She told me that she lives in Brighton.*

Но даже когда что-то представляется истинным, время в косвенной речи может изменяться.

He said that the population of London was around 9 million.

Время изменяется всегда, когда существует различие между сказанным и тем, что есть на самом деле.

She said that she was 18 years old, but in fact she's only 16.

- 2** Местоимения, прилагательные, наречия и др.

- a** В косвенной речи местоимения (например, *I*, *me*) и притяжательные прилагательные (например, *my*, *your*) часто изменяются.

Compare:

- Direct speech: *Sue said, 'I'm on holiday with my friend.'*
- Reported speech: *Sue said (that) she was on holiday with her friend.*

Когда речь идет о Сью, говорят *she*, а не *I*, а когда речь идет о подруге Сью, говорят *her friend*, а не *my friend*.

- b** Такие слова, как *here*, *now*, *today* употребляются для указания места, в котором они говорят, и времени, когда они говорят. Если эти слова употребляются в другом месте и в другое время, то они часто изменяются. **For example:**

| SPEAKER'S WORDS | REPORTED SPEECH |
|--------------------|--|
| <i>here</i> | <i>there</i> |
| <i>this</i> | <i>that/the</i> |
| <i>now</i> | <i>then</i> |
| <i>today</i> | <i>that day</i> |
| <i>tonight</i> | <i>that night</i> |
| <i>tomorrow</i> | <i>the next day/the following day</i> |
| <i>yesterday</i> | <i>the day before/the previous day</i> |
| <i>next Monday</i> | <i>the following Monday</i> |
| <i>last Monday</i> | <i>the previous Monday</i> |

Compare:

'I'm here on holiday.' *She said she was there on holiday.*
'I'll see you tomorrow.' *He said he would see me the next day.*

Способы изменения этих слов зависят от ситуации. **Например**, если кто-то вчера разговаривал и сказал *'I'll see you tomorrow.'*, то сейчас можно сказать: *He said he would see me today.*

3 That

That часто употребляются для соединения предложения с косвенной речью с остальным предложением.

I said that I was feeling tired.
You told me that you would be careful.

После *say* и *tell* (+ person) *that* часто опускается, особенно в неофициальном стиле.

I said I was feeling tired.
You told me you would be careful.

EXERCISE 77A

Put these statements into reported speech, as in the examples.

Examples:

'I'm tired,' she said. *She said (that) she was tired.*
'I need to borrow some money,' my brother told me. *My brother told me (that) he needed to borrow some money.*

- 1 *'I can't swim very well,'* I told her.
- 2 *'Mr Mason has gone out,'* the secretary told me.
- 3 *'I don't want to go swimming,'* Andrew said.
- 4 *'We're leaving on Friday,'* we said.
- 5 *'We had lunch in Luigi's restaurant,'* they said.
- 6 *'I'll phone you later,'* Sarah told Simon.

EXERCISE 77B

This is what some people said to Sally today:

The manager of the bank where Sally works: 'You'll get a pay rise later in the year.'

An optician: 'There is nothing wrong with your eyes. You don't need to wear glasses.'

Sally's boyfriend, Peter: 'I'd like a big family. I want at least **five children**.'

Sally's father: 'I've done the shopping. I'll be home at about **seven**.'

Sally's driving instructor: 'You drove very well. You're making good **progress**.'

A man who works in a dry-cleaner's: 'Your skirt will be ready on **Saturday**.'

It is evening now and Sally is telling her mother about her day. Complete what Sally says using reported speech.

Sally: I went to the dry-cleaner's at lunchtime. The man there said *my skirt would be ready on Saturday*.

Mother: And what about the optician? What did she say?

Sally: Oh, she told me 1 eyes and that I 2 glasses.

Mother: Oh, *that's* good. And what about your driving lesson? How did that go?

Sally: Oh, fine. My instructor told me that I 3 and that I 4 progress.

Mother: That's very good. And what about Peter? Did you see him today?

Sally: No, but he phoned me at work. He made me laugh. He said he 5 and that he 6 children.

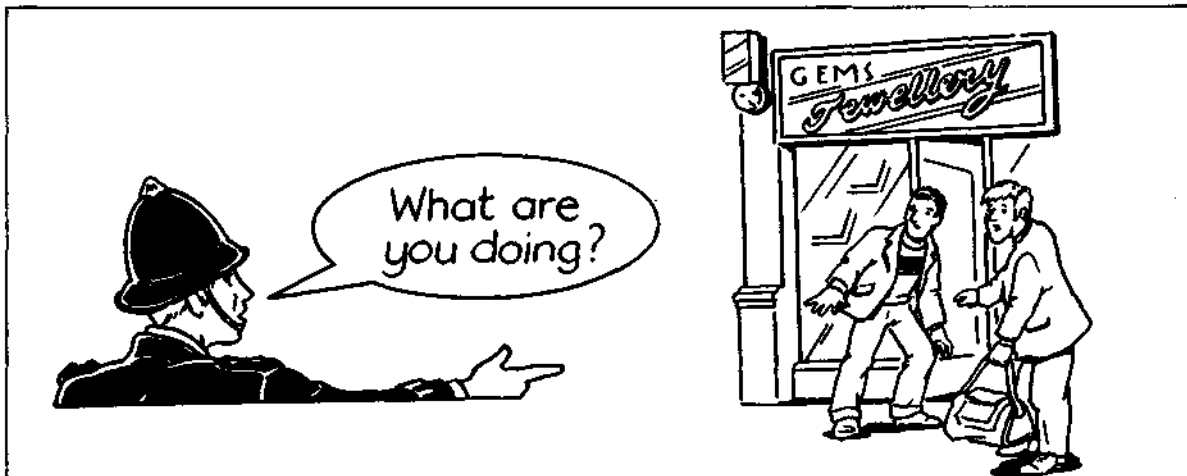
Mother: Five! Well, I hope you can afford them.

Sally: Oh, yes. That reminds me. I was speaking to the manager at work and she said that I 7 .

Mother: Oh, *that's* good.

Sally: Yes. Oh, and before I forget. Dad phoned. He said he 8 and that he 9 seven.

78 Reported questions (Косвенные вопросы)



The policeman asked the men what they were doing.

- 1 Времена, прилагательные, местоимения и др. в косвенных вопросах меняются таким же образом, как и в косвенных утверждениях (см. 77).

SPEAKER'S WORDS

'*What are you doing?*'

'*How is your brother?*'

REPORTED QUESTION

The policeman asked the men what they were doing.

She asked how my brother was.

В косвенных вопросах порядок слов такой же, как и в утверждениях (например, *they were doing, my brother was*), и не ставится вопросительный знак (?).

- 2 В косвенных вопросах вспомогательный глагол *do (do, does или did)* не употребляется.

SPEAKER'S WORDS

'*What do you want?*'

'*Where does he live?*'

'*Why did you say that?*'

REPORTED QUESTION

/ asked what she wanted.

They asked where he lived.

He asked why I'd said that.

- 3 Когда вопросительное слово (например, *what, where, why*) отсутствует, то для введения косвенного вопроса может употребляться *if/whether*.

SPEAKER'S WORDS

'*Are you cold?*'

'*Do you want a drink?*'

'*Can you speak German?*'

REPORTED QUESTION

/ asked if he was cold.

She asked if I wanted a drink.

They wanted to know whether I could speak German.

- 4 Для выражения того, к кому обращен вопрос, после *ask* часто употребляется дополнение (например, *Ken, me*).

I asked Ken if he was cold.

He asked me why I'd said that.

EXERCISE 78A

Which questions would you ask to which people?

- | | |
|--|----------------------|
| 1 'Will it take long to repair the car?' | a hotel receptionist |
| 2 'Can I park my car in West Street?' | a doctor |
| 3 'What time does the film finish?' | a policeman |
| 4 'Have you got a double room?' | a mechanic |
| 5 'How many times a day should I take the medicine?' | a waiter |
| 6 'What's the soup of the day?' | a cinema attendant |

Report the questions. Begin: */ asked the*

Example:

- 1 */ asked the mechanic if it would take long to repair the car.*

EXERCISE 78B

Andrew had a frightening experience recently while on holiday. He was out walking in the countryside when suddenly he was surrounded by a group of soldiers.

Here are the questions which one of the soldiers asked Andrew.

- 1 'What are you doing **here**?'
- 2 'Why are you carrying a **camera**?'
- 3 'Did you see the signs warning people not to enter the **area**?'
- 4 'Have you been taking photos of the army **base**?'
- 5 'What's your **name**?'
- 6 'Can I see some proof of your **identity**?'



After the holiday, Andrew told some friends what had happened. Complete Andrew's story using reported speech.

'I was about seven miles from the youth hostel in the middle of nowhere when suddenly a jeep roared up to me and I was surrounded by soldiers pointing guns! An officer asked me 1 *what I was doing there*. Then he pointed at my Kodak and asked me 2 _____. I tried to explain that I was on holiday there, but then he wanted to know 3 _____. I told him I hadn't. Then he asked me 4 _____. I said that I didn't even know there was an army base there. Then he wanted to know 5 _____ and 6 _____. Then, just because I couldn't prove who I was, they put me in the jeep and drove me to some kind of underground army base. They kept me there while they phoned the youth hostel to check up on me.'

79 Using the *to* infinitive in reported speech (Употребление *to* инфинитива в косвенной речи)

- 1 Часто для отдачи приказов, выражения просьб, предупреждений, советов и приглашений употребляется конструкция *verb + object + to infinitive*.

SPEAKER'S WORDS

- 'Get out of my room.'
 'Could you carry some bags, Mike?'
 'Stay away from me.'
 'You should phone the police.'
 'Would you like to have dinner with us?'

REPORTED SPEECH

- She told the man to get out of her room.*
I asked Mike to carry some bags.
He warned them to stay away from him.
She advised him to phone the police.
They invited me to have dinner with them.

- 2 С помощью конструкции verb + *to* infinitive часто выражаются предложения, обещания и угрозы.

SPEAKER'S WORDS

'Can I help you?'
'I'll be careful.'
'I'll hit you!'

REPORTED SPEECH

The woman *offered to help me*.
You *promised to be careful*.
She *threatened to hit me*.

- 3 В отрицательных приказах, обещаниях и др. употребляется *not to* + infinitive.

'Don't touch my camera.'
'I won't be late.'

He told me *not to touch his camera*.
You promised *not to be late*.

EXERCISE 79A

Report these sentences using the *to* infinitive form.

Examples:

'I'll pay back the **money**.' (she promised) *She promised to pay back the money.*
'**Hurry up**.' (he told me) *He told me to hurry up.*

- 1 'Can I do the washing **up**?' (I offered)
- 2 'I'll phone the **police**!' (she threatened)
- 3 'You should stop **smoking**.' (the doctor advised my brother)
- 4 'Could you change the light bulb for **me**?' (he asked me)
- 5 'Don't be **stupid**.' (she told me)
- 6 'Would you like to come to my **party**?' (he invited her)
- 7 'I won't forget the **shopping**.' (I promised)
- 8 'Don't leave the door **unlocked**.' (she warned them)

4) Review of reported speech (Обзор косвенной речи)

EXERCISE 80A

Report these sentences. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Examples:

'I'm tired,' he said.

He said (that) he was tired.

'Did you enjoy the film?' I asked her.

/ asked her if she had enjoyed the film. /

I asked her if she enjoyed the film.

• Switch off the **TV**,' she told me.

She told me to switch off the TV.

Can you lend me some money? he asked me.

He asked me if I could lend him some money. /

He asked me to lend him some money.

1 'I can't type,' I told them.

2 'Are you **English**?' they asked me.

3 'Where are you **going**?' I asked her.

4 'We're going into **town**,' they said.

5 'I haven't got any **money**,' he told me.

6 'Could you speak more **slowly**?' he asked her.

7 'Don't touch the **wire**,' he warned me.

8 'I was on holiday in **July**,' he told her.

9 'What time did you get **home**?' they asked him.

- 10 'Can you do me a **favour**?' she asked me.
 11 'We won't be home **late**,' we told them.
 12 'I've posted the **letters**,' I said.
 13 'My sister doesn't **know**,' he said.
 14 'My parents had gone to **bed**,' she said.
 15 'You should go to the **doctor**,' she told him.
 16 'We'll do the **dishes**,' they promised.
 17 'Where do you **work**?' I asked her.
 18 'Can you phone the doctor for **me**?' she asked him.
 19 'I passed my driving test in **1986**,' he told his boss.
 20 'I don't know what to **do**,' I said.

81 *-ing* form: participle or gerund (*-ing* форма: причастие или герундий)

1 Слова, заканчивающиеся на *-ing*, например *playing*, *walking*, *worrying*, употребляются для образования формы continuous.

'Where's Sally?' 'She's **playing** tennis.'

When I was **walking** along Western Road, I saw Maria.

He's been **worrying** a lot recently.

Слово, образованное с помощью *-ing* формы, называется 'present participle' ('причастие настоящего времени').

Present participles также употребляются как прилагательные (см. 99).

It's a **worrying** problem.

Participle может употребляться для введения причастного придаточного предложения (см. 100).

I hurt my leg **playing** tennis.

Who is that girl **walking** towards us?

2 С помощью *-ing* формы также образуются существительные.

Playing tennis isn't expensive in England.

I enjoy **walking** in the countryside.

Существительное, образованное с помощью *-ing* формы, называется 'gerund' (герундий). (Относительно *-ing* формы, употребляемой таким образом, см. 82-83, 87-90, 92-94, 98.)

3 Когда к глаголу присоединяется *-ing*, иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, *swim* → *swimming* (см. 188.3-6).

82 Verb + *-ing* form or infinitive: introduction (Глагол + *-ing* форма или инфинитив: введение)

1 Довольно часто в предложении один глагол следует за другим.
/ *enjoy running*. *I hope to run in the marathon next month.*
После некоторых глаголов, например *enjoy*, второй глагол принимает *-ing* форму, например, *running* (см. 83). После других глаголов, например *hope*, второй глагол - *to* infinitive, например, *to run* (см. 84).

2 После некоторых глаголов, например *start*, может употребляться *-ing* форма или *to* infinitive, без особых различий в значении (см. 87).

Look. It's started raining/to rain again.

Но после некоторых других глаголов, например *stop*, может употребляться *-ing* форма или *to* infinitive с большой разницей в значении (см. 88).

I'm a vegetarian. I stopped eating meat 5 years ago. [Я прекратил есть мясо 5 лет назад.]

After I'd been working for 3 hours, I stopped to eat lunch. [... я прекратил работу, чтобы пообедать.]

3 После таких модальных глаголов, как *can*, *must*, *should*, и некоторых других глаголов употребляется infinitive без *to*, например, *play*, *eat* (см. 91).

/ *can play the guitar.*

You must eat something.

S3 Verb + *-ing* form (Глагол + *-ing* форма)

1 Если после этих глаголов следует другой глагол, то он обычно принимает *-ing* форму.

| | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>admit</i> | <i>enjoy</i> | <i>imagine</i> | <i>practise</i> |
| <i>avoid</i> | <i>fancy</i> | <i>involve</i> | <i>put off</i> [откладывать] |
| <i>consider</i> | <i>feel like</i> [хотеть] | <i>keep on</i> [продолжать] | <i>risk</i> |
| <i>delay</i> | <i>finish</i> | <i>mind</i> | <i>stand</i> [переносить] |
| <i>deny</i> | <i>give up</i> [прекращать] | <i>miss</i> | <i>suggest</i> |
| <i>dislike</i> | <i>can't help</i> [не могу не] | <i>postpone</i> | |

verb + *-ing* form

He admitted breaking the window.

I enjoy getting up early in the summer.

Have you finished doing your homework?

They suggested meeting at two o'clock.

Обратите внимание на отрицание: *not* + *-ing* form.

He admitted not paying for the ticket.

После *mind* можно также употреблять придаточное предложение с *if*, например: *Would you mind if I closed the window?*

После некоторых вышеперечисленных глаголов может также употребляться придаточное предложение с *that*.

He admitted (that) he 'd broken the window.

They suggested (that) we met at two o'clock.

- 2** *Do* + *the/some* и т.д. + *-ing* форма употребляется для указания, например, рода занятий.

You do the cooking. I'll do the washing up.

We 're going to do some shopping this afternoon.

(Обратите внимание, что *-ing* форма здесь употребляется как существительное и, как любое другое существительное, может употребляться с *the, some* и т.д.)

- 3** *Go* и *come* может употребляться с *-ing* формой, в частности, для выражения занятий спортом или времяпрепровождения.

I'd like to go swimming tomorrow.

EXERCISE 83A

Complete the sentences using the *-ing* form of the verbs in the box.

| | | | | | | |
|-----|------|--------|------|-----|------|----|
| do | have | listen | play | be | read | go |
| not | make | borrow | swim | rob | | |

Example:

I enjoy *listening* to the radio in the mornings.

1 I'll lend you the book when I've finished _____ it.

2 Do you ever go _____ in the sea?

3 They suggested _____ dinner in an Indian restaurant.

4 Robert gave up _____ football years ago.

5 The men **admitted** _____ the bank.

6 I really don't **mind** _____ the housework.

7 I didn't **feel like** _____ out last night, so I stayed at home.

8 Would you **mind** _____ so much noise? I'm trying to study.

9 I normally try to avoid _____ money.

10 Since she moved from London, she misses _____ able to see all her friends there.

Note

– После некоторых других глаголов может употребляться *-ing* форма или *to* infinitive, часто с различием в значении. См. 87-88.

84 Verb + *to* infinitive (Глагол + *to* инфинитив)

Если после этих глаголов следует другой глагол, то он обычно употребляется как *to* infinitive.

| | | |
|----------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>afford</i> | <i>fail</i> | <i>pretend</i> |
| <i>agree</i> | <i>help</i> | <i>promise</i> |
| <i>appear</i> | <i>hope</i> | <i>refuse</i> |
| <i>arrange</i> | <i>learn (how)</i> | <i>seem</i> |
| <i>ask</i> | <i>manage</i> | <i>threaten</i> |
| <i>attempt</i> | <i>mean</i> [намереваться] | <i>want</i> |
| <i>decide</i> | <i>offer</i> | <i>wish</i> |
| <i>expect</i> | <i>prepare</i> | |

verb + *to* infinitive

/ can't afford to go on holiday this summer.
The policeman asked to see my driving licence.
She decided to stay at home last night.
My brother expects to find a job soon.
He's going to learn to drive.

Обратите внимание на отрицание: *not to* + infinitive.

You promised not to tell anyone.
She seemed not to notice me.

После *help* может употребляться infinitive с или без *to*.

I'll help (to) carry your bags.

Обратите внимание также, что после *can't help* (= 'не могу не') употребляется *-ing* форма, например: */ can't help thinking we've made a mistake.*

После некоторых вышеперечисленных глаголов может также употребляться придаточное предложение с *that*.

She decided (that) she would stay at home last night.
My brother expects (that) he'll find a job soon.

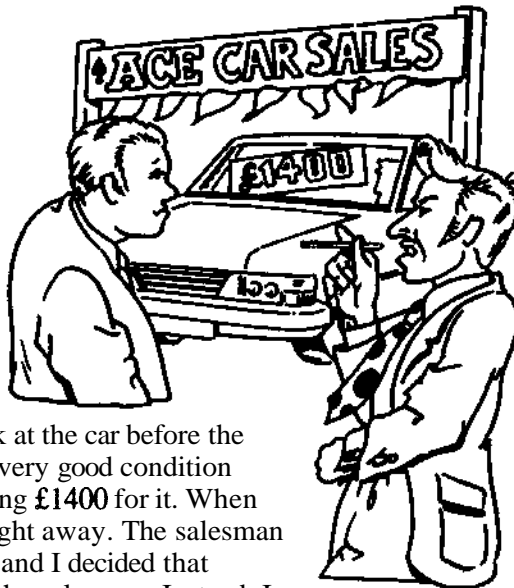
После некоторых вышеперечисленных глаголов может употребляться object + *to* infinitive, например: *He asked me to help him.* См. 86.

EXERCISE 84A

Robert is talking about the day he bought a second-hand car.

Complete **Robert's** story using the *to* infinitive form of the verbs in the boxes.

buy be not like have test-drive



'When I got to the garage, I managed *to have* a quick look at the car before the salesman came out of his office. It seemed 1 in very good condition and was worth about £1000, although the garage was asking £1400 for it. When the salesman came out, I arranged 2 the car straight away. The salesman and I got in and we drove off. I liked the car immediately and I decided that I wanted 3 it, but, of course, I didn't say this to the salesman. Instead, I pretended 4 the car very **much**.'

try get accept pay

'When we had finished the test-drive and had pulled up outside the garage, I told the salesman that I couldn't afford 5 more than £750. The salesman, of course, refused 6 such a miserable little offer. He told me that he expected 7 at least £1200 for the car. I tried offering £800, £850, £875, but he wouldn't change his mind. Then I decided 8 something **different**.'

give be sell accept

'I thanked the salesman politely, said goodbye, got out of the car and started to walk away. It **worked!** The salesman got out of the car too and hurried after me. He told me that he wanted 9 fair and was prepared 10 a reasonable offer for the car. In the end, he agreed 11 it to me for £1000. He even agreed 12 me £200 for my old car!'

Note

- После некоторых других глаголов может употребляться *-ing* форма или *to* infinitive, часто с различием в значении. См. 97.
- *To* infinitive также употребляется в таких конструкциях: *ought to*, например: *You ought to stop smoking*, (СМ. 42.1); *have (got) to*, например: *I have to be home by 10 o'clock*, (СМ. 38.2), and *used to*, например: *I used to smoke, but I stopped 10 years ago*. (СМ. 51).
- *To* infinitive также употребляется после глаголов в страдательном залоге, например: *She is believed to be living in Brazil*. СМ. 64.
- Иногда, чтобы избежать повторения, после *to* глагол опускается, если значение очевидно, например: *I didn't go to the party because I didn't want to*. (= because I didn't want to go to the party).

85 Verb + question word + *to* infinitive (Глагол + слово-вопрос + *to* инфинитив)

- 1 После некоторых глаголов может употребляться question word, например, *what*, *how*, *where* (но не *why*) + *to* infinitive.

verb + question word + *to* infinitive

/ don't know what to say.

Do you know how to play chess?

We can't decide what to buy Sue for her birthday.

I'll explain what to do later on.

- 2 Эта конструкция часто употребляется с object + question word + *to* infinitive.

verb + object + question word + *to* infinitive

I'll show you how to play chess.

Somebody told me where to buy a ticket.

EXERCISE 85A

Complete the sentences using the most suitable words in the box.

what | do how | make what | wear
how | get whether | stay how | spell

Example:

'Could you tell me *how to get* to Western Road, please?' 'Yes. Go down this road and it's second on the left.'

- 1 'Have you decided _____ to the interview?' 'Yes. I'm going to wear my new blue suit.'
- 2 Could you tell me _____ your name please?
- 3 'What are you going to do this evening?' 'I can't decide _____ at home or go out.'
- 4 Do you know _____ a Spanish omelette?
- 5 I felt very embarrassed when she started shouting. I didn't know _____, so I just stood there.

86 Verb + object + *to* infinitive (Глагол + дополнение + *to* инфинитив)

1 После приведенных ниже глаголов обычно употребляется object (eg *Sue, me, you*) перед *to* infinitive.

| | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| <i>force</i> | <i>order</i> | <i>teach</i> (how) |
| <i>get</i> [убеждать] | <i>persuade</i> | <i>tell</i> |
| <i>invite</i> | <i>remind</i> | <i>warn</i> |

verb + object + *to* infinitive

We invited Sue to have dinner with us.
She persuaded me to go to the party.
He warned you not to be late again,

Обратите внимание, что после этих глаголов в страдательном залоге может употребляться *to* infinitive без дополнения, например: *Sue was invited to have dinner with us.*

2 Object + *to* infinitive может также употребляться после этих глаголов:

| | | |
|---------------|----------------------------|-------------|
| <i>ask</i> | <i>help</i> | <i>want</i> |
| <i>expect</i> | <i>mean</i> [намереваться] | |

He asked me to help him.
I didn't expect Maria to write to me.
I don't want you to go.

После *help* может употребляться object + infinitive с или без *to*.

I'll help you (to) carry your bags.

После этих глаголов может также употребляться *to* infinitive без дополнения, например: *I expect to see Simon tomorrow.* См. 84.

Обратите внимание, что после *want* нельзя употреблять придаточное предложение с *that*. For example, we cannot say / ~~don't~~ *want that you go.*

3 После глаголов *advise, allow, encourage, permit* и *recommend* может употребляться *-ing* форма или object + *to* infinitive. Compare:

verb + *-ing* form

/ *wouldn't advise going there.*
They don't allow fishing here.

verb + object + *to* infinitive

I wouldn't advise you to go there.
They don't allow people to fish here.

EXERCISE 86A

Complete the sentences.

Example:

I couldn't do the job on my own, so **I** | ask | Simon | help me.
/ *couldn't do the job on my own, so I asked Simon to help me.*

- 1 **I** was surprised that my brother failed his driving test. **I** | expect | him | pass | easily.
- 2 Annie wanted to stay up **late**, but her parents | tell | her | go to bed at 9 o'clock.
- 3 Simon phoned Sarah yesterday. He | invite | her | go to a party on Saturday.
- 4 **I** was going to buy the car, but a friend of mine | persuade | me | change my mind.
- 5 Don't tell Sue what I've done. **I** | not | want | her | know.
- 6 One of the plane's engines caught fire, which | force | the pilot | land.
- 7 When I was a child, my mother | warn me | not | talk to strangers.
- 8 If you hadn't | remind | me | lock the door, I would have forgotten.

EXERCISE 86B

What did they say? Complete the sentences using an object + *to* infinitive ...

Examples:

'**Remember** to phone **Chris**,' Sue told Peter. Sue reminded *Peter to phone Chris*.

'**Can** you lend me some **money**?' I asked him. I asked *him to lend me some money*.

- 1 '**Close** the **door**,' Ken told Andrew.
Ken told _____
- 2 '**Can** you help **me**?' I asked her. I asked _____
- 3 '**Would** you like to go to a **party**?' they asked us. They invited _____
- 4 '**Please** don't be late **home**,' Kate said to Sally. Kate asked _____
- 5 '**Get** out of your **car**,' the policeman told the woman. The policeman ordered _____
- 6 '**Don't** be late for work **again**,' my boss told me. My boss warned _____

EXERCISE 86C

Put the verbs into the correct form: the *-ing* form or the *to* infinitive.

Example:

She doesn't allow anyone *to drive* (drive) her car.

- 1 They don't **allow** _____. (talk) in the **examination**.
- 2 He's always encouraged me _____. (have) **confidence** in myself.
- 3 I'd recommend you _____ (see) the film. It's very good.
- 4 I wouldn't recommend _____ (drive) through the city centre now. The traffic is terrible at this time of the day.
- 5 What would you advise me _____ (do) ?
- 6 I wouldn't advise _____ (tell) anyone **what's** happened.

87 Verb + *ing* form or *to* infinitive (Глагол + *ing* форма или *to* инфинитив) (1)

- 1 После приведенных ниже глаголов может употребляться *-ing* форма или *to* infinitive, обычно без существенных различий в значении.

| | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|-------------|---------------|
| <i>begin</i> | <i>can't bear</i> | <i>like</i> | <i>prefer</i> |
| <i>continue</i> | <i>hate</i> | <i>love</i> | <i>start</i> |

*He began **looking/to look** for a job 6 months ago.*

*I like **swimming/to** swim in the sea.*

*She prefers **working/to** work at night.*

But see 2–4 below.

2 Like

- a В британском варианте английского языка часто употребляется *like* + *-ing* форма для выражения того, что 'нравится'.

/ like going to the cinema. [Мне нравится ходить в кино.]

Like + *to* infinitive употребляется для выражения того, что выбрано для выполнения, поскольку это считается хорошим решением.

/ like to go to the dentist's for a check-up every 6 months. (= я считаю, что это нужно делать, хотя мне это может и не нравится.)

- b После *would like*, *would love*, *would hate* и *would prefer* употребляется *to* infinitive.

'Would you like to go out this evening?' 'I'd prefer to stay at home.'

'We'd love to see you at the weekend.'

- c Compare *like* and *would like*:

Do you like cooking? (= Вам нравится готовить вообще?)

Would you like to cook the dinner this evening? (= Вы хотите приготовить ужин сегодня вечером?)

3 Prefer

Обратите внимание на эти конструкции:

| |
|--|
| <i>prefer + -ing form + to + -ing form</i> |
|--|

I prefer playing football to watching it.

| |
|---|
| <i>would prefer + to infinitive + rather than + infinitive without to</i> |
|---|

I would prefer to drive home tonight rather than wait until tomorrow.

4 **Begin, start, continue**

a Обычно *-ing* форма не употребляется после форм *continuous begin, start, continue* (чтобы избежать дублирования *-ing* форм).

I'm beginning to feel cold. (Not normally: *I'm beginning feeling cold.*)

b После *begin, continue* и *start* обычно употребляются глаголы *understand, know* и *realize* как *to* infinitive, а не *-ing* форма.

/ began to realise. (Not normally: */ began realising.*)

EXERCISE 87A

Put the verbs into the correct form. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Examples:

I quite enjoy *driving* (drive) at night.

Do you like *getting up/to get up* (get up) early?

1 Would you like _____ (listen) to some music?

2 Simon and Sally have started _____ (cook) the dinner.

3 I prefer _____ (**windsurf**) to _____ (sail).

4 I'd prefer _____ (walk) home rather than _____ (go) by taxi.

5 My sister loves _____ (go) shopping.

6 I'd love _____ (visit) Australia one day.

7 My brother hates _____ (have to) work at weekends.

8 Do you like _____ (play) chess?

9 I try to look after my car. I like _____ (take) it to the garage to be serviced regularly.

10 Shh! The orchestra is starting _____ (play)?

88 Verb + *ing* form or *to* infinitive (Глагол + *ing* форма или *to* инфинитив) (2)

После приводимых ниже глаголов может употребляться *-ing* форма или *to* infinitive с различным значением.

remember forget try stop go on regret

1 Remember/forget doing and remember/forget to do

Remember/forget + *-ing* форма употребляется в том случае, когда мы помним или забыли что-то после того, как мы это сделали.

ACTION ← REMEMBER

I remember going to the 1972 Olympics.
(Я ездил туда и сейчас это помню.)

Have you forgotten giving me the money?
(Вы дали мне деньги.)

Remember/forget + *to* infinitive употребляется в том случае, когда мы вспоминаем или забываем что-то до того, как мы должны это сделать.

REMEMBER → ACTION

/ remembered to go to the chemist's for you.
Here's your medicine.

(Я вспомнил, а затем туда пошел.)

Don't forget to give me the money.

2 *Try doing* and *try to do*

Try + *-ing* форма употребляется в значении 'провести эксперимент' - что-то сделать и увидеть, что из этого получится.

'The car won't start.' *'Whydon't we try pushing it?'*

Try + *to* infinitive употребляется в значении 'делать усилие' - и увидеть, можно ли что-то сделать.

/ tried to push the car up the hill, but I couldn't move it.

3 *Stop doing* and *stop to do*

Stop + *-ing* форма употребляется для выражения того, что мы делаем перед тем, как прекратить.

I'm a vegetarian. I stopped eating meat 5 years ago. (= Я ел мясо 5 лет тому назад, а затем прекратил.)

Stop + *to* infinitive употребляется для выражения того, с какой целью сделана остановка (см. 95).

After I'd been working for 3 hours, I stopped to eat lunch. (= Я прекратил работу, чтобы пообедать.)

4 *Go on doing* and *go on to do*

Go on + *-ing* форма употребляется для выражения продолжающегося действия.

She went on talking about her holiday all evening. (= Она продолжает разговаривать ...)

Go on + *to* infinitive употребляется для выражения перехода на другую тему разговора.

She spoke about her son, then she went on to talk about her daughter.

5 *Regret doing* and *regret to do*

Regret + *-ing* форма употребляется для выражения сожаления по поводу того, что уже свершилось.

/ regret saying that he was an idiot. (Я говорил, что он идиот.)

Regret + *to* infinitive употребляется для выражения сожаления по поводу того, что необходимо делать сейчас.

/ regret to say that I won't be able to come to the meeting on Monday.

Обратите внимание, что *regret* + *to* infinitive имеет официальный оттенок.

EXERCISE 88A

Put the verbs in brackets into the *-ing* form or to the *to* infinitive.

Example:

'I introduced you to Sue last **month.** **'Really?** I don't remember *meeting* (meet) **her.**'

1 **'You** said Ken was **stupid.** **'I** don't remember _____ (say) **that.**'

2 I'll never forget _____ (visit) Istanbul in 1983.

3 When I go shopping I must remember _____ (buy) some bread.

4 Please remember _____ (turn off) the radio before you go out.

EXERCISE 88B

Put the verbs in brackets into the **-ing** form or the **to** infinitive.

Example:

'I need to borrow some **money**.' 'Why don't you **try asking** (ask) your parents to lend you some?'

- 1 I'll try _____ (come) to the meeting, but I'm not sure if I'll be able to.
- 2 If you get hiccups, you should try _____ (drink) a glass of water. If that doesn't work, try _____ (hold) your breath.
- 3 You can borrow my camera, but please try _____ (be) careful with it.
- 4 'This soup doesn't taste very **good**.' 'Try _____ (put) in some more **salt**.'

EXERCISE 88C

Complete the sentences using the **-ing** form or the **to** infinitive of the verbs in the box. Use each verb only once.

Example:

Could you stop **working** for a moment? I'd like to speak to you.

| |
|------------------------------|
| ask not learn tell work make |
|------------------------------|

- 1 He went on _____ a noise even though I'd asked him to stop.
- 2 She started by talking about her job. Then she went on _____ me about her family.
- 3 He stopped reading _____ me a **question**.
- 4 I regret _____ to play a musical instrument when I was younger.

89 *Be used to + -ing form and used to + infinitive* (*Be used to + -ing форма и used to + инфинитив*)

1 Compare:

Be used to + -ing форма употребляется в значении 'привыкать к'.

I'm used to driving my new car now, but I found it very strange at first. (= Сейчас я уже привык к вождению автомобиля, в этом для меня нет ничего удивительного.)

Used to + infinitive употребляется для выражения привычных действий в прошлом, которые к данному моменту уже завершены.

I used to drive a Mercedes, but now I drive a Citroen. (= Я водил Мерседес в прошлом постоянно, но не вожу его сейчас.)

- 2 *Get* (= become) *used to + -ing* форма также может употребляться, например: *I've got used to driving my new car.*

- 3 После *be/get used to* можно также употреблять номинативное словосочетание, например: *English food, my new computer.*

He isn't used to English food.

I haven't got used to my new computer yet.

EXERCISE 89A

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form: *to + -ing form or to + infinitive*.

Example:

When I was younger, I used to *play* (play) a lot of football. Now I never play.

1 It won't take you long to get used _____ (work) with your new word processor.

2 My parents used _____ (live) in London, but now they live in Bristol.

3 Bruno is Italian, but he has lived in London for over 5 years. He has got used _____ (eat) English food now, but when he first arrived in England he didn't like it very much.

4 Mike found Africa strange at first. He wasn't used _____ (live) in such a hot climate.

5 I normally go to bed at about 10 o'clock. I'm not used _____ (stay) up late.

6 I used _____ (work) on a farm once and had to get up at 5 o'clock every morning. It was difficult at first because I **wasn't** used _____ (get up) so early.

Note

- Относительно *used to* см. также 51.

90 *Need + -ing form or to infinitive (Need + -ing форма или to инфинитив)*

1 После смыслового глагола *need* может употребляться *to infinitive*.

I'm tired. I need to get some sleep.

*We've got plenty of time. We **don't need to** hurry.*

2 После смыслового глагола *need* может употребляться *-ing* форма в страдательном залоге.

My car needs servicing.

These trousers need cleaning.

После *need* может также употребляться *to be + past participle* в том же значении страдательного залога.

My car needs to be serviced.

These trousers need to be cleaned.

EXERCISE 90A

Complete each sentence using the correct form of the most suitable verb in the box. Sometimes two forms are possible.

Examples:

There is a hole in my sock. It needs *mending/to be mended*.

Tomorrow is a holiday, so I don't need *to get up* early in the morning.

| | | | |
|-------|----------|---------------|------|
| buy | adjust | get up | ask |
| renew | practise | feed | mend |

1 Your passport is out of date. It needs _____

2 You need _____ the piano every day if you want to improve.

3 The brakes on my car aren't working very well. I think they need _____.

4 The cat is hungry. It needs _____

5 We've got plenty of milk. We don't need _____ any more.

6 I went to see her because I needed _____ her some questions.

91 Infinitive without *to* (Инфинитив без *to*)

- 1 Infinitive без *to* употребляется после модальных глаголов, например, *can, must, should* (см. 35).
/ can speak Italian.
We must go now.
- Исключение: после модального глагола *ought* употребляется *to* infinitive, например: *You ought to **be** careful.*

- 2 Infinitive без *to* употребляется после *let's* (= *let us*) и *why don't we/you... ?*, когда необходимо сделать предложение (см. 30, 50.2).
'Whatshall we do this afternoon ?' 'Let'sgo to the cinema.'
Why don't we have a party next Saturday?
Why don't you apply for the job?

Infinitive без *to* также употребляется после *would rather* (см. 57.1) и *had better* (см. 42.2).

'Wouldyou like to go out this evening ?' 'I'drather stay at home.'
*I think it's going to rain. You'd **better** take an umbrella with you when you go out.*

- 3 После глаголов *let* ['разрешать'] и *make* ['заставлять, принуждать, побуждать'] употребляется дополнение, например, *their children, me, us* + infinitive без *to*.

let/make + object + infinitive without *to*

They let their children stay up late at weekends. (= разрешали детям дольше не ложиться спать)

Will you let me use your camera? (= разрешите мне воспользоваться)

You can't make us go if we don't want to. (= заставляя нас идти)

The film made me cry. (= побудил меня заплакать)

EXERCISE 91 A

Complete each sentence using the most suitable verb in the box. Use each verb only once.

Example:

'Would you like a cup of tea?' 'I'd rather have coffee.'

eat hurry tell type wear lend
sit promise cry wait use have

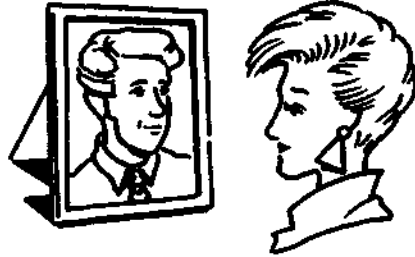
- 1 It's very cold today. You'd better _____ a coat when you go out.
- 2 'I haven't got any money.' 'Let me _____ you some.'
- 3 Chopping onions makes me _____
- 4 'I'm tired of walking.' 'Let's _____ down for a while, then.'
- 5 I can't _____ you what Sally said. She made me _____ that I wouldn't tell anyone.
- 6 'Why don't we _____ dinner now?' 'I think I'd rather _____ until later.'
- 7 It's getting late. We'd better _____
- 8 I couldn't _____ the letter because my brother wouldn't let me _____ his typewriter.

EXERCISE 91B

Sally is speaking about her boyfriend, Peter.

Complete what Sally says using the correct form of *make* or *let* and the verbs in the box.

have understand **laugh** feel go



'Peter's very funny. He *makes* me *laugh* a lot. We usually get on **very** well together, but sometimes I get really angry with him because he's so jealous and won't 1 me out on my own. He 2 me jealous, too, when he talks about his ex-girlfriends! But I always 3 him his own friends and never ask him who he is going out with. I've talked to him about this, but I can't 4 him that his attitude is unfair.'

Note

- После таких глаголов, как *see, hear, feel*, можно употреблять object + infinitive без *to* или *-ing* форму. См. 97.
- При объединении двух конструкций *to* infinitive употребляется *or* или *and*. Часто второй infinitive употребляется без *to*, например: *I'd like to go and see that film.*

92 Preposition + -ing form (Предлог + -ing форма)

- 1 Когда глагол следует после предлога (eg *in, of, about, before, after*), к нему всегда присоединяется *-ing* форма.

Are you interested in playing tennis tomorrow?
I'm thinking of changing my job.
How about going to the cinema this evening?

- 2 **To**

Иногда *to* является частью формы инфинитива.

We've decided to go on holiday next month.
Would you like to eat now or later?

Иногда *to* является предлогом.

She's travelling to Greece tomorrow.
We're looking forward to the party.
Carlos isn't used to English food.

Если после *to* можно поставить существительное - это предлог. Если *to* является предлогом, после него употребляется *-ing* форма глаголов.

I'm looking forward to going to the party.
Carlos isn't used to eating English food.

EXERCISE 92A

Complete the sentences. Use a preposition from the box and the *-ing* form of the verbs in brackets. Use some prepositions more than once.

| |
|------------------------------------|
| for at about in to of after |
|------------------------------------|

Example:

'What shall we do this evening?' 'How about going (go) to the cinema?'

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 There is a good film on TV tonight. I'm really looking forward _____ (see) it. | 4 I'm not used _____ (eat) such spicy food. |
| 2 Are you interested _____ (learn) to play the guitar? | 5 Did she apologize _____ (be) late? |
| 3 _____ (have) breakfast, I did the washing up. | 6 I'm tired _____ (hear) her complain. |
| | 7 We thanked her _____ (give) us a lift in her car. |
| | 8 She's very good _____ (paint) and (draw). |

93 Person + *-ing* form (Лицо + *-ing* форма)

- 1** В неформальном английском языке обычно употребляется объектная форма, например, *me, you, Simon + -ing* форма.
- Do you mind me asking you a question?*
They were angry about Simon arriving late.
- В официальном английском языке употребляется притяжательный падеж, например, *my, your, Simon's + -ing* форма.
- Do you mind my asking you a question?*
They were angry about Simon's arriving late.
- 2** После таких глаголов, как *see, hear, ufeel*, обычно употребляется объектная форма (а не притяжательный падеж) + *-ing* (см. 97).
- You saw me arriving.* (Not: *You saw my arriving.*)

EXERCISE 93A

Complete the sentences using (i) the object form + *-ing* form, and (ii) the possessive + *-ing* form.

Example:

Do you mind _____ (I | open) the window?

(i) *Do you mind me opening the window?* (ii) *Do you mind my opening the window?*

- 1** I don't mind _____ (you | borrow) my car.
2 Do you mind _____ (I | switch on) the TV?
3 They insisted on _____ (we | stay) for dinner with them.
4 How do you feel about _____ (they | get) married?
5 Annie's parents don't like _____ (she | go) to bed late.
6 I was surprised about _____ (Sue | forget) to come to the meeting.

94 *-ing* form and *to* infinitive as subjects (*-ing* форма и *to* инфинитив как подлежащее)

1 В качестве подлежащего может употребляться глагол с *-ing* формой.

Smoking is a terrible habit.

Knowing how to drive is useful.

Playing tennis in England isn't expensive.

2 В качестве подлежащего может также выступать *to* **infinitive**. (eg *To know how to drive is useful*), но это не распространено. Когда в качестве подлежащего употребляется *to* infinitive, то более обычно с него начинать предложение (как 'предваряющее подлежащее').

It is useful to know how to drive.

*It isn't expensive **to** play tennis in England.*

EXERCISE 94A

What does *it* mean in each of these sentences? Use the *-ing* form of the words in the box in your answers.

Example:

It can be dangerous, especially at midday. *Sunbathing can be dangerous, especially at midday.*

| |
|--|
| live on your own babysit sunbathe smoke read English swim watch late night horror films |
|--|

- 1 It is a big responsibility, especially with very young children.
- 2 It is a very good way of keeping fit.
- 3 It can give you nightmares.
- 4 It is quite difficult if you are used to being with a lot of people.
- 5 It is much easier than speaking it.
- 6 It can cause lung cancer.

EXERCISE 94B

Join each idea in A with the most suitable idea in B. Make sentences using the *to* infinitive form, as in the example.

Example:

1 *It is very strange to see yourself on video.*

A

- 1 It is very strange
- 2 It isn't necessary
- 3 It can be dangerous
- 4 It doesn't have to be expensive
- 5 It is difficult for old people

B

- eat well
- live on a pension
- see yourself on video
- have your car serviced every month
- leave medicine lying around

95 To infinitive of purpose (To инфинитив цели)

1 To infinitive употребляется для выражения цели - с какой целью что-то совершается.

*I'm going out **to do** some shopping.*

*She's saving up **to buy** a motor bike.*

*I went to a restaurant **to have** some lunch.*

В более официальном стиле употребляются словосочетания *in order to* или *so as to*.

*I went to Paris **in order to learn** French.*

*We left early **so as to have** plenty of time.*

2 В отрицательных предложениях обычно употребляются *in order not to* или *so as not to* (а не лишь *not to*).

*We left early **so as not to be** late. / We left early **in order not to be** late. (Not: ~~We left early not to be late.~~)*

For purpose, see also 163-164.

EXERCISE 95A

Where did you go yesterday, and why did you go to each place?

- 1 Chemist's 2 Post Office 3 Cinema
4 Hairdresser's 5 Car Rental Agency 6 Park

Make sentences using / *went to the* (place) *to ...* and the words in the box.

Example:

1 / *went to the chemist's to buy some medicine.*

| | |
|------|---------------|
| hire | a haircut |
| buy | tennis |
| have | a film |
| play | some letters |
| post | a car |
| see | some medicine |

EXERCISE 95B

Join each idea in A with an idea from B. Make sentences using (i) *in order (not) to*, and (ii) *so as (not) to*.

Example:

(i) *He drank lots of black coffee in order to keep awake.*

(ii) *He drank lots of black coffee so as to keep awake.*

A

- 1 He drank lots of black coffees
2 I often write things down
3 She took an umbrella
4 We'll use the computer
5 I want to pass the exams
6 We turned down the music

B

- disturb the neighbours
save time
get a better job
forget them
keep awake
get wet

96 Noun/pronoun/adjective + *to* infinitive (Существительное/местоимение/прилагательное + *to* инфинитив)

1 Noun/pronoun + *to* infinitive

To infinitive может употребляться после некоторых существительных и прилагательных (часто указывается на то, что с ними делается).

I've got some letters to write.

We need some scissors to cut the paper.

Would you like something to read?

Эту конструкцию можно употреблять с adjective + noun + *to* infinitive.

That's an impossible question to answer.

2 Adjective + *to* infinitive

а После ряда прилагательных можно употреблять *to* infinitive.

I'm very pleased to see you.

I was disappointed to hear that you didn't pass the exam.

He'll be surprised to get your letter.

It isn't easy to learn a foreign language,

б Конструкцию *of*(someone) + *to* infinitive можно употреблять после следующих прилагательных:

| |
|---|
| <i>nice kind generous polite good mean silly careless clever wrong stupid</i> |
|---|

It's kind of you to help.

It was stupid of me to say that.

в Конструкцию *for* + object + *to* infinitive можно употреблять после следующих прилагательных:

| |
|--|
| <i>easy important essential (un) usual (un) necessary common normal rare</i> |
|--|

It won't be easy for us to get tickets for the concert now.

It's important for everyone to be here on time.

Эту конструкцию можно употреблять после некоторых существительных и глаголов.

It was a mistake for me to come here.

I'm waiting for my sister to phone me.

EXERCISE 96A

Complete the sentences using the *to* infinitive form of the verbs in the box.

Example:

Are you hungry? Would you like something *to eat*?

| | | | | | | |
|-----|--------|-------|------|-----|-------|------|
| say | unlock | catch | wear | eat | write | tell |
|-----|--------|-------|------|-----|-------|------|

- 1 Have you got a key_____this door?
- 2 Can we meet today? I've got something important_____you.
- 3 I'm staying at home this evening. I've got some letters_____
- 4 'Why are you so quiet?' 'I haven't got anything_____'
- 5 I **need some** new clothes_____to the party.
- 6 I really must go now. I've got a train_____

EXERCISE 96C

Make sentences beginning with the words in brackets, as in the examples.

Examples:

You lent me the money. (It was kind)
It was kind of you to lend me the money.
 I forgot my keys. (It was stupid)
It was stupid of me to forget my keys.

- 1 She sent me a birthday card. (It was nice)
- 2 He opened your letter. (It was wrong)
- 3 You found the answer. (It was clever)
- 4 I left my wallet at home. (It was careless)
- 5 He threw the ticket away. (It was silly)
- 6 You did my shopping for me. (It was good)

Note

– Относительно употребления *to* infinitive с *too* (например, *It's too early (for me) to go to bed*) и *enough* (например, *Is he old enough to drive a car?*), см. 138.4–5.

EXERCISE 96B

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words in the box.

Example:

Goodbye. It was very *nice to meet* you.

| | | | | | |
|------------|--------|--------|------|-------------|------|
| impossible | finish | please | hear | safe | go |
| nice | meet | easy | use | interesting | plan |

- 1 My new video recorder looks complicated, but **it's** actually very_____
- 2 That is a very dangerous part of the city. It isn't_____out there at night.
- 3 I was_____that you had passed your exam.
- 4 I don't like package holidays. I think it's much more_____your own holiday.
- 5 It's_____all that work today. There just isn't enough time.

EXERCISE 96D

Rephrase the sentences. Use the words in brackets + *for* + object + *to* infinitive, as in the examples.

Examples:

You needn't explain. (It isn't necessary)
It isn't necessary for you to explain.
 She isn't normally late for work. (It's unusual)
It's unusual for her to be late for work.

- 1 You **needn't** pay me back the money. (It's unnecessary)
- 2 We must leave immediately. (It's essential)
- 3 Everyone should try to keep calm. (**It's** important)
- 4 He doesn't normally complain. (It's unusual)

97 See someone doing and see someone do, etc

После глаголов *see, hear, feel, watch, listen to* и *notice* можно употреблять object + ... *-ing* или infinitive без *to*.

verb + object + ... *-ing*

We saw Peter leaving.
I heard them going out.

Часто существует различие в значении. Compare:

Глагол с *-ing* формой употребляется тогда, когда мы видим [see], слышим [hear] и т.д. лишь часть происходящего действия.

As I drove past the park, I saw some people playing football. (= Они продолжали играть.)

verb + object + infinitive without *to*

We saw Peter leave.
I heard them go out.

Infinitive без *to* употребляется, когда мы видим [see], слышим [hear] и т.д. все действие от начала до конца.

Last week, I went to London and saw England play Brazil in the big football match. (= Я смотрел всю игру.)

EXERCISE 97A

Put the verbs in brackets into the *-ing* form or the infinitive without *to*.

Example:

I saw Sue *drop* (drop) the bag and pick it up again.

1 As I walked past the room, I heard two people _____ (argue).

2 We stopped for a moment and watched them _____ (build) the new hospital.

3 Did you see someone _____ (break) the window?

4 We watched them _____ (climb) up to the top of the hill and then come down again.

5 We saw the man _____ (post) a letter and walk down the street.

6 As I looked out of the window I noticed the woman _____ (repair) her car.

98 Review of *-ing* form and infinitive (Обзор *-ing* формы и инфинитива)

EXERCISE 98A

Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets in the *-ing* form, the *to* infinitive, or the infinitive without *to*. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Examples:

You really should *try* (try) to stop *smoking* (smoke).

1 I hate _____ (work) at weekends.

2 Would you like _____ (come) to a disco this evening?

3 Can I help you _____ (move) your things?

4 I had hoped _____ (see) the musical *Rainbow*, but I couldn't _____ (get) any tickets.

5 Stop _____ (make) so much noise. People are trying _____ (sleep).

- 6 Would you like something _____ (drink) ?
- 7 You should _____ (try) to avoid _____ (drive) through the city centre at the rush hour.
- 8 I want a few days _____ (think) about their offer before _____ (make) a decision.
- 9 What time do you **need** _____ (leave) _____ (catch) your bus?
- 10 It's unusual for him _____ (be) ill.
- 11 It was horrible to work as an au pair. My family expected me _____ (work) seven days a week.
- 12 Do you prefer _____ (ski) to _____ (ice-skate) ?
- 13 I'm very fond of _____ (walk) by the sea.
- 14 I rang the doorbell, but no one seemed _____ (be) at home.
- 15 It was good of you _____ (explain) everything to me.
- 16 I'd advise you _____. (not | walk) alone in that part of the city. It can be very dangerous there at night.
- 17 I **remember** _____ (meet) her once, but I can't remember her name.
- 18 I'd like _____ (make) a copy of a letter. Could you _____ (show) me how _____ (use) the photocopier? I've never used it before.
- 19 I feel like _____ (not | do) anything at all this evening.
- 20 **We're** very much looking forward to _____ (see) you next week.
- 21 I **mustn't** _____ (forget) _____ (phone) the doctor tomorrow morning.
- 22 The customs officer made me _____ (empty) my suitcases.
- 23 _____ (eat) too many sweets is bad for your teeth.
- 24 Sarah has decided _____. (not | go) away on holiday this summer.
- 25 They stopped _____ (work) at one o'clock _____ (have) something _____ (eat).

EXERCISE 98B

Complete each sentence using the correct form of one of the verbs in the box.
Use each verb only once.

Example:

I phoned my bank manager and I arranged *to meet* him next Tuesday.

| | | | | |
|--------|------|------|--------|------------|
| repair | open | have | travel | sunbathe |
| meet | fall | go | lend | shop |
| | | | | switch off |

- 1 It was very kind of her _____ you the money.
- 2 I can't stand _____ by Underground.
- 3 These shoes need _____. **They've** got holes in them.
- 4 I wouldn't recommend _____ in that supermarket. It's very expensive.
- 5 Would you mind _____ the door for me, please?
- 6 When you leave the room, don't forget _____ all the lights.
- 7 They saw Maria _____ in the garden as they drove past.
- 8 Autumn is coming. The leaves are starting _____ from the trees.
- 9 I'm tired. I regret _____ to bed so late last night.
- 10 I like _____ my eyes tested regularly.

99 Participle (-ing and -ed) adjectives

(Причастные прилагательные, оканчивающиеся на *-ing* и *-ed*)

Сравните прилагательные, оканчивающиеся на *-ing* и *-ed*:

-ed



She's annoyed.

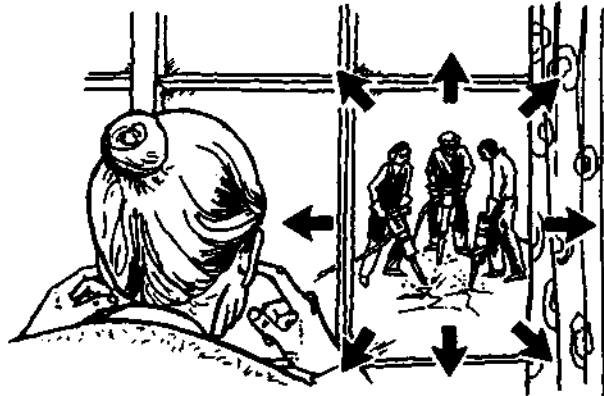
Прилагательные, оканчивающиеся на *-ed*, употребляются для передачи чувств.

I'm interested in photography.

Everyone was excited.

We all feel relaxed.

-ing



The noise is annoying.

Прилагательные, оканчивающиеся на *-ing*, употребляются для обозначения предметов и лиц, вызывающих эти чувства.

I think photography is interesting.

It was an exciting tennis match.

We're having a relaxing holiday.

EXERCISE 99A

Choose the correct form.

Example:

I enjoyed the book. It was very **interested**/*interesting*.

- 1 Are you **interested/interesting** in art?
- 2 They were **shocked/shocking** when they heard the news.
- 3 I thought the story was quite **amused/amusing**.
- 4 We were all very **worried/worrying** when he didn't come home.
- 5 It was **surprised/surprising** that she didn't come to the meeting.
- 6 I usually find football rather **bored/boring**.
- 7 Are you **frightened/frightening** of spiders?

EXERCISE 99B

Complete the sentences. Use adjectives formed by adding *-ing* or *-ed* to the words in brackets.

Example:

I don't get **embarrassed** very **easily**. (embarrass)

1 I find it quite _____ to talk in front of a group of **people**. (embarrass)

2 I think reading newspapers is _____ (depress)

3 I'm _____ in all kinds of sport. (interest)

4 I find walking in the countryside very _____ (relax)

5 I think learning a language is very _____ (interest)

6 I get _____ when people smoke in restaurants. (annoy)

7 I don't normally get _____ when I watch horror films, (frighten)

Are these things true for you?

100 Participle (-ing) clauses

(Причастное придаточное предложение с -ing)

- 1** Present participle, например *sitting, playing*, употребляется для введения 'participle clause'.
*Simon is the boy **sitting in the corner**.*
*I had an accident **driving to work**.*
- 2** Некоторые participle clauses подобны прилагательным: они больше характеризуют существительные.
*Simon is the boy **sitting in the corner**.*
*The girl **wearing the black dress** is Sarah.*
- 3** Другие participle clauses подобны наречиям: они могут выражать такие понятия, как время или причину:
 - a** Когда одно действие происходит посередине другого, более длительного действия, *-ing* clause употребляется для более длительного действия.
*/ had an accident **driving to work**.* (= Со мной случилось происшествие, когда я ехал на работу.)
 - b** Когда два действия происходят одновременно, *-ing* clause можно употреблять для одного из них.
*/ walked out of the room **smiling to myself**.* (= Когда я вышел из комнаты, я улыбался сам себе.)
 - c** Когда одно действие произошло ранее другого, *having + past participle* можно употреблять для выражения первого действия.
***Having finished breakfast**, I went out for a walk.* (= Я закончил завтракать, а затем вышел на прогулку.)
Когда одно действие происходит непосредственно после другого, *-ing* clause может употребляться для выражения первого действия.
***Taking a book out of his pocket**, he started to read.* (= Он достал книгу из кармана и сразу стал читать.)
 - d** Также *-ing* clause употребляется для выражения причины происходящего.
***Knowing you wanted to go to the concert**, I bought a ticket for you.* (= Поскольку я знал, что вы хотите пойти на концерт ...)
***Having failed the exam the first time**, he decided to take it again.* (= Потому что он провалился на экзамене первый раз ...)

EXERCISE 100A



1 Doris

2 Jim

3 Martha

4 Diana

5 Arthur

Identify the people in the picture by saying what each one is doing.

Example:

Doris is the girl reading the book. / The girl reading the book is Doris.

EXERCISE 100B

Peter had a very bad day yesterday. What happened to him?

Complete the sentences using the words in the box as -ing clauses.

Example:

1 **He fell off a ladder changing a light bulb.**

2 He fell off a ladder _____

3 He burnt himself _____

4 He ran out of petrol _____

5 He lost his keys _____

6 He broke a cup _____

| |
|--|
| drive to work get out of his car do the washing-up change a light bulb cook his dinner |
|--|

EXERCISE 100C

Join the sentences using an -ing clause, as in the example.

Example:

I was sitting in the park. I was writing a letter.
/ was sitting in the park writing a letter.

1 The woman was driving along. She was listening to her car radio.

2 I arrived at the examination hall. I was feeling very nervous.

3 He came into the room. He was carrying a suitcase.

4 They were walking down the street. They were holding hands.

EXERCISE 100D

Rephrase the sentences using *Having* + past participle, as in the example.

Example:

I finished the washing up, then I sat down and watched TV.

Having finished the washing up, I sat down and watched TV.

1 He typed the letters, then he put them all in envelopes.

2 I did all the housework, then I went out for a walk.

3 He got out of bed, then he had a shower.

4 She locked all the doors, then she went to bed.

EXERCISE 100E

Rephrase the sentences using an *-ing* clause, as in the examples.

Examples:

Because she didn't want to miss the train, she ran all the way to the station.

Not wanting to miss the train, she ran all the way to the station.

Because I had just eaten, I wasn't hungry. *Having just eaten, I wasn't hungry.*

- 1 Because she is a little deaf, she wears a hearing-aid.
- 2 Because I don't like classical music, I didn't go to the concert.
- 3 Because she is rich, she can afford expensive holidays.
- 4 Because I had finished the book, I decided to take it back to the library.
- 5 Because they had gone to bed so late the night before, they felt quite tired the next day.

Note

– **Обычно** подлежащее придаточного предложения с *-ing* формой одновременно является подлежащим главного предложения, например: *Having just eaten, I wasn't hungry.* (= Because I had just eaten, I wasn't hungry.) Как правило, ошибочным является построение **предложений**, в которых разные подлежащие. Например, нельзя сказать *Running down the street, the envelope fell out of my hand* (поскольку из контекста явствует как будто конверт бежал вдоль улицы!)

101 Singular and plural nouns**(Единственное и множественное число существительных) (1)**

1 Regular plurals
(Правильные формы образования множественного числа)

a Большинство существительных образуют множественное число путем присоединения *-s* к форме единственного числа существительного.

b Окончание *-es* присоединяется, если единственное число существительного заканчивается на *-ch*, *-sh*, *-s* или *-x*.

c Некоторые существительные заканчиваются на *-o* (*tomato*, *potato*, *echo*, *hero*, *negro* – наиболее распространенные), и множественное число образуется путем добавления *-es*.

Другие существительные, оканчивающиеся на *-o*, образуют множественное число с помощью окончания *-s*.

d В существительных, оканчивающихся на согласную + *-y*, *-y* меняется на *i* и добавляется *-es*.

| SINGULAR NOUN | PLURAL NOUN |
|--|--|
| <i>book</i> <i>day</i> <i>girl</i> | <i>books</i> <i>days</i> <i>girls</i> |
| <i>church</i> <i>dish</i> <i>bus</i> <i>box</i> | <i>churches</i> <i>dishes</i> <i>buses</i> <i>boxes</i> |
| <i>tomato</i> <i>potato</i> <i>hero</i> | <i>tomatoes</i> <i>potatoes</i> <i>heroes</i> |
| <i>piano</i> <i>radio</i> | <i>pianos</i> <i>radios</i> |
| <i>baby</i> <i>factory</i> | <i>babies</i> <i>factories</i> |

2 Irregular plurals (Неправильные формы образования множественного числа)

a В некоторых существительных, оканчивающихся на *-f/-fe*, опускается *-f/-fe* и прибавляется *-ves* во множественном числе, например, *half, thief, leaf, loaf, self, shelf, wolf, knife, wife, life*.

b Некоторые существительные образуют множественное число путем изменения гласной или гласных.

Множественное число слова *mouse* - *mice*.

c Несколько существительных образуют множественное число с помощью *-en*.

d Некоторые существительные имеют одну и ту же форму единственного и множественного числа.

e Некоторые существительные, заимствованные из греческого и латинского языков, во множественном числе имеют греческие и латинские окончания.

f Обычно формой множественного числа *person* является *people* (не *persons*).

* *fish* - обычная форма множественного числа от *fish*; *fishes* также возможно, но менее распространено.

Относительно произношения окончания *-(e)s* см. 187.1.

SINGULAR PLURAL

| | |
|-------|---------|
| half | halves |
| thief | thieves |
| leaf | leaves |
| knife | knives |
| wife | wives |
| life | lives |

| | |
|-------|----------------|
| foot | feet |
| tooth | teeth |
| goose | geese |
| man | men |
| woman | women /'wɪmɪn/ |
| mouse | mice |

| | |
|-------|----------------------|
| child | children /'tʃɪldrən/ |
| ox | oxen |

| | |
|------------|------------|
| sheep | sheep |
| deer | deer |
| fish | fish* |
| aircraft | aircraft |
| hovercraft | hovercraft |
| spacecraft | spacecraft |
| series | series |
| species | species |

| | |
|------------|-----------|
| crisis | crises |
| phenomenon | phenomena |
| cactus | cacti |

| | |
|--------|--------|
| person | people |
|--------|--------|

EXERCISE 101A

Complete the sentences using the plurals of the nouns in brackets.

Example:

I like *oranges, apples, peaches* and *strawberries*. (orange | apple | peach | strawberry).

1 **They've** got five____, three____ and two____ (child | girl | boy)

2 London has many different _____, _____ and _____ (restaurant | theatre | cinema | disco)

3 When he fell over, he broke two of his _____. (tooth)

- 4 We've got enough _____, but we need some more _____ and _____ (plate | knife | fork)
 5 On their tour of Europe, they visited seven _____ in six _____ (country | day)
 6 _____ hunt _____ (cat | mouse)
 7 Do you know those _____ over there? (person)
 8 These _____ are too small for me. They hurt my _____ (shoe | foot)
 9 We've got some _____ and _____, but we haven't got any _____ (egg | tomato | potato)
 10 Autumn is coming. The _____ are starting to all from the _____ (leaf | tree)

02 Singular and plural nouns

(Единственное и множественное число существительных) (2)

- 1** Обычно единственное число существительных употребляется с единственным числом глаголов и местоимений.
 'Where's the key?' 'It's on the table.' \ 'Where are the keys?' 'They're on the table.'
 But see 2-9 below.
- 2** С **групповыми** существительными, например *family, team, group, crowd, class, company, government*, употребляется единственное или множественное число глаголов и местоимений.
- a** Множественное число глаголов и местоимений употребляется в том случае, когда под группой имеется в виду определенное количество людей.
My family are on holiday.
The government think they can solve the problem.
- b** Единственное число глаголов и местоимений употребляется, когда под группой имеется в виду безличное целое.
The family is a very important part of society.
- 3** Существительные *people, (the) police* и *cattle* всегда употребляются во множественном числе.
People are strange, aren't they?
The police in Britain wear blue uniforms.
- 4** Множественные формы глаголов и местоимений употребляются с *a number of* на *group of*.
A number of my friends are planning a holiday together. They hope to go to Greece and Turkey.
For a lot of, see 116.
- 5** После выражений *one of my/his/hers* др. употребляется множественное число существительного и единственное число глагола.
One of my friends is coming to see me.
- 6** Когда речь идет о величине или количестве, часто употребляется единственное число глагола и местоимения с множественным числом существительного.
Ten thousand pounds is a lot of money.
'The nearest town is five kilometres from here.' 'That isn't very far.'

- 7 Некоторые существительные имеют только форму множественного числа, например, *trousers, jeans, pyjamas, shorts, tights, glasses, scissors*.

Those jeans are very old.

There are some scissors in the kitchen.

Форма единственного числа глагола + *a pair of* употребляется с такими существительными.

There is a pair of scissors in the kitchen.

- 8 Некоторые существительные оканчиваются на *-s*, но это не множественное число, например, *news, politics, mathematics, physics, economics, athletics, billiards, rabies*.

The news is depressing.

Mathematics is an interesting subject.

- 9 Неисчисляемые существительные, названия предметов, которые нельзя сосчитать, например *milk, money*, обычно не имеют формы множественного числа.

There is some milk in the fridge.

Money isn't the most important thing in life, is it?

Относительно неисчисляемых существительных см. 107.

EXERCISE 102A

Choose the correct form. In one sentence either answer is possible.

Example:

There *were/was* a lot of people at the party.

1 Economics *is/are* an interesting subject.

2 My trousers *have/has* got a hole in it/**them**.

3 Rabies *isn't/aren't* a very common disease in Britain.

4 My family *lives/live* in the North of England.

5 The news *was/were* quite surprising.

6 'Is *this/Are these* your scissors?' 'Yes, *they are/it is*.'

7 Two weeks *isn't/aren't* a very long time, *is it/are they*?

8 My hair *is/are* quite greasy. *It needs/They need* washing.

103 Compound nouns (Составные существительные)

- 1 Составные существительные - это существительные, состоящие из двух и более частей:

a toothbrush

a tin-opener

- а Многие составные существительные образованы путем употребления одного существительного (как прилагательного) перед другим существительным. В этом случае первое существительное почти всегда стоит в единственном числе (даже если имеет значение множественного числа).

a toothbrush (щетка для чистки зубов)

a shoe shop (магазин, где продается обувь)

a taxi driver (лицо, управляющее такси)

Существует несколько исключений, например, *clothes, sports, men, women*.

a clothes shop a sports car women doctors

b Некоторые составные существительные пишутся, как одно слово, например, *toothbrush*, другие - через дефис (-), например, *tin-opener*, третьи - как отдельные слова, например, *shoe shop*.

Некоторые составные существительные можно писать, как одно слово, или через дефис, или как два слова, например, *babysitter, baby-sitter, baby sitter* (на этот счет не существует определенных правил).

c Некоторые составные существительные образуются с помощью *-ing* формы + noun или adjective + noun.

a shopping bag a waiting room drinking water a greenhouse (= теплица)

2 Обычно множественное число составных существительных образуется путем добавления *-(e)s* ко второму слову.

| | | |
|---------------------|--|-------------------------|
| <i>a shoe shop</i> | | <i>shoe shops</i> |
| <i>a toothbrush</i> | | <i>two toothbrushes</i> |

Но обратите внимание, что составные существительные, оканчивающиеся на *-in-law*, принимают *-s* в первом слове.

| | | |
|---------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| <i>one brother-in-law</i> | | <i>two brothers-in-law</i> |
| <i>my mother-in-law</i> | | <i>some mothers-in-law</i> |

Некоторые другие составные существительные также присоединяют *-s* к первому слову, например, *passer-by* [прохожий].

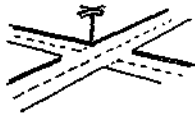
a passer-by \ *some passers-by*

EXERCISE Ю3А

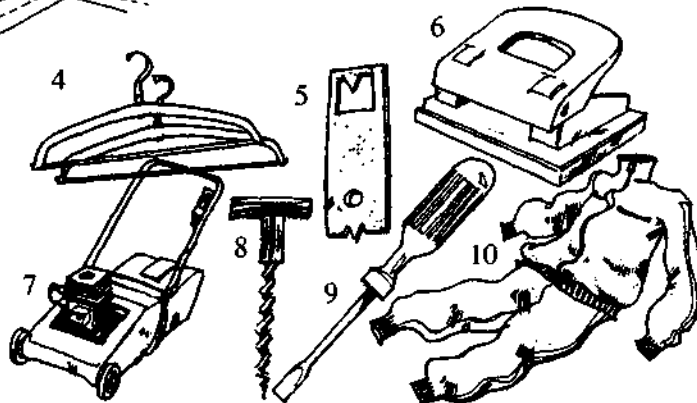
Make compound nouns from the words in the box to describe the objects in the pictures.

Examples:

1 *alarm clock* 2 *T-shirts* 3 *crossroads*



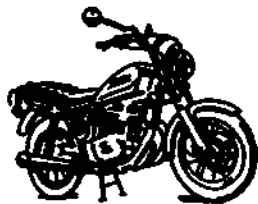
| | |
|--------------|---------------|
| screw | mower |
| hole | suit |
| alarm | roads |
| cork | hangers |
| bottle | shirts |
| cross | driver |
| clothes- | punch |
| T- | screw |
| track- | opener |
| lawn | clock |



104 Possessive 's (genitive)

(Притяжательный (родительный) падеж с окончанием 's)

1 Use



Sally's motorbike



Andrew's bedroom

- a** Possessive 's с именами собственными (например: *Sally, Andrew*) указывает на отношение между лицом и чем-то или кем-то еще.

Sally's motorbike (мотоцикл, принадлежащий Сэлли)

Andrew's bedroom (кровать, на которой спит Эндрю)

my sister's school (школа, в которую ходит моя сестра)

Possessive 's употребляется с личными неопределенными местоимениями, например, *someone, nobody*.

someone's passport

nobody's problem

- b** Possessive 's может употребляться с названиями животных.

a dog's life

the cat's milk

- c** Possessive 's может употребляться с существительным, обозначающим группу людей, или с местом, где живут, работают люди и т.д.

the company's office

the club's rules

the world's problems

London's traffic

- d** Possessive 's может также употребляться в некоторых выражениях времени.

yesterday's newspaper

last week's football match

next year's plans

Possessive 's употребляется с периодами времени.

a week's holiday

two days' work

2 Form

- a** После существительного в единственном числе ставится 's.

my father's car
Sally's clothes

- b** После существительного во множественном числе, оканчивающегося на -s, ставится только '.

my parents' car
the ladies' clothes

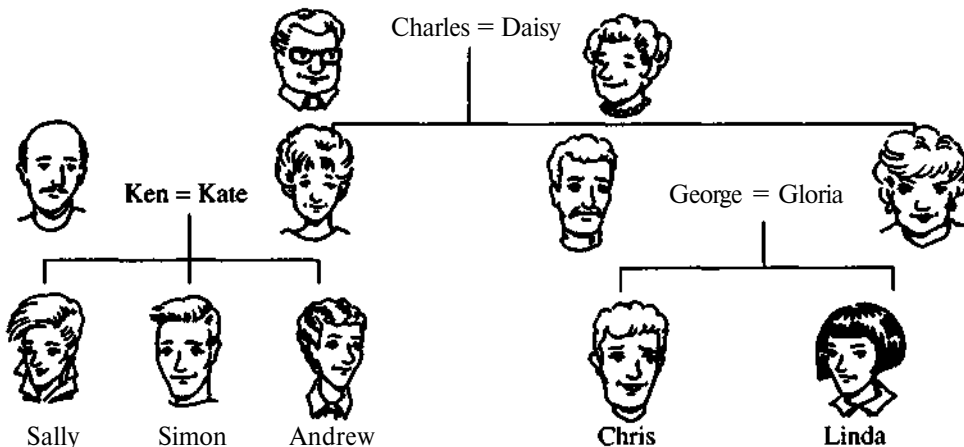
- c** После существительного во множественном числе, не оканчивающегося на -s, ставится 's.

the men's car
children's clothes

- d** Иногда к существительному в единственном числе с окончанием на -s лишь подставляется '.
- Sherlock Holmes' bestfriend Archimedes' Law*
- Но более употребительным является добавление 's.
- Mrs Jones's husband Chris's idea*
- e** Possessive 's может ставиться и к целому словосочетанию.
- Sue and Frank's daughter*
- Но в случае с более длинным словосочетанием употребляется ... *of* ... , например, *the daughter of the Australian couple who live next door* (see 105).
- f** Possessive 's может также употребляться и без последующего существительного (когда очевидно, о ком или о чем идет речь).
- My car is next to Ken's.* (= ... рядом с автомобилем Кена.)
- Possessive 's часто употребляется, когда речь идет о магазинах, мастерских, ателье, лавках, кабинете врача и т.д.
- She has just been to the hairdresser's.*
I went to the doctor's yesterday.
- Относительно произношения окончания 's см. 187.1.

EXERCISE 104A

Look at the family tree. Make sentences using the possessive 's and the words in the box.



Examples:

Kate-Ken

Kate is Ken's wife.

Simon and Andrew-Sally

Simon and Andrew are Sally's brothers.

Gloria-Ken

Gloria is Ken's sister-in-law.

1 Gloria - Chris and Linda

2 Linda - Chris

3 George - Chris and Linda

4 Chris - George and Gloria

5 Charles - Ken

6 Daisy - Linda and Chris

7 Kate - Chris and Linda

8 Sally, Simon and Andrew - Chris and Linda

| | | |
|---------------|---------------|--------|
| wife | mother | father |
| sister | brother | son |
| aunt | grandmother | |
| cousin | sister-in-law | |
| father-in-law | | |

EXERCISE 104B

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the possessive 's.

Example:

What is your **friend's** name?

- 1 Sarah found **somebody** _____ credit cards in the street.
- 2 The Eiffel Tower is Paris' _____ most famous landmark.
- 3 The boys' _____ bedroom has just been painted.
- 4 I read about a murder in this morning's _____ newspaper.
- 5 Can you borrow your parents' _____ car at the weekend?
- 6 I need to get some medicine. Is there a chemist's _____ near here?

105 Possessive 's or ... of...

(Притяжательный падеж 's или ... of...)

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>1 Окончание 's обычно употребляется, когда первое существительное является именем или названием лица или животного.</p> <p><i>Andrew's school</i> <i>Sarah's book</i> <i>my parents' car</i> <i>the cat's food</i></p> | <p>С предметами обычно употребляется ... of....</p> <p><i>the name of the school</i> <i>the middle of the book</i> <i>the front of the car</i> <i>the smell of the food</i></p> |
| <p>2 С более длинными словосочетаниями также часто употребляется ... of... вместо 's.</p> <p><i>Yesterday I met the daughter of the Australian couple who live next door.</i> (Instead of: <i>Yesterday I met the Australian couple who live next door's daughter.</i>)</p> | |

EXERCISE 105A

Complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets with the possessive 's or ... of..., as in the examples.

Examples:

Have you seen *Steven Spielberg's new film?* (the new film | Steven Spielberg)

Have you repaired *the wheel of the bicycle?* (the wheel | the bicycle)

- 1 We had to leave the cinema early so we didn't see _____. (the end | the film)
- 2 We met Sue and Frank at _____ (the party | Sarah)
- 3 My flat is on _____ (the top floor | the house)
- 4 The bus crashed into _____ (the back | my car)
- 5 We heard the news from _____ (a friend | the woman who works in the post office)
- 6 There's a hospital at _____. (the end | this road)
- 7 I've spoken to _____ (the parents | the girls)
- 8 The police want to interview _____ (the manager | the Black Cat Club)

106 Double possessive (Сдвоенный притяжательный падеж)

В сдвоенном притяжательном падеже могут употребляться две формы: ... *of* ... и собственно притяжательный падеж.

... *of* ... + possessive

Sarah is a friend of Simon's. (= одна из друзей Симона)

A cousin of mine is coming to visit me. (= один из моих двоюродных братьев или сестер)

Sue is having lunch with some colleagues of hers. (= некоторыми из ее коллег)

Обратите внимание что после *of* может употребляться притяжательное местоимение, например, *mine, hers*, и т.д., но не личное, например, *me, her* и т.д.

EXERCISE 106A

Make a new sentence using ... *of* ... + possessive, as in the example.

Example:

I met one of my friends in London. *I met a friend of mine in London.*

1 Robert visited one of his relatives.

2 One of our neighbours is going to babysit for us.

3 Sally is going on holiday with some of her friends.

4 Simon has borrowed some of Sarah's records.

5 Two of my colleagues are ill at the moment.

107 Countable and uncountable nouns

(Исчисляемые и неисчисляемые существительные)

1 Существительные могут быть исчисляемыми или неисчисляемыми (countable or uncountable):

a Исчисляемые существительные - это названия отдельных предметов, людей и т.д., которых можно сосчитать; они имеют форму единственного и множественного числа.

one book two books

a man some men

Неисчисляемые существительные - это названия предметов или веществ, которые предстают как целое и которых нельзя сосчитать; они не имеют формы единственного и множественного числа.

milk rice weather

b После исчисляемых существительных могут употребляться глаголы в единственном или множественном числе.

This book is expensive.

These books are expensive.

That man lives next door.

Those men live next door.

После неисчисляемых существительных всегда употребляются глаголы в единственном числе.

Milk is good for you.

The weather was very good yesterday.

- c** Перед исчисляемыми существительными могут употребляться формы артикля *a/an* и числительные.

a man one book two books

Как правило, непосредственно перед неисчисляемыми существительными не употребляются *a/an* или числительные. Нельзя, например, сказать *a weather, two weathers* и т.д. Но иногда могут употребляться *a/an* и числительные с такими словами, как например, *coffee, tea, beer* и т.д., когда в ресторане делается заказ этих напитков в чашке или стакане.

Excuse me, waiter. Could we have two coffees and a tea, please?

Артикль *a* употребляется перед словами, начинающимися с согласных, например *a book, a man*, и *an* - перед словами, начинающимися с гласных звуков *an apple, an egg* (см. 108.1).

- d** Перед исчисляемыми и неисчисляемыми существительными употребляется *some* (см. 115).

*some books some rice
some men some milk*

- 2** Некоторые существительные могут употребляться как исчисляемые, так и неисчисляемые с разницей в значении. For example:

COUNTABLE



a glass



a hair



a paper (= a newspaper)



an iron



some potatoes

UNCOUNTABLE



glass [стекло]



her hair [её волосы]



some paper [бумага]



iron [железо]



some potato

3 Некоторые существительные неисчисляемые в английском языке, но исчисляемые в других языках. Вот некоторые из наиболее употребительных неисчисляемых существительных и соответствующие им исчисляемые выражения:

UNCOUNTABLE

- accommodation*
- advice*
- bread*
- furniture***
- information*
- luggage*
- money*
- news*
- traffic*
- travel*
- work*

COUNTABLE

- a place to **live/stay***
- a piece of advice*
- a **loaf/slice/piece** of bread) a (bread) roll*
- a piece **of** furniture*
- a piece of information*
- a piece of luggage; a **suitcase/bag***
- a **note/coin**; a sum (of money)*
- a piece of news*
- a **car/bus** etc*
- a journey/trip*
- a **job**; a piece of work*

Compare:

*I've just had some news.
Where is your luggage?
We need some bread.*

*I've just had a piece of news.
Where are your suitcases?
We **need a loaf of bread.***

Здесь вместо *a piece* о/в разговорном стиле можно употреблять *a bit of*, например, *a bit of advice*.

4 Исчисляемые и неисчисляемые существительные могут употребляться в выражениях количества с *of*.

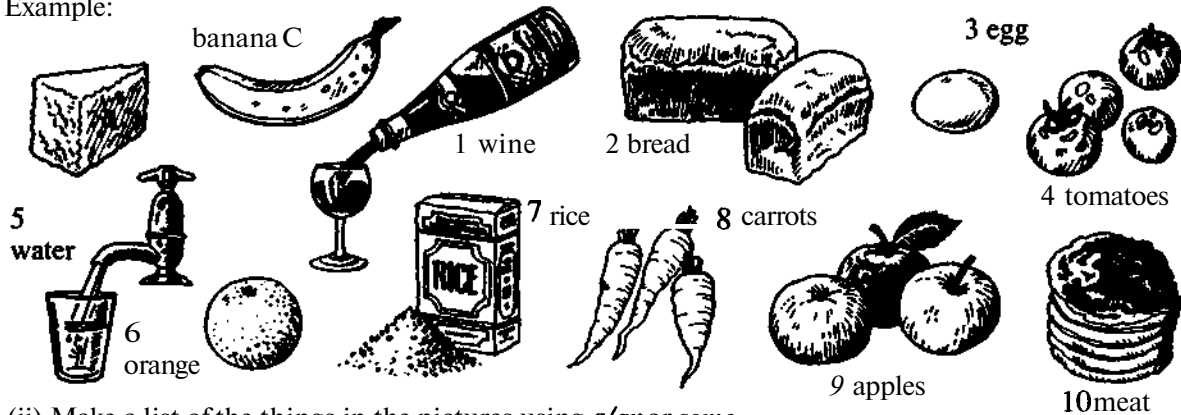
*a box of matches
two tins of tomatoes*

*a bottle of water
two loaves of bread*

EXERCISE 107A

(i) Look at the things in the pictures. Are they countable (C) or uncountable (U) here?

Example:



(ii) Make a list of the things in the pictures using *a/an* or *some*.

Examples:

Some cheese, a banana ...

EXERCISE 107B

Choose the correct form.

Example:

I'd like some *information/informationa* about hotels in London.

- 1 Sue is the woman with blonde *hair/hairs* who lives opposite.
- 2 Did you have a good *travel/journey* from Switzerland?
- 3 I've got a problem and I'd like some *advice/advices*.
- 4 Don't forget to buy a *bread/some bread* when you go shopping.
- 5 I'd like to find out what's on TV this evening. Have you got a *paper/some paper*?
- 6 There *is/are* usually a lot of *traffic/traffics* in the city at this time of the day.
- 7 He's trying to find a *work/job* at the moment, but there *isn't/aren't* much *work/ works* available.
- 8 *Is/Are* good *accommodation/accommodations* difficult to find in the city centre?

108 Articles: *a/an* and *the* (Артикли: *a/an* и *the*)

1 Form and pronunciation

- a** Артикль *a* /э/ употребляется перед словами, начинающимися с согласного звука. Артикль *an* /эп/ употребляется перед словами, начинающимися с гласного звука.

a book /э buk/
a car /э kɑː/
a day /э deɪ/
a friend /э frend/
a girl /э ɡɜːl/

an apple /эп əzpl/
an egg /эп eg/
an *interview* /эп 'ɪntənvjuː/
ал *old coat* /эп əʊld kəʊt/
an *umbrella* /эп ʌm'brelə/

- b** Артикль *the* произносится как /дэ/ перед словами, начинающимися с согласного звука. Артикль *the* произносится как /ðiː/ перед словами, начинающимися с гласного звука.

the book /дэ buk/
the car /дэ kɑː/
the day /дэ deɪ/

the apple /ðiː 'æpl/
the egg /ðiː eg/
the interview /ðiː 'ɪntənvjuː/

- c** Артикли *a* и *the* /дэ/ употребляются перед буквой *u*, когда она произносится как согласный звук /ju/. Артикли *an* и *the* /ðiː/ употребляются перед буквой *h*, когда она не произносится.

a university /э ,juːnɪ'vɜːsəti/
the university /дэ ,juːnɪ'vɜːsəti/

an hour /ан 'aʊə(r)/
the hour /ðiː 'aʊə(r)/

2 Use of *a/an*

For countable and uncountable nouns, see 107.

- a** Артикль *a/an* употребляется перед исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе.

a student a book an idea

Артикль *a/an* не употребляется перед исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе. Нельзя, например, сказать *a students* or *an ideas*. Обычно *a/an* не употребляется перед неисчисляемыми существительными. Нельзя, например, сказать *a water* or *a music* (но см. 107.1-2).

Исчисляемые существительные в единственном числе не употребляются самостоятельно, без *a/an, the, my, this* и др.

I'm a student. (Not: *I'm student.*)

- b** Артикль *a/an* употребляется в том случае, когда слушающий или читающий не знает точно, какое лицо или предмет имеется в виду.

There is a book on the table. (Неизвестно, какая книга.)

He met a girl last night. She works in a bank. (Неизвестно, какая девушка или какой банк.)

Артикль *a/an* употребляется в том случае, когда о ком-то или о чем-то идет речь.

I'm an architect He's a vegetarian. It was a good film.

3 Use of *the*

For countable and uncountable nouns, see 107.

- a** Артикль *the* употребляется с исчисляемыми существительными в единственном и множественном числе и с неисчисляемыми **существительными**.

the man the shoes the water

- b** Артикль *the* употребляется в том случае, когда слушающий или читающий знает точно, какое лицо или предмет имеется в виду:

- Артикль *the* употребляется в том случае, когда лица или предметы уже упоминались.

I met a girl and a boy. I didn't like the boy much, but the girl was very nice.

My father bought a shirt and some shoes. The shoes were quite expensive.

- Артикль *the* употребляется в том случае, когда по ситуации очевидно, какие лица или предметы имеются в виду.

Where's Simon? 'He's in the bathroom.' (= ванная в этом доме)

Are you hot? I'll open the window. (= окно в этой комнате)

I got into a taxi. The driver asked me where I wanted to go. (= водитель такси, в которое я сел)

- Артикль *the* употребляется, когда что-то единично, например, *the sun, the moon, the sky, the earth, the world*.

I enjoy lying in the sun.

Would you like to travel round the world?

EXERCISE 108A

Put the words in the correct column: A or B.

A

a and *the* /ðə/*clock*

B

an and *the* /ði:/*orange*

| | | | | | |
|-------------------|------------|----------|----------|----------|-------------|
| clock | aunt | sandwich | house | school | examination |
| orange | old car | dog | hospital | onion | ice-cream |
| envelope | university | game | hour | umbrella | |

EXERCISE 108B

Add *a* or *an* where necessary.

Examples:

I'd like *a* hamburger, please.**Sarah** and **Simon** **are** _____ students.

- There's** _____ post office in West Street.
- I've got _____ envelope, but I haven't got _____ stamp.
- We ate _____ cheese and drank _____ wine.
- Can you see those two men? They're _____ policemen.
- Would you like _____ cup of tea?
- I** saw _____ very good film on TV last night.
- There isn't _____ garage near here.
- I'm working as _____ secretary in _____ office in *London*.
- Do you always **drink** _____ tea **with** _____ milk?
- I asked my father **for** _____ advice about finding _____ job.

EXERCISE 108C

Complete the sentences using *a*, *an* or *the*.

Example:

The Queen of England lives in Buckingham Palace in London.

- Whois** _____ best footballer **in** _____ world?
- My brother works in _____ large garage in Brighton. **He's** _____ engineer.
- Did you enjoy _____ party you went to on Saturday?
- _____ earth moves round _____ sun.
- I had _____ cup of coffee and some toast for breakfast this **morning** _____ coffee was **delicious**.
- Could you switch off _____ TV? Nobody is watching it.
- 'What's** _____ capital of **India**?' **'Delhi.'**
- 'What** do you think of Lynne?' **'She's** _____ extremely nice person.

109 Talking in general: no article and *a/an* (Разговор вообще: отсутствие артикля и *a/an*)

- 1** Когда речь идет о чем-то вообще, употребляются существительные во множественном числе или неисчисляемые существительные без *the*.

Shoes are expensive. (= обувь вообще)*Milk is good for you.* (= молоко вообще)Когда речь идет о чем-то конкретном, употребляется *the*.*These are the shoes which I bought last week.* (= конкретные туфли, которые я купил на прошлой неделе)*Could you pass the milk, please?* (= конкретное молоко на столе)

More examples:

GENERAL (ОБЩЕЕ)

/ like *horses*.

Life isn't easy.

He only cares about money.

PARTICULAR (КОНКРЕТНОЕ)

*Look at **the horses** in that field.*

*I've got a book about **the life of J. F. Kennedy**.*

*Where is **the money** I gave you yesterday?*

Не всегда легко можно установить, идет ли речь об общем или конкретном. For example:

GENERAL

/ enjoy talking to *old people*. (= старики вообще)

PARTICULAR

*Do you know **the old people** sitting over there?* (= конкретные старики, сидящие там)

2 Можно также говорить о чем-то вообще, используя *a/an* (в значении 'любой') с исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе.

A vegetarian doesn't eat meat.

An architect designs buildings.

EXERCISE 109A

Add *the* where necessary.

I find—history an interesting subject.

We studied *the* history of the Spanish Civil War at school.

1 Andrew hates ___ examinations.

2 How did you get on in ___ examinations yesterday?

3 Do you take ___ sugar in ___ coffee?

4 'Where is ___ coffee I bought?' 'It's in ___ kitchen.'

5 I'm a vegetarian, I don't eat ___ meat or ___ fish.

6 I'll put ___ shopping away. Shall I put ___ meat into ___ freezer?

7 Do you like ___ English beer?

8 Do you think ___ love is the most important thing in ___ life?

EXERCISE 109B

Rephrase these general statements using *a/an*, as in the example.

Example:

Carpenters make things from wood.

A carpenter makes things from wood.

1 Florists sell flowers.

2 Children need love.

3 Corkscrews take corks out of bottles

4 Large cars are expensive to run.

5 Teetotallers don't drink alcohol.

110 Talking in general: *the* (Разговор вообще: *the*)

1 **The + noun**

- a** Артикль *the* иногда употребляется с исчисляемым существительным в единственном числе, когда речь идет о чем-то вообще. Это имеет место, например, с названиями животных, цветов и растений.

The dolphin is an intelligent animal.

The orchid is a beautiful flower.

(*the dolphin* = дельфины вообще; *the orchid* = орхидеи вообще)

- b** Артикль *the* употребляется в общем смысле с названиями музыкальных инструментов и научных открытий.

She can play the guitar and the saxophone.

Marconi invented the radio.

- c** Некоторые употребительные выражения с *the* имеют общее значение, например, *the town, the country (side), the sea (side), the mountains, the rain, the wind, the sun (shine), the snow.*

I enjoy going for long walks in the country.

They often go to the mountains at weekends.

I like the sound of the rain.

- d** *The cinema* и *the theatre* также употребляются в общем значении.

Which do you prefer, the cinema or the theatre?

2 **The + adjective**

- a** Артикль *the* употребляется перед некоторыми прилагательными, например *young, old, rich, poor, blind*, с общим значением.

The young should listen to the old.

(*the young* = молодежь вообще; *the old* = старики вообще)

- b** Артикль *the* также употребляется перед некоторыми названиями национальностей, например *English, Italian, French, Swiss, Japanese*, для обозначения 'народ данной страны'.

The English drink a lot of tea.

Обратите внимание, что эти слова оканчиваются на *-sh* (eg *the English, the Irish*), *-ch* (eg *the French, the Dutch*) или *-ese* (eg *the Japanese, the Chinese*).

С другими национальностями употребляется существительное во множественном числе, оканчивающееся на *-s* с или без *the*, например, *(the) Indians, (the) Germans*.

EXERCISE 110A

Complete each sentence using *the* and the most suitable noun in the box.

Example:

The blue whale is the largest animal in the world.

| | | | |
|------------|---------|-------|-----|
| piano | radio | tulip | sea |
| blue whale | country | swan | |

- 1 _____ is a large white bird with a long neck.
- 2 Do you often listen to that programme on _____?
- 3 My grandmother has lived in a small village in _____ all her life.
- 4 _____ has a bell-shaped flower.
- 5 Chopin wrote a lot of music for _____.
- 6 Do you ever go swimming in _____?

EXERCISE 110B

What do we call these people? Use *the* + the adjectives in the box.

Example:

people who are unable to hear
the deaf

| | | | | |
|-------|------|-------------|------------|------|
| blind | sick | deaf | unemployed | dead |
|-------|------|-------------|------------|------|

- 1 people who are no longer alive
- 2 people who have no jobs
- 3 people who cannot see
- 4 people who are unwell

EXERCISE 110C

What do we call the people of these countries?

Example:

Portugal
the Portuguese

- 1 Britain
- 2 Australia
- 3 Spain
- 4 France
- 5 Greece

111 Common expressions without an article (Общие выражения без артикля)

1 *School, the school, church, the church etc*

a Часто следующие существительные употребляются без артикля.

| |
|---|
| <i>school university college</i> <i>hospital prison church bed</i> |
|---|

*Maria goes to **school** every morning.*
*I studied history at **university**.*
*Mr Woods has gone into **hospital**.*
*John has been **in prison for** three years.*
*I think I'll go to **bed** early tonight.*

Эти существительные употребляются без артикля, когда имеется в виду главное назначение определенного места. Compare:

*/ think I'll go to **bed** early **tonight**.* (спать)
*Maria goes to **school** every morning.*
(учиться)
*Mr Woods has gone into **hospital**.* (для
лечения)

*There are some shoes under **the bed**.*
***The school** was painted last month.*

*Sarah met Simon outside **the hospital**.*

b Обычно слова *work* и *home* употребляются без артикля.

*What time do you usually go to **work**?*
*Would you like to stay **at home** this evening?*

2 Means of transport (Средства передвижения)

Выражения *by car/bus/train/plane* т.д. употребляются без артикля, когда речь идет о способе передвижения.

*/ usually go to school **by car**.*
*We went to Rome **by train**.*

Говорят также *on foot* (= пешком), например, */ came home **on foot**.*

3 Meals (Еда)

Обычно с названиями еды артикль не употребляется.

*What time do you usually have **breakfast**?*
*When would you like to have **dinner**?*

Но *the* употребляется в конкретном случае, например, */ enjoyed **the dinner** we had last night.*

Можно также сказать *a/the meal*, например, *We had **a meal** on the plane.* *A/an* также употребляется, когда перед *breakfast/lunch/dinner* т.д. стоит прилагательное.

*They had **a large breakfast**.*

EXERCISE 111A

Add *the* where necessary.

Examples:

Mrs Woods goes **to**——church every **Sunday**.

There is a cemetery behind *the* church.

1 What time does Annie normally go to_____school?

2 They are painting_____school at the moment.

3 I went to_____bed at 10 o'clock last night.

4 I was lying **on** _____bed reading a book.

5 Kate arrives _____home from_____work at about 6.00 every evening.

6 Did you go **to** _____work by_____bus or on_____foot yesterday?

7 Sue went to_____prison to visit John last month.

8 My mother has gone into_____hospital for an operation.

9 The ABC cinema is opposite_____hospital.

10 I usually have coffee and toast for_____breakfast.

Note

–**Относительно** выражений времени с артиклем и без него, например, *in the morning, at night, on Monday, in (the) summer* СМ. 169.

112 Place-names with and without *the* (Географические названия с и без *the*)

1 Place-names without *the*

a Обычно *the* не употребляется с географическими названиями:

continents [материков и континентов]

| | | |
|---------------|---------------|------------------|
| <i>Africa</i> | <i>Europe</i> | <i>Australia</i> |
|---------------|---------------|------------------|

countries, states, departments, etc [стран, штатов, административных областей, округов и др.]

| | | |
|-------------------|------------------|---------------|
| <i>England</i> | <i>Spain</i> | <i>Brazil</i> |
| <i>California</i> | <i>Hampshire</i> | |

cities, towns and villages [городов, сел, деревень]

| | | |
|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| <i>Sydney</i> | <i>Tokyo</i> | <i>Bilbao</i> |
|---------------|--------------|---------------|

individual islands [отдельных островов]

| | | |
|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| <i>Crete</i> | <i>Long</i> | <i>Island</i> |
|--------------|-------------|---------------|

lakes [озер]

| | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Lake Michigan</i> | <i>Lake Geneva</i> |
|----------------------|--------------------|

individual mountains [отдельных гор]

| | |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Mount Everest</i> | <i>Mount Fuji</i> |
|----------------------|-------------------|

streets [улиц]

| | |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Oxford Street</i> | <i>North Road</i> |
|----------------------|-------------------|

b Но *the* употребляется с этими названиями, когда они содержат исчисляемое существительное, например, *union, republic, states, kingdom, isle*.

the Soviet Union the Federal Republic of Germany the United States the United Kingdom

c Артикль *the* также употребляется с географическими названиями во множественном числе, например, *the Netherlands, the West Indies, the Alps*.

d Артикль *the* также употребляется с различными другими названиями, например, *the North/South Pole, the Arctic/Antarctic, the Middle East, the Far East, the Costa Brava, the Ruhr.*

2 Place-names with *the*

a Обычно *the* употребляется с названиями:

oceans and seas [океанов и морей]

ivers [рек]

canals [каналов]

deserts [пустынь]

island groups [групп островов]

hotels, cinemas [гостиниц, отелей, кинотеатров]

museums, clubs [музеев, клубов]

restaurants, pubs [ресторанов, баров (**пивных**)]

| | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| the Pacific | the Mediterranean |
| the Mississippi | the Nile |
| the Panama Canal | the Suez Canal |
| the Sahara | the Kalahari |
| the Canaries | the West Indies |
| the Plaza Hotel | the Cannon Cinema |
| the Prado Museum | the Black Cat Club |
| the Hard Rock Cafe | the Swan (pub) |

b Однако *the* не употребляется с названиями гостиниц, отелей, ресторанов и т.д., в честь открывших их лиц + притяжательный падеж с 's.

Macy's Hotel (Not: ~~*the Macy's Hotel*~~) *Brown's* (Not: ~~*the Brown's*~~)

Эти имена часто пишутся без апострофа ('), например, *Lloyds Bank, Woolworths.*

Артикль *the* не употребляется с названиями церквей, святых + притяжательный падеж с 's.

St Peter's Church *St Paul's Cathedral* (*St* = Saint [св^ятой])

c Артикль *the* ставится перед названиями с *of*.

the Statue of Liberty *the Bank of Scotland*

the University of London (или: *London University*)

EXERCISE 112A

Answer the questions using *the* where necessary. You can find the answers in brackets!

Examples:

Which is the longest river in Europe? (**GOVAL**) *the Volga*

What's the capital of India? (**HELDI**) *Delhi*

1 What's the capital of Australia (**BRECARAN**)

2 Which country has the largest population in the world? (**NICAH**)

3 Which is the largest city in the world? (**EXCOMI YICT**)

4 Which is the largest desert in the world? (**HAAARS**)

5 In which state of the USA is Los Angeles? (**FLIARIACON**)

6 Which is the largest lake in the world? (**KEAL PERSOIRU**)

7 Which is the largest ocean in the world? (**AIPFCIC**)

8 Which is the highest mountain in the world? (**TUMON STEER VE**)

9 Which are the highest mountains in Europe? (**LAPS**)

EXERCISE 112B

Add *the* where **necessary**.

Example:

The Louvre Museum is in——**Paris**.

- 1 Ron Lewis was born in____ Manchester, but he lives in____ Bristol now. **He's** a lecturer **at**____ University of Bristol.
- 2____ Luigi's restaurant is between____ Albany Hotel and____ Jimmy's Wine Bar **in**——Cambridge Road.
- 3 When we were in____ Rome we visited____ **St Peter's** Church,____ Castle of St Angelo and____ National Roman Museum.

113 Review of articles: *a/an, the* and no article (Обзор артикля: *a/an, the* и отсутствие артикля)

EXERCISE 113A

Add *a, an* or *the* where **necessary**.

Examples:

We saw *an* interesting **film** *at the* cinema last night.

I start——**work** at 9 o'clock every morning.

- 1____ Soviet Union is____ biggest country in____ world.
- 2 Have you ever been to____ **St Peter's** Square in____ Rome?
- 3____ weather was lovely when I woke up yesterday morning:____ sun was shining and there was____ beautiful blue sky.
- 4 My sister works in____ large hospital in____ London. **She's**——doctor.
- 5 Who was____ woman you were talking to just now?
- 6 '**Where's Kate?**' '**She's** in____ living **room**.'
- 7 What time do you usually have____ lunch?
- 8 Do you prefer cooking with____ gas or____ electricity?
- 9 We visited____ Prado Museum when we were in____ Madrid.
- 10 What time does Andrew finish____ school?
- 11 There are 20 classrooms in____ school.
- 12 Who invented____ telescope?
- 13 How long have you been looking for____ work?
- 14 Did you go to____ Scotland by____ car or by____ train?
- 15____ Japanese export a lot of cars.
- 16 Sue and Frank have got two children;____ girl and____ **boy**——girl is____ student and ____ boy is____ engineer.
- 17____ Giovannis' restaurant is next to____ Midland Bank in____ Bath Road.
- 18 Are you interested in____ politics?
- 19____ Atlantic Ocean is larger than____ Indian Ocean.
- 20____ Mont Blanc is higher than____ Mount Etna.
- 21 Sue's brother is ill in____ hospital.
- 22 The government plan to help____ poor and____ unemployed.

114 Quantity: general (Количество: общие положения)

Когда речь идет о количестве, употребляются следующие слова:

some, any (see 115)

all, every, each (see 118)

much, many, a lot, (a) little, (a) few (see 116)

both, either, neither (see 119)

no, none (see 117)

more, most, half

- 1** Эти слова (за исключением *none, a lot* и *half*) могут употребляться непосредственно перед существительным.

There are some eggs in the fridge.

Have we got any milk?

There are no letters for you today.

Both films were very good.

- 2** Эти слова (за исключением *no* и *every*) также употребляются перед *of + the, her, your, this* и др. + noun.

I've finished writing some of the letters.

Can either of your parents speak French?

Эти слова (за исключением *no* и *every*) также употребляются с *of* перед объектным местоимением, например, *them, us, it*.

Not all of these books are mine. Some of them are Peter's.

Neither of us saw the film.

После *all, half, both* можно опускать *of* перед *the, her, my, your, this* и др.

I switched off all (of) the lights.

Half (of) my friends are on holiday at the moment.

I enjoyed both (of) the films.

Однако после *all, half, both* нельзя опускать *of* перед объектным местоимением, например, *them, us, it*.

'Have you read these books?' 'Not all of them.' (Not: ... *all them*.)

I haven't finished my homework. I've done about half of it. (Not: ... *half it*.)

She invited both of us to the party. (Not: ... *both us* ...)

Можно также употреблять *every one of* перед *the, her, my* и др. или объектным местоимением.

Every one of the students passed the exam.

I've read some of those books, but not every one of them.

- 3** Эти слова (за исключением *no* и *every*) могут употребляться самостоятельно, без существительного.

If you want some coffee, I'll make some.

'Were there a lot of people on the train?' 'No, not many.'

Вместо *all* и *each* часто употребляется *all of* + объектное местоимение, например, *them, it* и т.д. и *each one*.

I like some Elvis Presley records, but not all of them.

They've got three children and each one goes to a different school.

Every one может употребляться самостоятельно.

I've read some of these books, but not every one.

EXERCISE 114A

Choose the correct answer.

Example:

I've finished ~~most~~/*most of my* homework.

- 1 Not ~~all~~/*all of* birds can fly.
- 2 The teacher interviewed ~~each~~/*each of* student in turn.
- 3 I've heard ~~some~~/*some of* those records, but not ~~all~~/*all of* them.
- 4 I can't lend you ~~any~~/*any of* money because I haven't got any/*any of*.
- 5 ~~Most~~/*Most of* people like Kate.
- 6 ~~Neither~~/*Neither of my* parents will be at home this evening.
- 7 ~~Neither~~/*Neither of these* jackets fits me properly.
- 8 'How ~~much~~/*much of* coffee have we got?'
'Not a ~~lot~~/*lot of*.'
- 9 ~~A few~~/*A few of Simon's* friends went to the concert, but not ~~many~~/*many of*.
- 10 Are there ~~many~~/*many of* museums in Brighton?
- 11 We tried several chemists' and ~~every~~/*every one of them* was closed.
- 12 He spends ~~most~~/*most of his* time watching TV.
- 13 My sister has read nearly ~~every~~/*every one of* book in the library.
- 14 I answered ~~each~~/*each of* question **carefully**.
- 15 Do ~~either~~/*either of* these books belong to you?
- 16 We ~~haven't~~ painted the whole house yet, but we've done about ~~half~~/*half of* it.
- 17 ~~They've~~ got five children and ~~each~~/*each one* is quite different.

115 *Some and any*

- 1 *Some* и *any* перед существительными во множественном числе и неисчисляемыми существительными употребляются для выражения неопределенной **количественности**:

some letters *any letters*
some money *any money*

- 2 Вообще, *some* употребляется главным образом в утвердительных предложениях, а *any* в основном в отрицательных предложениях.

There are some letters for you.
I've got some money.

There aren't any letters for you.
I haven't got any money.

But see 3, 4 and 6 below.

- 3 *Any* употребляется после слов с отрицательным значением, например, *without, never, seldom, rarely, hardly*.

I found a taxi without any trouble.
You never do any homework.
There are hardly any eggs left.

- 4 *Some* или *any* может употребляться после *if*.

If you need some/any money, tell me.

- 5** Обычно *any* употребляется в 'открытых' вопросах (когда не ожидается конкретный ответ).

Have you got any writing paper?

Is there any tea in the cupboard?

Some часто употребляется в вопросах, на которые ожидается ответ 'yes' ['да'].

Have you got some paper I could have, please? (Я полагаю, что у вас есть бумага; я рассчитываю на ответ 'yes')

Some также употребляется в вопросах, когда мы подталкиваем собеседника ответить 'yes', например, в просьбах и предложениях.

'Can you let me have some paper?' *'How much do you want?'*

'Would you like some more tea?' *'Oh, yes, please.'*

- 6** *Any* также может употребляться в значении 'безразлично какой' или 'какой вы хотите'.

You can get the tickets from any travel agency.

I can come and see you any day next week.

- 7** *Some* (с сильным произношением /sʌm/) употребляется также для создания контраста.

Some people like lying in the sun, others don't.

EXERCISE 155A

Complete the sentences using *some* or *any*. Sometimes either word is possible.

Example:

He hasn't got *any* brothers or sisters.

1 There are _____ people outside who want to see you.

2 I like _____ water sports, but not all of them.

3 Can you buy _____ butter when you go to the shops? There's hardly _____ left.

4 'Could I have _____ more coffee, please?'

'Yes, of course.'

5 'I haven't got _____ money.' 'Would you like me to lend you _____?'

6 If you need _____ more information, please ask me.

7 Phone me _____ time you like tomorrow. I'll be at home all day.

8 I've done _____ revision for the exams, but not much.

9 _____ museums are worth visiting, but others aren't.

10 Tell me if you want _____ help.

Note

– Относительно *some* и *any* см. также 114.

– *Some time* означает 'в какое-то неопределенное время', например: *Let's meet some time next week*; *sometimes means* означает 'иногда', например: *We sometimes meet after school*.

– Различия между *something* и *anything*, *somebody/someone* и *anybody/anyone* такие же, как и различия между *some* и *any*. См. 125.

116 Much, many, a lot of, (a) little, (a) few

- 1 *Much* и *(a) little* употребляются с неисчисляемыми существительными, а *many* и *(a) few* с исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе.

| | | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|--|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>much milk</i> | <i>much rice</i> | | <i>many cars</i> | <i>many books</i> |
| <i>(a) little wine</i> | <i>(a) little sugar</i> | | <i>(a) few jobs</i> | <i>(a) few eggs</i> |

A lot of, *lots* о/и *plenty of* употребляются как с неисчисляемыми, так и с исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе.

| | | |
|-----------------------|--|-----------------------|
| <i>a lot of milk</i> | | <i>a lot of cars</i> |
| <i>lots of rice</i> | | <i>lots of books</i> |
| <i>plenty of wine</i> | | <i>plenty of jobs</i> |

Обратите внимание: *a lot/lots* = большое количество или много; *plenty* = множество; более чем достаточно.

- 2 *Much, many, a lot (of)*

Much и *many* главным образом употребляются в вопросах и отрицательных предложениях.

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|
| <i>How much milk have we got?</i> | | <i>We haven't got much milk</i> |
| <i>Is there much rice left?</i> | | <i>There isn't much rice left.</i> |
| <i>Has he got many books?</i> | | <i>He hasn't got many books.</i> |

В утвердительных предложениях обычно употребляются *a lot (of)*, *lots (of)* и *plenty (of)*, а не *much* и *many*.

We've got a lot of milk. (Not: ~~*We've got much milk.*~~)
There's lots of rice left. (Not: ~~*There's much rice left.*~~)
He's got plenty of books. (Not normally: *He's got many books.*)

Однако очень часто употребляются *much* и *many* в утвердительных предложениях после *too*, *as*, *so* и *very*.

We've got far too much milk.
Take as much milk as you want.
I've got so many jobs to do today.
We enjoyed the party very much.

- 3 *(A) little, (a) few*

A little и *a few* имеют положительное значение. *A little* означает 'небольшое, но некоторое количество'; *a few* означает 'небольшое, но некоторое число'.

There's still a little work to do before we go home. (= небольшой, но некоторый объем работы.)
The exam was extremely difficult, but a few students passed it. (= небольшое, но некоторое число студентов.)

Little и *few*, без *a*, имеют более негативную окраску. *Little* означает 'немного' или 'почти ничего'; *few* означает 'немного' или 'почти ничего'.

There's little work to do. We've already finished most of it. (= почти нет работы)
The exam was extremely difficult and few students passed it. (= почти нет студентов)

Little и *few* (без *a*) - достаточно формальные слова. В повседневной речи более употребительными являются *not much, not many, only a little, only a few*, или *hardly any* (= почти ничего).

There isn't much time left.

Hardly any students passed the exam.

Однако *very little* и *very few* довольно употребительны в повседневной речи.

I've got very little money.

Very few people went to the football match.

EXERCISE 116A

Complete the sentences using *much, many, a lot (of), a little* or *a few*. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Examples:

There are so *many jobs* to do today and we haven't got *much/a lot of time*.

There were only *a few* people in the cinema.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 I know _____ people in London, but not many | 6 Have we got _____ potatoes left? |
| 2 We've got _____ coffee left, but not much. | 7 How _____ money did you spend on holiday? |
| 3 He earns _____ money in his job. | 8 I didn't enjoy the party on Saturday very |
| 4 She's got _____ classical music records. | _____ There were far too _____ people there, |
| 5 We had _____ wine with our meal, but not very | and there wasn't _____ food or drink, so eve- |
| much. | rybody was hungry and thirsty. |

EXERCISE 116B

Choose the correct answer.

Example:

I've got *a little/little* money, so I could lend you some if you want.

- 1 I'm sorry, but I've got very *a little/little* money at the moment. I'm afraid I can't lend you **any**.
- 2 He has very *afew/few* friends and he gets rather lonely.
- 3 She has *afew/few* friends in London and she's very happy there.
- 4 It is an extremely poor country: it has *afew/few* natural resources and *a little / little* good agricultural land.
- 5 Would you like *a little/little* more wine? There's still *a little/little* left in the bottle.
- 6 It won't take long to drive into town. There's very *a little/little* traffic on the road at this time of the day.
- 7 I think Peter went out *afew/few* minutes ago.
- 8 It's a very boring little town; there's very *a little/little* to do there.

117 No and none

1 *No* (= 'не, ни' или 'нисколько, ничуть') употребляется перед существительным.

There's no lock on the door.

There are no letters for you today.

We've got no milk.

No может употребляться перед исчисляемыми существительными, например *lock*, перед исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе, например *letters*, и перед неисчисляемыми существительными, например, *milk*.

No более эмфатичное, чем *not a* или *not any*, например: *There isn't a lock on the door. There aren't any letters for you today.*

2 *None* - это местоимение; оно употребляется самостоятельно, без существительного.

'*Are there any letters for me today?*' '*No, none, I'm afraid.*'

'*How much milk have we got?*' '*None.*'

Перед *my, this, the* и т.д. или объектным местоимением, например *us, them*, употребляется *none of*.

None of my friends have seen the film.

None of the photographs were very good.

None of us have any money.

Когда *none of* употребляется с существительным во множественном числе, глагол может быть в единственном или множественном числе.

None of my friends have/has seen the film.

Употребление глагола в единственном числе носит более формальный оттенок.

EXERCISE 117A

Complete the sentences using *no* or *none*.

Example:

We really must hurry. There's *no* time to lose.

1 _____ of my family are rich.

2 Unfortunately, there were _____ tickets left for the concert.

3 **He's** so serious. **He's** got _____ sense of humour.

4 I've got _____ idea what **I'm** going to do when I leave school.

5 _____ of the students failed the examination.

6 I haven't got any money at the moment, _____ at all.

7 My friends **and** I would all like to go to the concert, but _____ of us has got a ticket.

118 *All, every, everybody, everything, whole*

1 *All and every*

Every сходно по значению с *all*: *every* означает 'все без исключения'. Compare:

All the students in the class passed the exam.

Every student in the class passed the exam. (= все студенты без исключения)

Обратите внимание, что *all* может употребляться со словами во множественном числе, в то время как *every* может только употребляться со словами в единственном числе.

All children like playing. Every child likes playing.

All, но не *every* может употребляться с неисчисляемыми существительными.

Do you like all pop music? (Not: ... ~~every~~ pop music?)

2 *All, everybody, everything*

a Обычно *all* не употребляется отдельно без существительного в значении *everybody* или *everyone*. Compare:

All the people stopped talking.

I have invited all the students in my class to the party.

Everybody stopped talking. (Not: ~~All stopped~~...)

I have invited everyone in my class to the party.

(Not: ... all in my ~~class~~ ...)

b *All* редко употребляется в значении *everything*.

Everything is so expensive these days. (Not: ~~All~~ is so expensive these days.)

Have you got everything? (Not: ~~Have~~ you got all?)

Однако *all* может употребляться в значении *everything* в конструкции *all (that) +* относительное придаточное предложение.

Have you got all (that) you need?

He's forgotten all (that) I told him.

All также употребляется в выражении *all about*.

Tell me all about yourself.

All может также употребляться в значении 'единственное, что' или 'ничего более, чем'.

I'm not hungry. All I want is a cup of tea.

3 *All and whole*

a *Whole* означает 'весь, целый, полный'. Обычно *whole* употребляется с исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе.

I didn't see the whole film. I missed the first part.

I spent my whole salary on clothes last month.

The, my, this и др. всегда употребляются перед *whole* + a singular noun, например, *the whole film, my whole salary*.

The, my, this и др. могут также употребляться с *all*, но с другим порядком слов. Compare:

| | | | |
|----------------------|---|--|------------------------|
| <i>all the film</i> | • | | <i>the whole film</i> |
| <i>all my salary</i> | | | <i>my whole salary</i> |

L A *whole* может также употребляться перед существительными (в единственном числе).

Mike ate a **whole** chicken himself.

C Обычно *whole* не употребляется с неисчисляемыми существительными.

We've finished all the coffee. (Not: ... the **whole coffee.**)

4 *All day, every day, etc*

All употребляется с некоторыми исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе, например *day, morning, week, year*, в значении 'весь'; *every* употребляется с *day, morning* и др. для обозначения, как часто происходит действие. Compare:

/ work hard all day. (= целый день) */ work hard every day.* (= понедельник, вторник и т.д.)

The whole day/morning и т.д. можно употреблять вместо *all day/morning* и т.д.

We've been waiting the whole morning/all morning.

В этом значении *the whole* сильнее, чем *all*.

EXERCISE 118A

Complete the sentences using *all, every, everybody* or *everything*. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Example:

Have you spent *all* the money I gave you?

- 1 I tried _____ key in the lock, but none of them fitted.
- 2 _____ enjoyed the film except Peter.
- 3 I'm really tired _____ I want to do is go to bed.
- 4 Listen to me. I can explain _____
- 5 Has Sarah told you _____ about her holiday in Austria?
- 6 It was late when Simon arrived home and _____ was asleep.
- 7 Did you remember to switch off _____ the lights?
- 8 I believe _____ word he says.
- 9 Have you packed _____ into this suitcase?
- 10 I learnt _____ I know about physics at school.

EXERCISE 118B

Complete the sentences using *all (the)* or *the whole*. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Examples:

We've finished all the wine.

I didn't see *all the/the whole* film.

- 1 _____ family went on holiday together.
- 2 Have you spent _____ money I gave you?
- 3 The tap was dripping _____ night.
- 4 Did you understand _____ information I gave you?

EXERCISE 118C

Choose the correct answer.

Example:

My favourite TV programme is on at 8.30 **all/ every** Tuesday evening.

- 1 What time do you normally get up *all/every* morning?
- 2 The weather was terrible yesterday, so we spent *all/every* day at home.
- 3 Peter was late for work *all/every* day last week,
- 4 My neighbours had a party last night and the noise kept me awake *all/every* night.

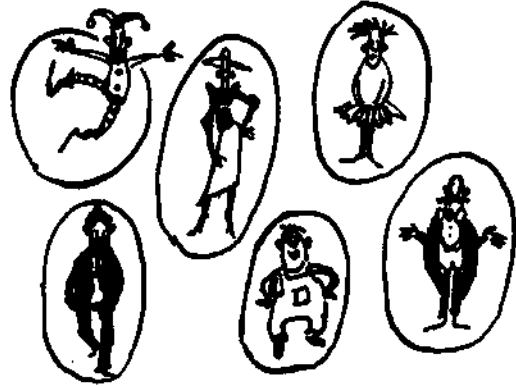
Note

– **Сравните** *every* и *each*: *every* употребляется, когда речь идет о целой группе; *each* употребляется, когда речь идет о членах группы отдельно, каждом отдельно.



every

I asked every person in the room the same question.



each

Each person gave a different answer.

– Относительно *all*, *every* и *each* см. также 114.

119 *Both, either, neither*1 *Both*

Both (= ‘оба, обе; и тот и другой’) может употребляться перед исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе.

Both films were very good.
I spoke to both girls.

Both о/употребляется перед *the*, *your*, *these* и т.д. + существительное во множественном числе; в этом случае о/часто опускается.

Both (of) the films were very good.
Do both (of) your parents like dancing?

Both о/также употребляется перед объектным местоимением во множественном числе *you*, *us*, *them*; в этом случае *of* нельзя опускать.

She invited both of us to the party. (Not: ... both us ...)

Both может употребляться после объектного местоимения.

She invited us both to the party.

2 *Either and neither*

Either (= ‘и тот и другой; оба’) и *neither* (= ‘ни тот, ни другой; ни один’) может употребляться перед исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе.

We could meet on Saturday or Sunday. Either day is fine with me.
Neither road goes to the station.

Either of *neither of* употребляются перед *your, these, the* и т.д. + исчисляемое существительное во множественном числе.

Can either of your parents speak French?

Neither of these roads goes to the station.

Either of *neither of* также употребляются перед объектными местоимениями во множественном числе *you, us, them*.

Can either of you type?

Neither of us went to the party.

После *neither of* можно употреблять глагол в единственном или множественном числе.

Neither of these roads goes/go to the station.

Neither of us is/are hungry.

Глагол в единственном числе более характерен для официального стиля.

(N)*either* имеет два варианта произношения: /'naɪðə(r)/ или /'ni:ðə(r)/.

3 *Both, either* и *neither* употребляются для соединения понятий в этих конструкциях:

| |
|---|
| <i>both ... and ...</i> <i>either ... or ...</i> <i>neither ... nor ...</i> |
|---|

I spoke to both Sally and Peter.

John is both thoughtful and generous.

She both speaks Japanese and writes it.

I don't like either football or rugby very much.

We can either stay in or go out.

Neither Mrs Woods nor her husband were at home.

He neither apologised nor explained.

EXERCISE 119A

Complete the sentences using *both, both of, either, either of, neither, neither of*. In one sentence two answers are possible.

Example:

The tennis match was very exciting. *Both* players were very good.

1 'Have your parents got a car?' 'No, _____ them can drive.'

2 They don't like each other and I made the mistake of inviting them _____ to my party.

3 'What does "ambidextrous" mean?' 'It means being able to use _____ hand with equal skill.'

4 'Which of these shirts do you prefer?' 'I don't really like _____ them very much.'

5 'What's the capital of Switzerland, Geneva or Zurich?' '_____ It's Berne.'

6 Simon had a very bad accident when he was younger. He fell from a tree and broke _____ his legs.

EXERCISE 119B

Link these ideas by completing the sentences.

Example:

Sue plays the piano. And she sings.
Sue both *plays the piano and sings*.

- 1 We could eat now. Or we could wait until later.
We could either _____
- 2 My father couldn't read Arabic. And he **couldn't** write it. My father could neither _____
- 3 Ken didn't know the address. And Kate didn't know the address. Neither Ken _____

- 4 I didn't see his sister. And I didn't see his brother. I **didn't** see either _____
- 5 Simon passed the exam easily. And Sarah passed the exam easily. Both Simon _____
- 6 The journey wasn't very comfortable. And it wasn't very interesting. The journey was neither _____
- 7 My new flat is larger than my old flat. And it is closer to my office. My new flat is both _____

Note

- Относительно *both*, *either* и *neither* см. также 114; относительно *Neither do I*, *I don't either* и т.д. см. 151.

120 Personal pronouns (Личные местоимения)

1 Личные местоимения:

SUBJECT PRONOUNS
(СУБЪЕКТНЫЕ МЕСТОИМЕНИЯ)

| | SINGULAR | PLURAL |
|------------|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1st person | / | <i>we</i> |
| 2nd person | <i>you</i> | <i>you</i> |
| 3rd person | <i>he</i> <i>she</i> <i>it</i> | <i>they</i> |

OBJECT PRONOUNS
(ОБЪЕКТНЫЕ МЕСТОИМЕНИЯ)

| | SINGULAR | PLURAL |
|--|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| | <i>me</i> | <i>us</i> |
| | <i>you</i> | <i>you</i> |
| | <i>him</i> <i>her</i> <i>it</i> | <i>them</i> |

2 Личные местоимения употребляются для замены существительных, когда очевидно, о ком или о чем идет речь:

a Subject pronouns употребляются как подлежащие глаголов.

'Where's Simon?' 'He's in the kitchen.'
Sue didn't go out last night. She stayed at home.

Обратите внимание, что в английском языке подлежащее в предложении обычно всегда выражается.

'Where's Simon?' 'He's in the kitchen.' (Not: 'Is in the kitchen.-')

b Object pronouns употребляются как подлежащие глаголов и предлогов.

verb + object pronoun

Help me.
I like him.
Can you see it?

preposition + object pronoun

I've written to her.
Look at them.
They're waiting for us.

Object pronouns также употребляются как косвенные дополнения.

*Can you lend **me** some money?*

*I'll send **him** a postcard.*

Object pronouns могут употребляться после *than* и *as* в сравнениях.

*I'm older than **him**.*

*She isn't as tall as **me**.*

Но в более официальном стиле употребляются subject pronoun + verb.

*I'm older than **he is**.*

Object pronouns могут употребляться после **be**.

*'Who's there?' 'It's **me**.'*

Subject pronouns также возможны после *be*, например: *It's I*, но это очень официально и не весьма распространено.

Object pronouns также употребляются как отдельные местоимения в ответах.

'Who has got my book?' 'Me.' (Not: *I*)

3

Употребление:

a

I/me вместо лица, которое говорит [**я/меня**]

b

we/us вместо лица, которое говорит, и другого лица или других людей [**мы/нас**]

c

you вместо лица или людей, к которым обращаются [**ты/тебя, вы/вас**]

d

he/him вместо лица мужского пола и некоторых животных-самцов [**он/его**], например, *a pet*

e

she/her вместо лица женского пола и некоторых животных-самок [**она/её**], например, *a pet*

f

it вместо предмета или животного, когда пол неизвестен или не имеет значения [**оно/его, она/её**]

g

they/them вместо людей или предметов [**они/их**]

But see also 4–9 below.

4

You может употребляться в значении '**люди** в целом, включая вас и меня'.

You can easily lose your way in Rome.

You can drive a car in Britain when you're 17.

One также употребляется в этом значении, особенно в официальном стиле.

*One can easily lose **one's** way in Rome.*

5

They может употребляться в значении '**люди** вообще, исключая вас и меня'.

They say she's a good teacher.

They употребляется, когда речь идет о правительстве или о людях во власти.

*'What are the **government's** plans?' 'They're going to increase taxes.'*

'They say the new motorway will be finished by next April.'

- 6** Местоимения во множественном числе *they* и *them* употребляются в значении единственного числа, особенно в неофициальном стиле.
Somebody forgot to lock the door, didn't they?
If anyone phones for me while I'm out, tell them I'll phone them back later on.
 В подобных предложениях *they* употребляется вместо 'he' или 'she', а *them* вместо 'him' или 'her' (в случае, когда не уточняется пол лица).
- 7** *We* иногда включает слушателя; иногда - нет. Compare:
Why don't we go to the cinema this evening? (we включает слушателя) *We're going to the cinema this evening. Why don't you come with us?* (we не включает слушателя)
- 8** *It* может употребляться для лица в случае, когда мы спрашиваем или говорим, кем оно является.
'There's someone at the door. Who is it?' 'It's Peter.'
- 9** *It* также употребляется как 'пустое' подлежащее в ряде выражений. Например, *it* употребляется для выражения времени, расстояния, погоды и температуры.
It's 8 o'clock.
It's the first of June.
How far is it to the next town?
It's usually very warm here in the summer.
- 10** Часто предложение начинается с *it* как 'предваряющего подлежащего' вместо того, чтобы начинать его с *to infinitive* или *that-clause*.
It is interesting to study a foreign language. (Instead of [Вместо]): *To study a foreign language is interesting.*
It was lucky that we didn't miss the bus. (Instead of: *That we didn't miss the bus was lucky.*)

EXERCISE 120A

Choose the correct answers.

Example:

~~We/Us~~ met Sally yesterday afternoon. *She/Her* came to the cinema with *we/us*.

- 1** I phoned Sarah last night and gave *she/her* the message.
- 2** My brother is older than *I/me*, but *he/him* isn't as tall as *I/me* am.
- 3** 'Who wants a cup of coffee?' '*I/Me*.'
- 4** 'Have you seen Simon today?' 'Yes. *I/Me* saw *he/him* this morning. *He/Him* was going to the swimming pool.'
- 5** 'What did those people want?' '*They/Them* asked *I/me* to help *they/them*.'

EXERCISE 120B

Complete the sentences using the pronouns in the box.

Example:

'I'm looking for Andrew. Have you seen **him**?' 'Yes, **he** was here a few minutes ago.'

| | | | | | | |
|----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|------|
| I | you | he | she | it | we | they |
| me | you | him | her | it | us | them |

- Peter and I are going out this evening — 're going to the cinema. Would you like to come with _____?
- Where are my keys? I put _ on the table a moment ago, but now _ 've disappeared.
- _ 's usually quite cold in New York in the winter.
- 'What did you think of the film, Simon?' '_ enjoyed _ very much.'
- _ 's strange that Kate didn't come to the meeting.
- 'What do the government plan to do about education?' '_ say that _ 're going to build more schools.'
- _ aren't allowed to drive a car in Britain until _ 're 17 years old.
- If you have any problems, just tell someone and _ 'll help you.
- How far is _ from Madrid to Paris?
- My sister and I are quite different -- 's much more serious than _ am.

1 Possessive adjectives and pronouns (Притяжательные прилагательные и местоимения)

1 The possessive adjectives and pronouns are:

| | POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES | | POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS | |
|------------|--|--------------|--|---------------|
| | SINGULAR | PLURAL | SINGULAR | PLURAL |
| 1st person | <i>my</i> | <i>our</i> | <i>mine</i> | <i>ours</i> |
| 2nd person | <i>your</i> | <i>your</i> | <i>yours</i> | <i>yours</i> |
| 3rd person | <i>his</i> <i>her</i> <i>its</i> | <i>their</i> | <i>his</i> <i>hers</i> <u> </u> | <i>theirs</i> |

2 Possessive adjectives употребляются перед существительным для выражения, кому принадлежит существительное.

I can't find my keys.

Sally bought her motorbike last year.

3 Possessive pronouns употребляются без существительного, когда существительное подразумевается.

'Is this Peter's book?' 'No, it's mine.' (= моя книга)

I've got my coat, but Maria can't find hers. (= ее пальто)

Their flat is smaller than ours. (= наша квартира)

4 *My own/your own/his own, etc*

My own/your own/his own и т.д. употребляются для подчеркивания, что что-то принадлежит только одному лицу, оно ни с кем не делится и не одалживается [мой собственный, моя собственная, моё собственное, мои собственные; ваш собственный, ваша собственная, ваше собственное, ваши собственные; его собственный, его собственная, его собственное и т.д.]. Compare:

*This is my office.
This isn't my bicycle.*

*I've got my own office now. I don't share with anyone else.
This isn't my own bicycle. I only borrowed it.*

My/your/his/hen т.д. всегда стоит перед *own*. Нельзя сказать, например, *an own room/book* и т.д.

Обратите внимание на конструкцию *of my own/of your own/of his own* и т.д.

I've got an office of my own now. I don't share with anyone else.

My own/your own и т.д. также употребляются для подчеркивания того, что одно лицо выполняет что-то вместо того, чтобы кто-то другой делал это для них. Compare:

Clean your room. \ Clean your own room! I'm not going to do it for you.

On my own/on your own и т.д. может означать 'сам, сама' или 'без чьей-то помощи'.

*I don't live on my own, I share a flat with two friends.
I can't move this table on my own. It's too heavy.*

EXERCISE 121A

Choose the correct answers.

Example:

Have you seen *my/mine* coat?

- 1 We know *their/theirs* telephone number, but they don't know *our/ours*.
- 2 *My/Min*e car wasn't as expensive as *her/hers*.
- 3 'How are *your/yours* children?' 'Fine, thanks. How are *your/yours*?'
- 4 Maria has got *her/hers* suitcase, but *her/hers* friends haven't got *their/theirs*.
- 5 *Our/Ours* flat isn't as big as *their/theirs*, but *our/ours* is much more comfortable.

EXERCISE 121B

Complete the sentences using *my own, your own, his own, her own, etc*.

Example:

I don't have *my own* telephone yet, so I have to use the public phone.

- 1 Sarah shares a flat with some friends. She would prefer to have a flat of _____, but she can't afford one.
- 2 'That isn't _____ camera, is it?' 'No, I borrowed it from my father.'
- 3 You can wash _____ dirty clothes! I'm not going to wash them for you.
- 4 We helped them move the piano; they couldn't have done it on _____
- 5 Sometimes I'm allowed to use my parents' car, but I wish I had a car of _____
- 6 He's always using my shampoo. Why doesn't he buy _____?

Note

-*By myself, by yourself* и т.д. может употребляться вместо *on my own, on your own* и т.д., например, *I don't live by myself*. СМ. 122.4

22 Reflexive pronouns (Возвратные местоимения)

1 The reflexive pronouns are:

| | SINGULAR | PLURAL |
|------------|---|-------------------|
| 1st person | <i>myself</i> | <i>ourselves</i> |
| 2nd person | <i>yourself</i> | <i>yourselves</i> |
| 3rd person | <i>himself</i> <i>herself</i> <i>itself</i> | <i>themselves</i> |

2 Reflexive pronouns употребляются, когда подлежащее и дополнение предложения одно и то же.

I burnt myself cooking the dinner.
Annie hurt herself when she fell over.

Обратите внимание: **enjoy yourself** = хорошо проводите время; **help yourself (to something)** = угощаться (чем-то).

Did you enjoy yourself at the circus?
Help yourself to some more coffee.

3 После предлогов употребляются объектные местоимения, например *me*, *him*, вместо reflexive pronouns, когда очевидно, о чем идет речь. Compare:

I'll take some money with me. (Я не мог взять деньги с кем-то еще!) | *I'm very angry with myself* (Я не мог сердиться на кого-то еще!)

4 *By myself/by yourself* и т.д. может означать 'самостоятельно' или 'без чьей-то помощи'.

I don't live by myself, I share a flat with two friends.
I can't move this table by myself. It's too heavy.

On my own/on your own и т.д. также употребляются в этом значении (см. 121.4)

5 Reflexive pronouns обычно не употребляются после *feel*, *relax* или *concentrate*.

I feel fine. (Not: ~~...feel myself~~ fine.)
I must try to relax. (Not: ~~...relax~~ myself.)
I can't concentrate. (Not: ~~...concentrate~~ myself.)

Обычно reflexive pronouns не употребляются для выражения действий, которые люди, как правило, выполняют по отношению к себе, например, *wash*, *shave*, *dress*.

Ken got up. Then he washed, shaved and dressed. (Not: ~~...washed himself~~, etc.)
Но говорят *dry myself/yourself* и т.д., например: *I got out of the bath and dried myself.*

6 Reflexive pronouns также употребляются для подчеркивания: 'то лицо, никто другой'.

Nobody helped me build the swimming pool. I built it myself. [сам]
I'm not going to clean your room for you. You clean it yourself! [сам, сами]

Когда reflexive pronouns употребляются таким образом, они обычно следуют в конце предложения. Однако могут также следовать за подлежащим.

The manager himself told me the news.

I myself prefer golf to tennis.

7 Сравните *-selves* (например, *themselves*, *ourselves*) и *each other*:



They're looking at themselves.



They're looking at each other.

More examples:

Sue and I can take care of ourselves. (= Сью может позаботиться о себе, а я - о себе.)

Sue and I can take care of each other. (= Сью может позаботиться обо мне, а я - о ней.)

One another можно использовать вместо *each other*.

They're looking at one another.

Но обратите внимание на то, что некоторые люди предпочитают употреблять *each other* для двух лиц или предметов, а *one another* для более чем двух. Compare:

Chris and Sue often help each other.

We should all try to help one another.

EXERCISE 122A

Complete the sentences using *myself*, *yourself*, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *ourselves*, *yourselves*, *themselves*.

Example:

I taught **myself** to play the guitar; I've never had lessons.

1 Sue's children are too young to look after _____

2 An elephant hurt _____ when it tried to get out of the zoo yesterday.

3 I couldn't borrow my mother's car last night because she was using it _____

4 I don't need any help. I can take care of _____

5 Mr Woods fell over and hurt _____ when he was running for a bus.

6 Would you all like to help _____ to sandwiches and cakes?

7 Sarah and I didn't really enjoy _____ at the disco last night.

EXERCISE 122B

Complete each sentence using *by* + a reflexive pronoun.

Example:

The dog opened the door *by itself*.

- 1 **'Who** did you go to the cinema **with?** **'Nobody**, I went _____'
- 2 Since the old lady's husband died, she's been living _____
- 3 Did someone help you move all the furniture, or did you do it **all** _____?
- 4 They need some help: they **can't** manage _____

EXERCISE 122C

Last Wednesday Sarah stayed up very late to revise for an examination.

Sarah is explaining what happened last Wednesday night. Complete what she says by adding *myself* where necessary.

'I was really annoyed with *myself* for leaving all my revision to the last moment, so I decided to stay up and work. At first, I felt _____1_____ fine and I even started to congratulate _____2_____ on all the work I was doing. But at about 3 o'clock in the morning I started to feel _____3_____ tired. I went to the kitchen and made _____4_____ a strong black coffee. Then I went back to work, but I **couldn't** concentrate _____5_____. In the end, I started to feel sorry for _____6_____, so I went to my bedroom, undressed _____7_____ and went to bed to get some sleep. Then, of course, I **couldn't** relax _____8_____ because I couldn't stop thinking about all the work I had to **do!**'

EXERCISE 122D

Complete the sentences using a reflexive pronoun.

Example:

Sally didn't buy that sweater, she made it *her-self*.

- 1 I didn't buy the cake from the shop. I made it
- 2 **'Who** built your swimming pool for **you?** **'Nobody**. We built it _____'
- 3 Did someone phone the doctor for you? Or did you phone him _____?
- 4 **'Who** told you they were **moving?** **'They** told me _____'
- 5 Mr Mason _____ offered me the job.

EXERCISE 122E

Complete the sentences using *each other* or *-selves*.

Example:

My **penfriend** and I write to *each other* every month.

- 1 They're good friends. They like _____ very much.
- 2 Mike and Sue phone _____ every evening.
- 3 We all enjoyed _____ at the party.
- 4 A lot of people can take care of _____
- 5 My husband and I first met _____ on holiday.
- 6 The children hurt _____ when they fell over.

123 Review of personal pronouns, possessive adjectives and pronouns, and reflexive pronouns
(Обзор личных местоимений, притяжательных прилагательных и местоимений и возвратных местоимений)

EXERCISE 123A

Complete the table.

| PERSONAL PRONOUN | | POSSESSIVE | | REFLEXIVE |
|------------------|------------|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| SUBJECT | OBJECT | ADJECTIVE | PRONOUN | PRONOUN |
| <i>I</i> | <i>me</i> | <i>my</i> | _____ | _____ |
| _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | <i>yourself</i> |
| <i>he</i> | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| _____ | <i>her</i> | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| <i>it</i> | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| _____ | _____ | _____ | <i>ours</i> | _____ |
| _____ | <i>you</i> | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| <i>they</i> | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |

EXERCISE 123B

Complete the sentences using the correct pronoun or adjective.

Examples:

Could *you* lend *me* some money? (you | I)

Why didn't *she* ask us to help her? (she | we | she)

Do *you* ever talk to *yourself* when *you're* on *your* own? (you | you | you | you)

- _____ house is much bigger than _____ (they | we)
- Is this book _____ or _____? (you | I)
- 'Is Lynne going on holiday with _____ friend?' 'No, _____'s going by _____.'
she | she | she)
- How long have _____ been waiting for _____? (they | we)
- Don't blame _____; _____ wasn't _____ mistake, (you | it | you)
- _____ was very angry with _____ for being so stupid. (I | I)
- _____ was very angry with _____ when _____ broke _____ camera, (he | I | I | he)
- Someone came to see _____ while _____ were out _____ told _____ that _____ would be back at 2 o'clock, (you | you | I | they | you)
- 'Who painted _____ flat?' 'Nobody _____ painted it _____.' (you | we | we)
- _____ 's a coincidence that _____ birthday is on the same day as _____ (it | he | her)

124 One (s)

- 1** *One* часто употребляется вместо повторения существительного.
My new flat is much bigger than my old one. (= моя старая квартира)
 'Which of those girls is your sister?' 'She's the one with the blonde hair.' (= девушка со светлыми волосами)
 Существует множественное число - *ones*.
I like these shoes more than the other ones. (= другие туфли)
- 2** Артикль *a/an* употребляется с *one* в том случае, если перед ним стоит существительное, например, *a blue one*, но не *a one*. Compare:
I'm looking for a tie. | *I'm looking for a tie.*
I want a blue one. | *I want one with stripes.*
- 3** *One* может употребляться после указательных прилагательных *this, that*.
Which picture do you prefer, this one or that one?
 Но, как правило, множественное число *ones* употребляется только после *these* или *those*, когда перед ним стоит прилагательное, например, *those black ones*. Compare:
/ like these shoes more than those. \ *I like these brown shoes more than those black ones.*
- 4** *Which one (s)* употребляется в вопросах.
I like the green shirt best. Which one do you prefer?
- 5** *One* может употребляться после *each*.
I've got three children, and each one goes to a different school.
- 6** *One (s)* употребляется только вместо исчисляемых существительных; с неисчисляемыми существительными, например *milk, sugar*, существительное или повторяется, или его часто можно опускать.
There's some brown sugar in the cupboard, but there isn't any white (sugar).

EXERCISE 124A

Complete each sentence using *one* or *ones*. What does *one(s)* mean in each case?

Example:

The best road to the centre of town is the *one* on the left. *one* = road

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 'Would you like a drink?' 'Oh yes, please, I'd love _____' | 3 'Which of the women in this photo is your aunt?' 'She's the _____ with the dark hair.' |
| 2 My new glasses are much stronger than my old _____. | 4 There are two films on TV this evening. Which _____ would you prefer to see? |

Note

– В официальном стиле *one* может также употребляться для выражения людей вообще. См. 120.4.

125 *Something, anything, somebody, anybody, etc.*

- 1** Сложные слова могут образовываться путем соединения *some, any, no* и *every* с *-thing, -body, -one* и *-where*.

| | <i>some</i> | <i>any</i> | <i>no</i> | <i>every</i> |
|---------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|-------------------|
| <i>-thing</i> | <i>something</i> | <i>anything</i> | <i>nothing</i> | <i>everything</i> |
| <i>-body</i> | <i>somebody</i> | <i>anybody</i> | <i>nobody</i> | <i>everybody</i> |
| <i>-one</i> | <i>someone</i> | <i>anyone</i> | <i>no one</i> | <i>everyone</i> |
| <i>-where</i> | <i>somewhere</i> | <i>anywhere</i> | <i>nowhere</i> | <i>everywhere</i> |

- 2** Разница между *something/somebody* и т.д. и *anything/anybody* и т.д. аналогична разнице между *some* и *any*:

- a** Вообще *something, somebody* и т.д. употребляются главным образом в утвердительных предложениях, а *anything, anybody* и т.д. в основном в отрицательных предложениях и вопросах.

*I've got **something** to ask you.*

*There's **somebody** at the front door.*

*I **don't** want to do **anything** this evening.*

*I **can't** see **anybody** outside.*

*Have you got **anything** to say?*

*Did **anybody** phone for me?*

- b** Но очень часто *something, somebody* и т.д. употребляются в вопросах, когда мы ожидаем или хотим ответа **'yes'**, например, в просьбах и предложениях.

*Could I have **something** to eat?*

*Would you like **someone** to help you?*

Более подробно о различиях между *some* и *any* см. 115.

- 3** Все эти сложные слова: *something, anyone, nobody, everywhere* и т.д. имеют форму единственного числа.

***Something** is wrong. What is it?*

*There **was nobody** at home when I phoned.*

***Everything** is so expensive these days.*

Но иногда употребляется форма множественного числа *they, them* и *their* со сложными словами с окончанием на *-body* или *-one*, например, *somebody/someone, anybody/anyone*, главным образом в неофициальном стиле.

***Somebody** forgot to lock the door, didn't **they**?*

*If **anybody** phones for me while I'm out, tell **them** I'll phone **them** back later on.*

*Look. **Someone** has left **their** bag on this seat.*

В таких предложениях *they* употребляется вместо **'he'** или **'she'**, *them* вместо **'him'** или **'her'** и *their* вместо **'his'** или **'her'** (если не уточняется пол лица).

EXERCISE 125A

Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

Example:

Somebody has written in my book.

something anything nothing everything
 somebody anybody nobody everybody
 somewhere anywhere nowhere everywhere

1 There's _____ in **this** envelope. **It's** empty!

2 Why don't we go out _____ for dinner this evening?

3 **There's** _____ waiting outside to see you. She **didn't** tell me her name.

4 They've got _____ to live; they're homeless.

5 There isn't _____ watching the TV at the moment.

6 He lost _____ in the fire: his house and all his possessions.

7 Lynne is the only one in the office at the moment _____ else has gone home.

8 **'Shall** I make you _____ to **eat**?' **'Oh**, yes, please. **I'm** really **hungry**. I've had hardly _____ all **day**.'

9 **It's** a **secret** _____ knows about it.

10 Have you seen my glasses? I've looked _____ for them, but I can't find them _____

26 Form, position and order of adjectives (Образование, местоположение и последовательность прилагательных)

1 Form

Adjectives в английском языке имеют только одну форму, которая употребляется с существительными в единственном и множественном числе.

| | |
|---------------------|-----------|
| an old man | old men |
| an old woman | old women |
| an old car | old cars |

Когда существительное употребляется в качестве прилагательного, оно не имеет формы множественного числа. Compare:

| | |
|-------------|----------------------|
| two hours | a two-hour film |
| three weeks | a three-week holiday |

2 Position

a Adjectives могут находиться в предложении в двух положениях:

- перед существительным

| | |
|----------------|-------------|
| a young man | new shoes |
| an empty house | a nice girl |

- после глаголов *be*, **look**, *appear*, *seem*, *feel*, *taste*, *smell*, *sound* (и некоторых других), когда определяется подлежащее предложения.

| | |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| He is young. | These shoes are new. |
| The house looks empty. | She seems confident. |
| That soup smells good. | |

b Некоторые прилагательные, например *asleep, alone, alive, awake, afraid, ill, well*, могут следовать после глагола, но не перед существительным. Например, можно сказать *he is asleep*, но нельзя сказать *an asleep man*. Перед существительными употребляются другие прилагательные, например, *sleeping* вместо *asleep*, *living* вместо *alive*, *frightened* вместо *afraid*, *sick* вместо *ill* и *healthy* вместо *well*.

a sleeping man *a frightened animal*
sick children *healthy people*

c В выражениях измерений прилагательное обычно идет после ‘измеряемого’ существительного.

He's eighteen years old. *I'm 1.80 metres tall.*

3 Order

a Когда употребляются два и более прилагательных вместе, ‘оценочные’ прилагательные (например, *interesting, beautiful*) обычно идут перед ‘фактическими’ прилагательными (например, *new, blue*).

an interesting new film *a beautiful blue dress*

b Когда два и более прилагательных ставятся перед существительным, они обычно следуют в таком порядке:

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|---|-----------|---|---------|---|--------|---|------------|---|------------|---|---------|---|------|
| size | + | age | + | shape | + | colour | + | origin | + | material | + | purpose | + | NOUN |
| [размер] | | [возраст] | | [форма] | | [цвет] | | [источник] | | [материал] | | [цель] | | |

a small rubber ball (size + material)

a young Spanish woman (age + origin)

a large round hat (size + shape)

white leather running shoes (colour + material + purpose)

EXERCISE 126A

What can we call these people and things?

Examples:

a child who is four years old *a four-year-old child*

a journey which takes six hours *a six-hour journey*

- 1 a concert which lasts for two hours
- 2 a man who is fifty years old
- 3 a delay which lasts for twenty minutes
- 4 a letter which has ten pages
- 5 a meeting which lasts for two hours

EXERCISE 126B

Which of these words are adjectives?

Example:

‘You look **tired**.’ ‘Yes, I don't feel very **well**.’
 Adjectives: *tired, well*

- 1 **It's** a very long book, but **it's** not at all boring.
- 2 Were you late for work today?
- 3 You seem sad. Is something wrong?
- 4 The boss sounded angry when I spoke to him on the phone.
- 5 He's quite a shy person. He often feels embarrassed when he meets people.

EXERCISE 126C

Put the words in the right order.

Examples:

15 | a | generous | Kate | woman | very | . *Kate is a very generous woman.*
look | very | Simon | angry | did | ? *Did Simon look very angry?*

- 1 children | asleep | the | are?
- 2 very | city | is | a | Sydney | modern |.
- 3 building | over | old | that | 500 years | is |.
- 4 **don't** | happy | very | you | sound |.
- 5 a | he | very | man | healthy | looks |.
- 6 bridge | long | is | **1.55** kilometres | the |.
- 7 blue | seen | have | my | you | T-shirt | ?

EXERCISE 126D

Put the adjectives in the box under the correct headings.

| Opinion | Size | Age | Shape | Colour | Origin | Material | Purpose |
|-----------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------------|----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| <i>horrible</i> | <i>short</i> | <i>old</i> | <i>round</i> | <i>grey</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>glass</i> | <i>shopping</i> |
| _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |

| | | | | | | |
|---------|-------------|----------|---------|-----------|--------|----------|
| English | old | horrible | grey | glass | round | shopping |
| short | middle-aged | plastic | Italian | beautiful | sports | |
| ugly | square | leather | red | German | small | young |
| writing | curly | large | | | | |

EXERCISE 126E

Put the adjectives in brackets into their usual order.

Example:

an (German | interesting | young) woman *an interesting young German woman*

- 1 a (fat | short) man
- 2 a (middle-aged | tall) woman
- 3 two (white | small | paper) cups
- 4 some (Japanese | tiny) TV sets
- 5 a (young | handsome) doctor
- 6 a (red | plastic | cheap) raincoat
- 7 an (blue | long | attractive) coat
- 8 a pair of (leather | expensive | black) shoes

Note

– **Прилагательное** обычно имеет одну и ту же форму в единственном и множественном числе (см. 126.1), но обратите внимание, что указательные прилагательные *this* и *that* принимают форму *these* и *those* с существительными во множественном числе, например, *this man*, *these men*.

127 Comparative and superlative adjectives (Сравнительная и превосходная степень прилагательных)

1 Form of comparatives and **superlatives**

a Short [Краткие] adjectives'

Односложные прилагательные образуют сравнительную степень с помощью **-er**, а превосходную - с помощью **-est**.

| ADJECTIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|--------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>small</i> | <i>smaller</i> | <i>smallest</i> |
| <i>high</i> | <i>higher</i> | <i>highest</i> |
| <i>young</i> | <i>younger</i> | <i>youngest</i> |
| <i>cold</i> | <i>colder</i> | <i>coldest</i> |

При присоединении **-er** или **-est** к **прилагательным** иногда имеют место некоторые изменения в написании, например, *big* → *bigger*. См. 188.3, 4, 6.

b Двусложные и многосложные **прилагательные**

Прилагательные из трех и более слогов образуют сравнительную степень с помощью **more**, а превосходную - с помощью **most**.

В двусложных прилагательных с окончанием на согласную + -у -у меняется на **-i** и добавляется **-er** или **-est**.

Некоторые другие двусложные прилагательные образуют степени сравнения также с помощью **-er** или **-est**, например, *quiet*, *clever*, *simple*, *narrow*, *gentle*.

Большинство других двусложных прилагательных образуют степени сравнения с помощью **more** и **most**.

Некоторые двусложные прилагательные могут образовывать степени сравнения или с помощью **-er/-est**, или **more/most**, например, *polite*, *common*, *pleasant*, *stupid*.

| ADJECTIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|---|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>exciting</i> (<i>ex-cit-ing</i>) | <i>more exciting</i> | <i>most exciting</i> |
| <i>interesting</i> (<i>in-ter-est-ing</i>) | <i>more interesting</i> | <i>most interesting</i> |
| <i>happy</i> (<i>hap-py</i>) | <i>happier</i> | <i>happiest</i> |
| <i>sunny</i> (<i>sun-ny</i>) | <i>sunnier</i> | <i>sunniest</i> |
| <i>quiet</i> (<i>qui-et</i>) | <i>quieter</i> | <i>quietest</i> |
| <i>clever</i> (<i>clev-er</i>) | <i>cleverer</i> | <i>cleverest</i> |
| <i>honest</i> (<i>hon-est</i>) | <i>more honest</i> | <i>most honest</i> |
| <i>careful</i> (<i>care-ful</i>) | <i>more careful</i> | <i>most careful</i> |
| <i>polite</i> (<i>po-lite</i>) | <i>politer/more polite</i> | <i>politest/most polite</i> |
| <i>common</i> (<i>com-mon</i>) | <i>commoner/more common</i> | <i>commonest/most common</i> |

C \ Образование сравнительной и превосходной степени прилагательных не по общим правилам

Adjectives *good, bad, far* и *old* имеют 'неправильный' способ образования сравнительной и превосходной степени.

Little и *much/many* также имеют 'неправильный' способ образования сравнительной и превосходной степени.

| ADJECTIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>good</i> | <i>better</i> | <i>best</i> |
| <i>bad</i> | <i>worse</i> | <i>worst</i> |
| <i>far</i> | <i>farther/ further</i> | <i>farthest/ furthest</i> |
| <i>old</i> | <i>older/ elder</i> | <i>oldest/ eldest</i> |
| <i>little</i> | <i>less</i> | <i>least</i> |
| <i>much/many</i> | <i>more</i> | <i>most</i> |

2 Use of comparatives

a Comparatives употребляются, когда сравнивается одно лицо, предмет и т.д. с другим.



Martin is taller than Annie.

More examples:

The Amazon is longer than the Mississippi.
Good health is more important than money.

После сравнительной степени часто употребляется *than*, например, *taller than, longer than, more important than*.

b Comparative + *and* + comparative может также употребляться для выражения увеличения или уменьшения чего-то, например, *colder and colder, more and more expensive*.

The weather is getting colder and colder.
Things are becoming more and more expensive all the time.

c *The* + comparative clause, *the* + comparative clause можно употреблять для выражения изменений двух вещей или предметов одновременно или зависимости чего-то одного от другого.

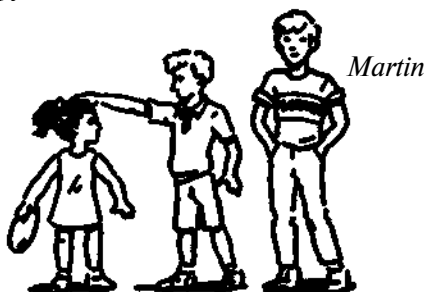
The smaller a car is, the easier it is to park.
The colder the weather, the higher my heating bills are.

d Перед сравнительной степенью можно употреблять (*very*) *much, a lot, a little, a (little) bit, rather* или *far* (= гораздо).

very much taller a lot more important a little cheaper
a bit more expensive rather colder far more interesting

3 Use of superlatives

- a Superlatives употребляются, когда сравнивается одно лицо или предмет в группе с двумя и более предметами или лицами той же группы.



Martin is the tallest of the three children.

More examples:

I'm the youngest in my family.

Which is the most beautiful place you've ever been to?

Обычно с превосходной степенью употребляется **the**, например, **the tallest**, **the youngest**, **the most beautiful**.

- b Перед превосходной степенью часто употребляется *by far* или *easily*, например, **by far the tallest**, **easily the most interesting**.

EXERCISE 127A

Compare these things.

Example:

a lamb and a sheep (old | small)

A sheep is older than a lamb.

A lamb is smaller than a sheep.

1 wood and steel (light | hard | strong)

2 a bus and a train (slow | comfortable)

3 milk and cream (thick | healthy | fattening)

4 windsurfing and swimming (cheap | exciting | good exercise)

EXERCISE 127B

Maria is a foreign student in London. She is speaking about the problems of learning English.

Complete what Maria says using comparatives of the adjectives in brackets; add *than* where necessary.

'Oh, why is English such a difficult language! I think it's *much more difficult than* (much | difficult) French. Sometimes I feel that my English is getting ____ (1) ____ (bad), not ____ (2) ____ (good)! When you first start learning English, it seems ____ (3) ____ (a lot | easy) other languages and the grammar looks ____ (4) ____ (much | simple). However, when you become ____ (5) ____ (a little | advanced), it gets ____ (6) ____ (a lot | complicated). There are also so many words in English! The dictionary I bought when I first came to Britain is far too small. I'm already looking for something ____ (7) ____ (rather | big) and ____ (8) ____ (comprehensive).'

EXERCISE 127C

Complete these sentences about the world today using the structure:
comparative + *and* + comparative.

Example:

Computers are becoming *more and more important* in our lives. (important)

- 1 The world's population is getting _____ (big)
- 2 The problem of feeding all the people in the world is getting _____ (bad)
- 3 Many of the world's seas, rivers and lakes are becoming _____ (polluted)
- 4 Life is becoming _____ (automated)

EXERCISE 127D

Make sentences using the structure:
the + comparative clause, *the* + comparative clause.

Example:

(small) a house is | (easy) it is to look after
The smaller a house is, the easier it is to look after.

- 1 (big) a car is | (expensive) it is to run
- 2 (bad) the weather | (dangerous) it is to drive on the roads
- 3 (old) he gets | (thoughtful) he becomes |
- 4 (complicated) the problem | (hard) it is to find a solution

EXERCISE 127E

Complete the sentences using *the* and superlatives of the adjectives in brackets.

Example:

What's *the most precious* (precious) metal in the world?

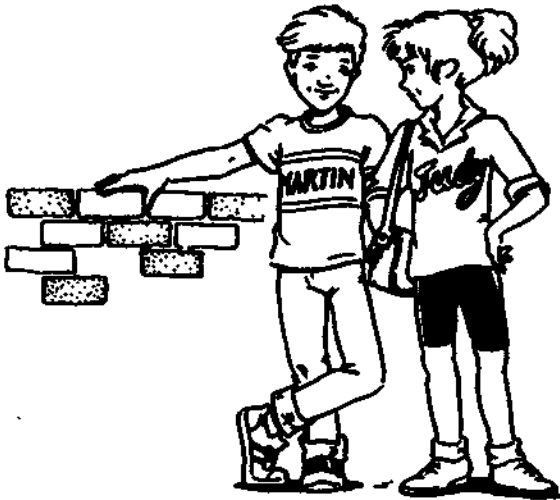
- 1 Who's _____ (good) footballer in Europe?
- 2 This was _____ (cheap) watch that they had in the shop.
- 3 I bought _____ (reliable) washing machine I could find.
- 4 This is one of _____ (expensive) restaurants in Milan.
- 5 The blue whale is _____ (large) of all the animals.
- 6 He's one of _____ (stupid) people I know.
- 7 _____ (old) university in the world is in Morocco.
- 8 I think that was one of _____ (bad) days of my life.
- 9 Sydney Opera House is one of _____ (famous) modern buildings in the world.

Note

- **Further** (а не *farther*) может значить 'больше' или 'в дополнение', например: *Tell me if you have any further problems* (= any more problems).
- **Older/oldest** (а не *elder/eldest*) употребляется в сравнительной и превосходной степени, например: *My sister is older than me.* (He: ... **elder** than me.) *Elder/eldest* употребляется часто перед существительным, например, *sister, son, brother* главным образом, когда речь идет о членах семьи, например, *my elder sister.*
- **В** превосходной степени предлог *in* употребляется с обстоятельствами места, например: *Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world.*
- **В** неофициальном стиле употребляются объектные местоимения *me, him* после *than*, например: *She's older than me.* **В** более официальном стиле употребляются субъектные местоимения *I, he* + verb, например: *She's older than I am.* Некоторые считают более правильной форму подлежащее + глагол.
- **Иногда** *most* + adjective означает 'очень', например: *It was most kind of you to lend me the money* (= very kind).

128 As ... as

- 1 *As ... as* употребляется для выражения того, что двое людей, два предмета и т.д. в некотором роде сходны, одинаковы.



Judy is as tall as Martin.

as + adjective + as

Judy is as tall as Martin

I'm as old as you are.

Was the exam as difficult as you 'd expected?

- 2 После *not* может употребляться *as ... as* или *so ... as*.

not as/so + adjective + as

Judy isn't as/so tall as Carla.

Today isn't as/so cold as yesterday.

EXERCISE 128A

Complete the sentences using *as ... as* and the adjectives in the box.

Example:

'Are you *as old as* Mike?' 'No, I'm younger than he *is*.'

interesting cheap ~~old~~ clever tall

- 1 Jill is **almost** ____ her father. **She's** 164 cm and he's 166 cm.
- 2 **I'm** not ____ my brother. He's very intelligent.
- 3 The film wasn't ____ I'd thought it would be. In fact, it was quite boring.
- 4 Going by train is almost ____ taking the coach. They both cost around £5.

EXERCISE 128B

Make comparisons using *isn't as ... as* and the adjectives in brackets.

Example:

Japan | India (large | industrialised)

Japan isn't as large as India.

India isn't as industrialised as Japan.

1 a giraffe | an elephant (tall | strong | fast)

2 iron | gold (**strong/valuable**)

3 a gorilla | a human (intelligent | strong)

4 a car | a bicycle (expensive | fast | easy to park)

Note

– В неофициальном стиле употребляются объектные местоимения, *me, him* после *as*, например: *You aren't as tired as me.* В более официальном стиле употребляются субъектные местоимения, например, *I, he* + verb *You aren't as tired as I am.* Некоторые считают более правильной форму подлежащее + глагол.

129 Review of comparatives, superlatives and **as ... as** (Обзор сравнительной и превосходной степени прилагательных и **as ... as**)

EXERCISE 129 A

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the adjectives in brackets. Add *than, the* or *as* where necessary.

Examples:

A mile is *longer than* a kilometre (long)

Today isn't as *sunny as yesterday*. (sunny)

What's *the best* holiday you've ever had? (good)

- 1 Baseball is _____ sport in the USA. (popular)
- 2 **She's** much _____ her **brother**. (serious)
- 3 He **wasn't** as _____ he usually is. (friendly)
- 4 That was _____ film I've ever **seen**. (good)
- 5 He's much _____ any of his **brothers**. (generous)
- 6 You aren't as _____ you think you are. (clever)
- 7 **Where's** _____ place in the world? (hot)
- 8 Debbie is far _____ she used to be. (self-confident)
- 9 My brother is one of _____ people I **know**. (strange)
- 10 Which is _____ building in the world? (tall)
- 11 Our holiday was much _____ we'd **expected**. (cheap)
- 12 That was one of _____ times of my **life**. (enjoyable)

130 Adjectives and adverbs of manner (Прилагательные и наречия образа действия)

1 Adverbs of manner указывают на то, **как** что-то происходит.

*She sings **beautifully**.*

*I passed the exam **easily**.*

Сравните прилагательные и наречия образа действия:

Прилагательные более определяют существительное, например, *singer, worker, exam*.

*She's a **beautiful** singer.*

*He's a **slow** worker.*

*The exam was **easy**.*

Наречия образа действия более определяют глагол, например, *sings, works, passed*.

*She **sings beautifully**.*

*He **works slowly**.*

*I **passed** the exam **easily**.*

2 Большинство наречий образа действия образуются путем добавления **-ly** к прилагательному.

ADJECTIVE

beautiful

slow

ADVERB

beautifully

slowly

Но обратите внимание, что наречием от *good* является *well*.

*You're a **good** swimmer. You swim **very well**.*

Fast, hard, early и *late* употребляются как прилагательные, так и наречия.

*It's a **fast** car.*

*It was **hard** work.*

*I was **early**.*

*The car goes **very fast**.*

*We worked **hard**.*

*I arrived **early**.*

3 Не все слова, оканчивающиеся на **-ly**, являются наречиями. Некоторые прилагательные также оканчиваются на **-ly**, например, *friendly, lovely, lonely, silly, ugly*. Эти прилагательные не имеют формы наречия: вместо них употребляются различные конструкции, например, *in a ... way*.

*She smiled **in a friendly** way. (Not: ~~She smiled friendly/friendlyly.~~)*

EXERCISE 130A

Answer the questions.

1 How do you usually feel before an interview?

(nervous/nervously?)

2 How do you usually walk when you are tired?

(slow/slowly?)

3 How do you feel when you get good news?

(happy/happily?)

4 What kind of a driver are you?

(careful/carefully?)

5 How do you usually study before an exam?

(hard/hardly?)

6 What kind of a dancer are you?

(wonderful/wonderfully?)

7 How should you pick up a baby?

(careful/carefully?)

8 What is your English like?

(good/well?)

Now make sentences.

Example: 1 / *usually feel nervous before an interview.*

131 Adverbs of manner, place and time (Наречия образа действия, места и времени)

- 1** Наречие может быть одним словом, например *quickly*, или словосочетанием (иногда называемое ‘адвербиальным словосочетанием’), например, *in the park*.
- Наречие, которое указывает на то, как что-то происходит, например *carefully, well*, является adverb of manner.
- Наречие, которое указывает, где что-то происходит, например *here, in the park*, является adverb of place.
- Наречие, которое указывает, когда что-то происходит, например *now, yesterday*, называется adverb of definite time.

2 Position

- a** Наречия образа действия, места и (определенного) времени обычно следуют после прямого дополнения.

direct object + adverb

/ read the letter carefully.
We saw Maria in the park.
He bought a camera yesterday.

- b** Если прямое дополнение отсутствует, то наречие обычно следует после глагола.

verb + adverb

She drove carefully.
He lives here.

- c** Если имеется больше одного наречия, то обычный порядок следующий:

manner + place + time

I slept very well last night. (manner + time)
He lives here now. (place + time)
We worked hard at school yesterday. (manner + place + time)

- d** Обратите внимание, что наречие, как правило, не ставится между глаголом и его прямым дополнением.

verb + direct object + adverb

/ like Maria very much. (Not: ~~I like~~ very much Maria.)
He drank his coffee quickly. (Not: ~~He drank~~ quickly his coffee.)
We played tennis yesterday. (Not: ~~We played~~ yesterday tennis.)

- e** Некоторые наречия образа действия, места и времени могут также ставиться в начале предложения (если необходимо особо указать на образ действия, место или время).

Slowly, he started to walk away.

***In London,** we went to the zoo.*

***Tomorrow** I have to go to the **doctor's**.*

EXERCISE 131 A

Complete the sentences by putting the parts in brackets in the order: object + manner + place + time.

Example:

Annie did _____ (last night | her homework | very quickly)

Annie did her homework very quickly last night.

1 Sue can play _____ (now | very well | the piano)

2 I posted _____ (early this morning | in the town centre | your letters)

3 **The** children have been playing _____ (this afternoon | in the park | football)

4 It snowed _____ (yesterday evening | heavily | in the north of Scotland)

5 They studied _____ (carefully | later on in the day | the map)

6 He walked _____ (out of the room | at the end of the meeting | angrily)

7 She played _____ (at the concert | last night | beautifully | the guitar)

Note

– **Некоторые** наречия образа действия могут употребляться с глаголами, например: *He **angrily** walked out of the room.* Некоторые наречия неопределенного времени, например *still, already, just* и неопределенной частотности, например, *always, never* могут употребляться с глаголами, например: / *still love you, He **always** starts work at 8.00.*

Относительно подробностей употребления наречий с глаголами см. 132.

132 Adverb position with verbs (Положение наречия относительно глагола)

Некоторые наречия, например *usually, never, always, probably, certainly, still, already, just, almost,* могут употребляться только с глаголами:

- 1** Обычно наречие ставится перед смысловым глаголом.

adverb + verb

*They **usually** watch TV in the evenings.*

*I **never** eat sweets.*

***He probably** knows what to do.*

*We **still** live here.*

- 2 Но наречие обычно ставится после глагола *be* или вспомогательных глаголов, например, *have, will, can*.

be + adverb

They're usually in bed by 11.30.

He's probably at home now.

We're still here.

auxiliary verb + adverb

I've never eaten Chinese food.

We'll probably be late this evening.

I can never remember your phone number.

- 3 Если имеется более одного вспомогательного глагола, то наречие обычно следует после первого.

These curtains have never been cleaned.

Ken has probably been working all day.

- 4 В отрицательных предложениях наречия вероятности, например *probably, certainly*, обычно следуют перед отрицанием *won't, not* и т.д.

We probably won't be here tomorrow. / We'll probably not be here tomorrow.

EXERCISE 132A

Put the adverb in brackets into the correct place (with the verb).

Example:

He'll be in Paris until next **Friday**. (probably)

He **probably** be in Paris until next Friday.

1 They've been trying to contact us. (probably)

2 She went to the meeting last **week**.
(probably)

3 They take their summer holidays in May.
(normally)

4 Have you lived in a foreign country? (ever)

5 **I've** eaten Indian **food**. (never)

6 Do you live in the same flat? (still)

7 He wants to borrow the **money**. (only)

8 I won't see Martin again until next **weekend**.
(probably)

9 **We've** finished painting the outside of the **house**. (almost)

10 **I** try to go jogging at least three times a **week**. (always)

11 We haven't got any time to **lose**. (certainly)

12 I can lend you some money until next **week**.
(certainly)

13 He's complaining about **something**. (always)

14 **I** don't watch this TV **programme**. (usually)

133 Time: *still, yet and already*

(Время: *до сих пор, (всё) ещё, (пока) ещё хуже*)

- 1** *Still* [‘до сих пор, (всё) ещё] употребляется перед смысловым глаголом, после *be* или вспомогательного глагола (см. 132).

My brother is 18, but he still behaves like a child.

‘Has Andrew woken up?’ ‘No, he’s still asleep.’

I can still remember the first time we met.

Still также употребляется после подлежащего в отрицательных предложениях; в этом случае *still* может выражать нетерпение, нетерпеливость или удивление.

They received the bill a month ago and they still haven’t paid it.

I’ve known Mike for years, but I still don’t understand him.

- 2** *Yet* [‘до сих пор; (пока) ещё’] употребляется только в вопросах и отрицательных предложениях; *yet* обычно ставится в конце предложения.

Have you had your exam results yet?

I wrote to her a week ago, but she hasn’t answered my letter yet.

Yet часто употребляется после *not* в отрицательных кратких ответах.

‘Have you passed your driving test yet?’ ‘No, not yet.’

- 3** Обычно *already* [‘уже, ранее’] ставится перед смысловым глаголом, после *be* или вспомогательного глагола (см. 132).

You don’t need to tell Ken the news; he already knows.

‘What time is Sue going to be here?’ ‘She’s already here.’

‘Could you do the washing up?’ ‘I’ve already done it.’

Already может также употребляться в конце предложения для эмпазы.

I’ve seen the film already.

Have you finished already?

EXERCISE 133A

Complete the sentences using *still, yet* or *already*.

Example:

Is Lynne *still* here, or has she gone home?

- 1 When we arrived at the cinema, the film had _____ started.
- 2 Paul has been looking for a job for ages, but he _____ hasn’t found one _____.
- 3 Do you _____ drive the same car or have you sold it?
- 4 Have you had your exam results, or are you _____ waiting for them?
- 5 She only started the book yesterday, but she’s finished it _____.
- 6 ‘They started the job ages ago. Haven’t they finished it _____?’ ‘No, not _____.’

EXERCISE 133B

Put the word in brackets in the correct place in the sentence. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Example:

The meeting started three hours ago and it *still hasn't* finished, (still)

- 1 You needn't clean the kitchen; **I've** done it. (already)
- 2 You don't need to tell me; I know what to do. (already)
- 3 Haven't you received your invitation to the party? (yet)
- 4 I can't decide what to do this **evening**. (still)
- 5 I can remember the first time I flew in a **plane**. (still)
- 6 Robert works for the same company in **London**. (still)

Time: *any more*, *any longer* and *no longer*

Not ... any more, *not ... any longer* и *no longer* могут употребляться для описания изменившейся ситуации:

- 1 [*Any more* and *any longer* ставятся в конце предложения.

Annie **doesn't** live here *any more*. She moved last year.
My father is not a young man *any longer*.

- 2 Обычно *no longer* ставится перед смысловым глаголом, после *be* или вспомогательного глагола.

Annie *no longer* lives here. She moved last year. \ My father is *no longer* a young man.

Обычно *no more* не употребляется в этом значении.

EXERCISE 134A

Put the correct word in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.

Example:

I don't want to stay **here**. (any more/no longer)
/ **don't** want to stay here *any more*.

- 1 Sue works for the same company in **London**. (any longer/no longer)
- 2 My brother isn't a young **child**. (any more/no longer)
- 3 Her father is **unemployed**. (any longer/no longer)
- 4 There is a large ship-building industry in **Britain**. (any more/no longer)

135 Adverbs of frequency (Наречия частотности)

Adverbs of frequency указывают, как часто что-то происходит.

Examples:

*always normally usually frequently often sometimes
occasionally rarely seldom hardly ever never ever*

- 1** Adverbs of frequency обычно ставятся перед смысловым глаголом, но после *be* и вспомогательного глагола.

They usually watch TV.

She never eats sweets.

I always go to work by bus.

They're usually in bed by 11.30.

She's never eaten Chinese food.

I'll always remember you.

Когда употребляется более одного вспомогательного глагола, наречие обычно следует после первого вспомогательного глагола.

These curtains have never been cleaned.

Have you ever been invited to one of his parties?

- 2** *Sometimes, usually, normally, frequently, often* и *occasionally* могут ставиться в начале или в конце предложения.

Sometimes I walk to work.

Do you see your parents often?

- 3** Adverbs phrases of frequency, например *every evening, once a week*, обычно ставятся в конце (или начале) предложения.

They watch TV every evening.

I go swimming once a week.

- 4** Adverbs of definite frequency, например *daily, weekly, monthly, yearly*, обычно ставятся в конце предложения.

The post is delivered here twice daily.

EXERCISE 135A

Put the adverbs in order of frequency.

| | | | | |
|-------------|------------|----------|--------|-----------|
| seldom | never | usually | often | sometimes |
| not ever | frequently | normally | always | |
| hardly ever | rarely | | | |

all the time

(1)

always

(2)

normally usually

(3)

(4)

(5)

(6)

at no time

(7)

EXERCISE 135B

Put the adverbs in the correct place in the sentences. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Example:

She *always* tries to visit her parents at the **weekends**. (always)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 I've seen that programme on TV. (never) | 7 Have you had a really serious illness? (ever) |
| 2 He's late for appointments . (hardly ever) | 8 I'll forget our holiday together . (never) |
| 3 They go to the cinema nowadays . (rarely) | 9 She's been interested in music . (always) |
| 4 Is he bad-tempered? (often) | 10 I brush my teeth. (always /three times a day) |
| 5 They listen to the radio . (everymorning) | |
| 6 I'm at home before 8 o'clock . (seldom) | |

36 Adverbs of probability (Наречия вероятности)

Adverbs of probability указывают, насколько мы уверены относительно чего-то.

Examples:

certainly definitely obviously probably

- 1 Adverbs of probability обычно ставятся перед смысловым глаголом, но после *be* и вспомогательного глагола (см. 132).

He probably knows your address.
They definitely saw me.
She obviously likes you.

He's probably at home now.
They've definitely gone out.
She can obviously do the job.

- 2 В отрицательных предложениях adverbs of probability обычно ставятся перед отрицанием *won't, isn't, not* и др.

She probably won't be late.
He certainly isn't at home now.
They're obviously not very happy.

- 3 *Perhaps* и *maybe* обычно следуют в начале предложения.

Perhaps I'll see you later.
Maybe you're right.

Maybe употребляется в разговорной речи.

EXERCISE 136A

Put the adverbs in the correct place in the sentence.

Example:

In the future, machines will *probably* do many of the jobs that people do **today**. (probably)

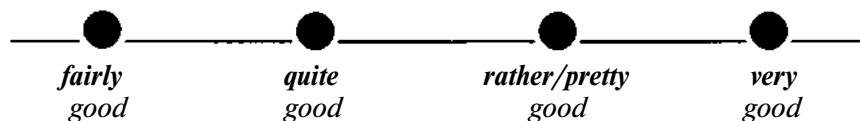
- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Simon is at Sarah's house at the moment. (probably) | 5 You should go and see the doctor . (definitely) |
| 2 There will be an election early next year. (probably) | 6 I don't want to be home late tonight . (definitely) |
| 3 We'll play tennis later this afternoon . (perhaps) | 7 Computers are becoming more and more important in our lives . (certainly) |
| 4 They enjoyed the film very much . (obviously) | 8 The bridge has been repaired by now. (probably) |

137 *Fairly, quite, rather and pretty (Довольно, вполне и достаточно)*

- 1 *Наречия fairly, quite, rather и pretty определяют прилагательные или другие наречия. Они обычно ставятся перед прилагательными или наречиями, которые они определяют.*

The film was quite good. (adverb + adjective)
I know her fairly well. (adverb + adverb)

- 2 Compare:



- a Вообще *quite* немного слабее, чем *fairly*.

I'm fairly tired, but I don't think I'll go to bed yet.
I'm quite tired. I think I'll go to bed now.

- b *Rather* сильнее, чем *quite*; *rather* может употребляться для выражения 'более, чем обычно', 'более чем желаемое' или 'более чем ожидаемое'.

The TV is rather loud. Shall I turn it down?
We're rather late. We'd better hurry.
The concert was rather good. I was surprised.

- c *Pretty* может употребляться с таким же значением, как *rather*; *pretty* употребляется в более неофициальном стиле.

We're pretty hungry. We haven't eaten all day.

- d Но обратите внимание на то, что значения *fairly, quite, rather* и *pretty* могут зависеть от ударения и интонации.

He's quite 'nice. (более положительное)
He's 'quitenice. (менее положительное)

- 3** *Quite* ставится перед *a/ai*, *a fairly*, *a pretty* после *a*. Compare:
- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| <i>He's quite a young man.</i> | | <i>He's a fairly young man.</i> |
| <i>It was quite an interesting film.</i> | | <i>It was a pretty interesting film.</i> |
- Rather* может ставиться перед или после *a/an*.
- It was rather an interesting film. / It was a rather interesting film.*
- 4** *Quite* и *rather* могут также определять глаголы; эти слова ставятся перед смысловым глаголом, но после вспомогательного глагола (см. 132).
- She quite enjoyed the film.*
I rather like driving at night.
He's quite enjoying himself.
- 5** *Rather*, но *nefairly*, *quite* или *pretty* употребляются перед сравнительной степенью прилагательных.
- rather colder* *rather more expensive*
- 6** *Quite* может также означать 'совершенно, вполне, совсем' с некоторыми прилагательными.
- The animal was quite dead.* (= совсем мертвым)
- Quite* может означать 'совсем' только с такими 'неградуированными' прилагательными, как *dead* (обычно что-то не может быть более или менее мертвым; оно или мертвое или нет).
- More examples:**
- The meal was quite perfect.* (= достаточно вкусное)
The story is quite untrue. (= вполне неправдоподобный)
- С некоторыми наречиями и глаголами *quite* также употребляется в значении 'довольно, достаточно'.
- She sang quite perfectly.* (= довольно прекрасно)
/ quite understand. (= достаточно понимаю)

EXERCISE 137A

Complete each sentence using the correct word in brackets. Sometimes either word is possible.

Examples:

She's quite a generous **woman**. (quite/fairly)

It's *rather/fairly* cold in this **room**. (rather/fairly)

1 I've made _____ a stupid **mistake**. (pretty/rather)

2 She _____ enjoys working at **night**. (fairly/quite)

3 It was a _____ boring football **match**. (pretty/rather)

4 I'm _____ looking forward to the party on **Saturday**. (pretty/quite)

5 The weather was _____ worse than we'd **expected**. (quite/rather)

6 My grandfather was _____ an amazing man. (quite/fairly)

7 Maria speaks English _____ well, doesn't she? (quite/pretty)

8 I'm feeling _____ better **today**. (fairly/rather)

EXERCISE 137B

Complete the sentences using the most suitable expression in the box. Use each expression only once.

Example:

There was nothing in the envelope.
It was *quite empty*.

quite useless quite sure quite impossible
quite original quite empty quite different

- 1 He's not at all like his sister; they're _____
2 This clock keeps on breaking down. It's _____ really.
3 I like your idea. It's really _____; I've never heard anything like it before.
4 'What are you going to do this evening?' 'I'm not _____'
5 We can't finish the job by tomorrow. It's _____

138 *Too and enough (Слишком и достаточно)*

- 1 *Too* ставится перед прилагательными и наречиями; *enough* - после них.
/ don't think I'll go out tonight. I'm too tired.
Slow down! You're driving too fast.
Are you warm enough, or do you want me to switch on the heating?
We aren't working quickly enough. We'd better hurry.
- 2 *Too many, too much* и *enough* ставятся перед **существительными**:
- a *Too many* ставится перед исчисляемыми существительными (например, *eggs*), а *too much* - перед неисчисляемыми существительными (например, *salt*).
I bought too many eggs.
There's too much salt in this soup.
- b *Enough* употребляется как перед исчисляемыми, так и перед неисчисляемыми существительными.
We can't make an omelette. We haven't got enough eggs.
There's enough salt in the soup. It doesn't need any more.
Too many, too much и *enough* могут употребляться отдельно, без существительного.
'Is there enough salt in the soup?' 'There's too much. I can't eat it'
We need some more eggs. We haven't got enough.
- 3 После *too* и *enough* можно употреблять *for* + object [дополнение].
This jacket is too small for me.
The flat isn't really big enough for all of us.
- 4 После *too* и *enough* можно употреблять *to* infinitive.
It's too early to have dinner.
He isn't told enough to drive a car.

5 Может также употребляться конструкция *too/enough + for + object + to infinitive*.

It's too early for us to have dinner.

This jacket isn't large enough for me to wear.

6 *Too* (но не *enough*) может определяться словами *much, a lot, far* [очень], *a little, a bit, rather*.

much too heavy far too cold a bit too fast

7 Compare *very* and *too*:

Too (но не *very*) имеет отрицательное значение 'более чем необходимо' или 'более чем хороший'.

She's a good worker. She works very quickly.

They arrived at the airport very late, but they just caught their plane.

He works too quickly and makes a lot of mistakes.

They arrived at the airport too late and missed their plane.

EXERCISE 138A

Complete each sentence using *too* or *enough* and an adjective or adverb in the box.

Example:

Annie can't go to school today. She has got a temperature and isn't *well enough* to get up.

warm dark **well** early quietly loud

- 1 We couldn't see what was in the room because it was _____.
- 2 I couldn't hear everything she said because she spoke _____.
- 3 They missed their plane because they **didn't** leave home _____.
- 4 He told them the music was _____ so they turned it down.
- 5 We didn't go to the beach yesterday because the weather **wasn't** _____.

EXERCISE 138B

Complete the sentences using *too much, too many* or *enough*.

Example:

We've been so busy today we didn't even have *enough* time for lunch.

- 1 I'd like to go to the cinema, but I haven't got _____ money.
- 2 I can't drink this soup. It's got _____ salt in it.
- 3 Doctors say that _____ sugar is bad for you.
- 4 We didn't really enjoy the party; there were far _____ people there.
- 5 We couldn't make an omelette because we didn't have _____ eggs.

EXERCISE 138C

Join these ideas using *too/enough* + *to* infinitive, or *too/enough* + **for** + object + *to* infinitive.

Examples:

Annie isn't old enough. She can't leave school.

Annie isn't old enough to leave school.

The weather was too bad. We couldn't go out.

The weather was too bad for us to go out.

1 I'm too tired. I can't go to the cinema this evening.

2 The table was too heavy. I couldn't move it.

3 The children aren't tall enough. They can't reach that shelf.

4 They arrived too late. They didn't see the beginning of the film.

5 Our old flat was much too small. We couldn't live in it.

6 He spoke too quietly. The people at the back of the room couldn't hear.

139 *So and such*

(*Так, до такой степени, такой*)

1 *Such* ставится перед существительным с прилагательным или без него.

She's such a nice woman.

Don't be such a fool!

So ставится перед одним прилагательным, без существительного.

She's so nice.

Don't be so foolish!

So может употребляться с наречием.

He works so slowly.

2 *So* (но не *such*) может употребляться с *many* и *much*.

There were so many people on the train.

I've got so much to do today. I'm really busy.

Such (но не *so*) может употребляться перед *a lot (of)*.

There were such a lot of people on the train.

I've got such a lot to do today. I'm really busy.

3 После *so* и *such* может употребляться придаточное предложение с *that (that-clause)* для выражения результата (см. 162.2).

The table was so heavy that I couldn't move it.

It was such a beautiful afternoon that we went to the beach.

EXERCISE 139A

Complete the sentences using *so* or *such*.

Example:

It was *such* a good film. I really enjoyed it.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1 She's _____ shy. She always gets very nervous when she meets people.</p> <p>2 You shouldn't eat _____ quickly; you'll give yourself indigestion.</p> <p>3 It's _____ an interesting town; there really is _____ much to do there.</p> <p>4 I was _____ disappointed when I failed my driving test.</p> | <p>5 He felt _____ tired that he decided not to go out.</p> <p>6 It was _____ a hot day that they had to open all the windows.</p> <p>7 I've made _____ many mistakes in this letter, I think I'll type it again.</p> <p>8 He had _____ a lot of luggage that we couldn't get it all into the car.</p> |
|--|--|

Note

– *So* также употребляется для выражения результата, например: *I was hungry so I made something to eat.* См. 162.2.

– *So that* и *so as to* также употребляются для выражения причины, например: *I gave her my address so that she could write to me.* См. 163.3.

40 Comparison: adverbs (Сравнение: наречие)

1 Form of comparative and superlative adverbs

Большинство наречий образуют сравнительную степень (comparative) с помощью *more*, а превосходную (superlative) – с помощью *most*.

| | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>beautifully</i> | <i>more beautifully</i> | <i>most beautifully</i> |
| <i>carefully</i> | <i>more carefully</i> | <i>most carefully</i> |

Односложные наречия, например *fast, hard, late, long, soon*, образуют сравнительную степень (comparative) с помощью *-er*, а превосходную (superlative) – с помощью *-est*.

| | | |
|-------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>fast</i> | <i>faster</i> | <i>fastest</i> |
| <i>hard</i> | <i>harder</i> | <i>hardest</i> |

Но обратите внимание: *early (ear-ly)* также образует степени с помощью *-er/-est*: *earlier* → *earliest*.

Когда к словам присоединяется *-er/-est*, иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, *early* → *earlier*. См. 188.3, 4, 6.

Наречия *well, badly* и *far* образуют сравнительную и превосходную степень не по общим правилам.

| | | |
|--------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>well</i> | <i>better</i> | <i>best</i> |
| <i>badly</i> | <i>worse</i> | <i>worst</i> |
| <i>far</i> | <i>farther/further</i> | <i>farthest/furthest</i> |

2 Making comparisons using adverbs (Сравнения с помощью наречий)

Для образования сравнений с помощью наречий или прилагательных употребляются те же **конструкции**:

a comparatives (see 127.2)

*You should drive **more carefully**.*
*They arrived **later than** I'd expected.*

b comparative + *and* + comparative (see 127.2)

*It snowed **more and more heavily** as the day went on.*

c *the* + comparative clause, *the* + comparative clause (see 127.2)

***The sooner** we leave, **the earlier** we'll arrive.*

d superlatives (see 127.3)

*She runs **the fastest** of all the girls.*

e *as... as* (see 128)

*I'm working **as fast as** I can.*
*Mike can't play the guitar **as/so well as** Sarah.*

EXERCISE 140A

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words in brackets. Add *than*, *the* or *as* where necessary.

Examples:

Of all those cars, the Alfa Romeo goes **the fastest**. (fast)

I don't work **as hard as** Sally **does**. (hard)

We finished the job a lot **more quickly than** we'd **expected**. (quickly)

1 She always arrives at work much _____ anyone **else**. (early)

5 He doesn't speak French **as** _____ his sister. (fluently)

2 The children are behaving far _____ they normally do. (badly)

6 The car went _____ and _____ down the hill. (fast)

3 Of all the animals in the world, which one lives _____? (long)

7 They normally play much _____ they did last **night**. (well)

4 Our new central heating system works a lot _____ our old one did. (efficiently)

8 Andrew is studying a lot _____ usual now that his exams are getting **closer**. (hard)

Note

– В неофициальном стиле часто употребляются объектные местоимения *me*, *him* после *than* и *as*, например: *You run faster than me*. *I can't swim as well as him*. В более официальном стиле употребляются субъектные местоимения *I*, *he* + verb, например: *You run faster than I do*. *I can't swim as well as he can*. Некоторые считают более правильной форму подлежащее + глагол.

41 Negative statements (Отрицательные утверждения)

Negative statements образуются с помощью *not* (стяжение *n't*) после вспомогательного глагола (например, *be, have, can*).

We're leaving. → *We aren't leaving.*
They've finished. → *They haven't finished.*
He can swim. → *He can't swim.*
I may go to the party. → *I may not go to the party.*

Negative statements также образуются с помощью *not/n't* после смыслового глагола *be* и после *have* в *have got*.

I'm hungry. → *I'm not hungry.*
She's got a car. → *She hasn't got a car.*

В present simple и past simple отсутствует вспомогательный глагол, поэтому употребляется *do/does* (в present simple) и *did* (в past simple) перед *not/n't*.

I smoke. → *I don't smoke.*
She lives in London. → *She doesn't live in London.*
We went out last night. → *We didn't go out last night.*

Обратите внимание, что после *do, does* и *did* глагол всегда стоит в форме infinitive без *to*, например, *smoke, live, go*.

Если употребляется два и более вспомогательных глагола, *not/n't* ставится после первого.

He's been working. → *He hasn't been working.*

Относительно отрицательных стяжений, например, *aren't (= are not), don't (= do not)*, см. 189.

EXERCISE 141 A

Make these statements into negatives.

Examples:

I'm going to apply for the job.

I'm not going to apply for the job.

She got up very early this morning.

She didn't get up very early this morning.

1 I like travelling by train.

2 He was late for the appointment.

3 We've got a lot of time.

4 I'm enjoying myself very much.

5 Robert works for a company in Manchester.

6 The weather is very nice today.

7 She can come to the party on Saturday.

8 I've been working too hard recently.

9 She's got a very interesting job.

10 They may have gone home.

11 We saw you at school yesterday.

12 The bank opens on Saturday afternoons.

13 My sister is going to work tomorrow.

14 The telephone has been repaired.

15 We play tennis every weekend.

16 I'll be seeing Martin tomorrow.

Note

- Отрицательная форма повелительного наклонения образуется путем употребления *not/n't* после *do*, например: *Don't shout*. См. 30.1.

- Другие отрицательные слова, например *never*, употребляются для образования отрицательного утверждения, например: *I never smoke*.

142 Yes/No questions (Вопросы Да/Нет)

1 **Yes/No** question - это вопрос, который требует ответа *Yes* или *No*.

'*Is Sue coming?*' 'Yes.' 'No.'

'*Have they finished?*' 'Yes.' 'No.'

2 Questions образуются путем изменения порядка подлежащего (например, *Sue, they, he*) и вспомогательного глагола (например, *be, have, can*).

Sue is coming. → *Is Sue coming?*

They have finished. → *Have they finished?*

You can cook. → **Can** you cook?

Questions со смысловым глаголом *be* образуются таким же образом.

They are English. → *Are they English?*

Questions с *have got* образуются путем изменения порядка подлежащего и *have*.

He has got a car. → *Has he got a car?*

Если в предложении два и более вспомогательных слов, изменяется порядок подлежащего и первого вспомогательного слова.

He has been waiting. → *Has he been waiting?*

В present simple и past simple отсутствует вспомогательный глагол, поэтому употребляется *do/does* в present simple questions и *did* в past simple questions.

They live here. → *Do they live here?*

She likes tennis. → *Does she like tennis?*

He enjoyed the film. → *Did he enjoy the film?*

Обратите внимание, что после *do, does* и *did* глагол всегда стоит в форме infinitive без *to*, например, *live, like, enjoy*.

EXERCISE 142A

Make **Yes/No** questions from these statements.

Examples:

She lives in London. *Does she live in London?*

You'd like a cup of coffee. *Would you like a cup of coffee?*

1 They played tennis yesterday.

2 He's doing his homework.

3 She's got a lot to do today.

4 They've bought a new car.

5 You know Simon Robinson.

6 He can play the piano and the guitar.

7 The shop closes at 6 o'clock.

8 You'd like to go swimming.

9 The job will be finished soon.

EXERCISE 142B

Complete the Yes/No questions, as in the examples.

Examples:

'I'll be at home this evening.' 'Will you be there at 7 o'clock?'

'He likes most sports.' 'Does he like tennis?'

1 They visited Milan.' '_____ Rome?'

2 'She bought some coffee.' '_____ any milk?'

3 'She's got two sisters.' '_____ any brothers?'

4 'I speak Italian.' '_____ Spanish?'

5 'They've gone out.' '_____ into town?'

6 'I can play the guitar.' '_____ the piano?'

7 'He works eight hours a day.' '_____ on Saturdays!'

8 'I'm going to the cinema.' '_____ on your own?'

Note

– Иногда при постановке вопросов Yes/No утверждение произносится с восходящей интонацией, например: *You're English?* Таким же образом часто ставится вопрос, когда говорящему что-то известно и он обращается за подтверждением. Таким же образом выражается удивление, например: *You're only 14? I thought you were at least 18!*

43 Wh- questions (Вопросы, начинающиеся с Wh-)

1 Wh- questions начинаются с вопросительных слов: *what, where, who, whose, when, why, which, how* (СМ. 145).

What is she reading?

Where do they live?

2 Questions образуются путем изменения порядка подлежащего (например, *she, they, we*) и вспомогательного глагола (например, *be, have, can*).

She is reading. → *What is she reading?*

They have gone. → *Where have they gone?*

We can start. → *When can we start?*

Questions со смысловым глаголом *be* образуются таким же образом.

He is here. → *Why is he here?*

Questions с *have got* образуются путем изменения порядка подлежащего и *have*.

He has got your key. → *Why has he got your key?*

Если имеется два и более вспомогательных глагола, изменяется порядок подлежащего и первого вспомогательного глагола.

He has been reading. → *What has he been reading?*

В present simple и past simple отсутствует вспомогательный глагол, поэтому употребляется *do/does* в present simple questions и *did* в past simple questions (но см. 144).

They start work. → *When do they start work?*

She goes to school. → *Where does she go to school?*

He arrived. → *When did he arrive?*

Обратите внимание, что после *do, does* и *did* глагол всегда стоит в форме infinitive без *to*, например, *start, go, arrive*.

EXERCISE 143A

Complete the questions, as in the examples.

Examples:

They went to the **station.** 'What time *did they go there?*'
 I've got some **money.** 'How much *have you got?*'

1 'We're going.' 'Where _____?'

2 'I'm worried.' 'Why _____ worried?'

3 'I was reading.' 'What _____?'

4 'He visits his grandparents.' 'How often _____ them?'

5 'They'll do it.' 'When _____ it?'

6 'She's been waiting outside.' 'How long _____ there?'

7 'I come from Australia.' 'Which part of Australia _____ from?'

8 'I've got a car.' 'What kind of car _____?'

9 'We bought some wine.' 'How much wine _____?'

10 'She likes pop music.' 'What kind of pop music _____?'

11 'We saw a film.' 'Which film _____?'

12 'She was talking to someone.' 'Who _____ to?'

144 Subject and object questions (Вопросы к подлежащему и дополнению)

1 С помощью *who* можно поставить вопрос к подлежащему или дополнению. Compare:

Asking about the object

SUBJECT OBJECT

Frank loves **someone.**

Who does Frank love?

SUBJECT OBJECT

Tina phoned **someone.**

Who did Tina phone?

SUBJECT OBJECT

Ken is helping **someone.**

Who is Ken helping?

Asking about the subject

SUBJECT OBJECT

Someone loves Frank.

Who loves Frank?

SUBJECT OBJECT

Someone phoned Tina.

Who phoned Tina?

SUBJECT OBJECT

Someone is helping Ken.

Who is helping Ken?

Когда с помощью *who* ставится вопрос к подлежащему, глагол имеет ту же форму, что и в утверждении, например, *loves*, *phoned*, *is helping*, а *do*, *does* не употребляется в present simple и *did* - в past simple.

- 2 *What, which* и *how many* можно также употреблять при постановке вопроса к подлежащему.

'What made that noise?' **'It** was the cat.'
'Which car goes the fastest?' **'The Mercedes.'**
'How many people went to the party?' **'About fifty.'**

EXERCISE 144A

Ask questions with *who* or *what*.

Examples:

She wants to see someone. *Who does she want to see?*

Someone wants to see her. *Who wants to see her?*

Someone told me. *Who told you?*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 I told someone. | 7 They helped someone. |
| 2 Someone wrote to me. | 8 Someone helped them. |
| 3 I wrote to someone. | 9 She was looking for someone. |
| 4 Something is making that noise. | 10 Someone was looking for her. |
| 5 He's making something. | 11 Something moved. |
| 6 Someone makes the decisions. | 12 Someone gave me the book. |

145 Question words (Вопросительные слова)

- 1 *What, who* and *which* (Что, кто и какой)
- a *What* с существительным (например, *what colour, what nationality*) или без существительного употребляется для того, чтобы поставить вопрос о предметах или вещах.
- What colour is your car?*
What nationality is Maria?
What is Ken doing?
What would you like to drink?
- What* иногда можно употреблять, чтобы поставить вопрос о людях.
- What actors do you like?*
- b *Who* без существительного употребляется, чтобы спросить о людях.
- Who is your favourite actor?*
Who told you the news?
- c *Which* с существительным или без него употребляется для того, чтобы спросить о предметах или людях, когда существует ограниченный выбор.
- Which colour do you like best - red, blue or yellow?*
Which actor do you prefer - Robert de Niro or Dustin Hoffman?
Which would you like - wine or beer?

Но очень часто *who* употребляется даже в случае, когда существует ограниченный выбор.

*Who do you prefer - Robert de Niro or **Dustin Hoffman** ?*

Which one часто употребляется вместо *who* или *what*, когда существует ограниченный выбор.

Which one do you prefer - Robert de Niro or Dustin Hoffman?

Which one do you want - the red one or the blue one?

Можно также употреблять *which of* . . .

Which of these colours do you like best?

2 Whose (Чей)

Whose употребляется с существительным или без него, чтобы поставить вопрос о принадлежности.

*'Whose book is this?' 'It's **Maria's**.'*

*'**Whose** are these?' 'They're **mine**.'*

3 Where, when, why and how (Где, когда, почему и как)

a Where употребляется, чтобы поставить вопрос о месте.

*'**Where** are you going on holiday?' 'To **Greece**.'*

*'**Where** does Sue live?' 'In **London**.'*

b When употребляется, чтобы поставить вопрос о времени.

*'**When** were you born?' 'In **19 70**.'*

*'**When** is she leaving?' 'At **2 o'clock**.'*

c Why употребляется, чтобы поставить вопрос о причине и цели.

*'**Why** are you late?' 'Because **my car broke down**.'*

*'**Why** did you go out?' 'To do **some shopping**.'*

d How употребляется, чтобы поставить вопрос 'каким образом?'

*'**How** did you get here?' 'I came **by bus**.'*

*'**How** do you spell your name?' 'D-A-V-I-S.'*

How употребляется в приветствиях и при знакомстве, а также, чтобы поставить вопрос о состоянии здоровья.

*'**How** are you?' 'I'm **fine**, thanks. And you?'*

*'**How** do you do?' '**How** do you do? I'm **pleased** to meet you.'*

*How is your mother now? Is she **feeling any better**?*

How употребляется с прилагательными (например, *old, tall*) и наречиями (например, *often, well*), а также с *much* и *many*.

*'**How** old are you?' 'I'm **18**.'*

*'**How** often do you go to the cinema?' 'About **once a week**.'*

How much money have you got with you?

How many brothers and sisters have you got?

EXERCISE 145A

Look at the answers and complete the questions using the question words in the box.

Example:

'*How old* are you?' 'I'm 20.'

| | | | | | | | |
|-----------|----------|----------|---------|----------|------|-----|-----|
| what | who | which | whose | where | when | why | how |
| how often | how much | how many | how old | how long | | | |

- 1 '____ do you do?' 'I'm a student.'
- 2 '____ do you live?' 'In London.'
- 3 '____ have you lived there?' 'For two years.'
- 4 '____ brothers and sisters have you got?' 'Two brothers and two sisters.'
- 5 '____ is your favourite pop singer?' 'Michael Jackson.'
- 6 '____ is your birthday?' 'November the 3rd.'
- 7 '____ do you play tennis?' 'About once a week.'
- 8 '____ does it cost to play tennis in Britain?' 'It's not very expensive.'
- 9 '____ bag is this?' 'I think it's Simon's.'
- 10 '____ do you usually get to work?' 'By car.'
- 11 '____ of those girls is your sister?' 'She's the one in the black skirt.'
- 12 '____ are you smiling?' 'Oh, I've just thought of something funny.'

146 Negative questions (Отрицательные вопросы)

- 1 Negative questions образуются с помощью стяжения *n't*, которое ставится после вспомогательного глагола (например, *be*, *have*, *can*).

Aren't you watching TV?

Haven't they finished yet?

Can't he swim?

Negative questions также образуются с помощью *n't*, которое ставится после смыслового глагола *be* и *have* в *have got*.

Aren't you Simon Robinson?

Haven't they got any money?

Если имеется два и более вспомогательных глагола, *n't* ставится после первого.

Haven't you been listening?

В present simple и past simple отсутствует вспомогательный глагол, поэтому употребляется *do/does* (в present simple) и *did* (в past simple) перед *n't*.

Don't you smoke?

Doesn't she live here any more?

Didn't they go to the cinema?

2 Порядок слов отличается, когда употребляется полная форма *not* вместо *n't*. Compare:

Are you not watching the TV?

Does she not live here any more?

Aren't you watching the TV?

Doesn't she live here any more?

Форма с *not* более официальна и не столь распространена.

3 Negative questions часто употребляются для выражения удивления, разочарования или раздражения.

Don't you smoke? I thought you did.

Hasn't she finished the letter yet? She's been typing it all morning!

Negative questions распространены в восклицаниях.

Isn't it a terrible day!

Negative questions также употребляются, когда мы полагаем, что знаем что-то и просим подтверждения.

'Aren't you Simon Robinson?' 'Yes, that's right.' 'I thought you were.'

4 Обратите внимание на значения *yes* и *no* в ответах на отрицательные вопросы.

'Didn't they see the film?' 'Yes.'(= Yes, they saw the film.) / *'No.'*(= No, they didn't see the film.)

EXERCISE 146A

Make negative questions using the contraction *n't* and the words in brackets.

Example:

I posted the letter to you over a week ago! *Haven't you received* (you | have | received it yet?)

1 Why **aren't** you eating your dinner? (you | do | like it?)

2 'Look! _____ (that | is | your brother over **there**?)' 'Oh, yes.'

3 'I really must go **now**.' 'But it's only half past **nine**—(you | can | stay a little longer?)

4 '_____ (she | is | a pretty **child**!)' 'Yes, lovely.'

5 _____ (I | have | met you somewhere before?) I'm sure I know your face.

6 'Sally is still in **bed**.' '_____ (she | is | going to work today?)

7 (_____ you | do | want to come to the concert tonight?) I thought you said you did.

147 Question tags

(Краткий общий вопрос в конце расчленённого вопроса)

1 Study the examples. [Рассмотрите примеры].

It's cold today, isn't it?

You haven't seen my keys, have you?

Question tag представляет собой выражение *isn't it?* и *have you?*, которое ставится в конце утверждения.

- 2 Question tags образуются с помощью вспомогательного глагола (например, **be, have, can**) + personal pronoun (например, *it, you*):

*You aren't listening to me, **are you** ?*
*You **haven't** seen my keys, **have you** ?*
*He **can** swim, **can't he** ?*

Question tag имеет тот же вспомогательный глагол, что и в главном предложении.

Если в главном предложении смысловый глагол *be*, в question tag употребляется *be*.

*It's cold today, **isn't it** ?*

Если в главном предложении имеется *have got*, в question tag употребляется *have*.

*You **haven't got** a stamp, **have you** ?*

Если имеется два и более вспомогательных глагола, в question tag используется первый.

*He **hasn't been** waiting long, **has he** ?*

Do/does используется в present simple question tags, а *did* в past simple question tags.

*You **don't** like football, **do you** ?*
*Simon lives in London, **doesn't he** ?*
*You saw the film, **didn't you** ?*

- 3 Обычно negative question tag употребляется с положительным утверждением, а positive question tag - с отрицательным. Compare:

| | |
|---|---|
| - | + |
|---|---|

*It **isn't** cold today, **is it** ?*
*You **don't** like football, **do you** ?*
*He **can't** swim, **can he** ?*

| | |
|---|---|
| + | - |
|---|---|

*It's cold today, **isn't it** ?*
*You **like** football, **don't you** ?*
*He **can** swim, **can't he** ?*

- 4 Значение question tag зависит от **интонации**:

- a Если ставится реальный вопрос, используется восходящая интонация (голос подымается вверх).

*You haven't seen my keys, **have you** ? (= Have you seen my keys?)*

- b Но если есть уверенность в ответе и вопрос ставится, чтобы получить согласие собеседника, используется нисходящая интонация (голос падает вниз).

*It's cold today, **isn't it** ? (= It's cold. **Don't** you agree?)*

- c Negative statement + positive question tag часто употребляется для того, чтобы попросить кого-то о чем-то, попросить помочь или предоставить информацию.

| | |
|---|---|
| - | + |
|---|---|

*You **couldn't** lend me some money, **could you** ?*
*You **don't** know where Peter lives, **do you** ?*

- 5 Обратите внимание:
- a Question tag для / *am* будет **aren't I?**
I'm right, aren't I?
- b После повелительного наклонения можно **употреблять** question tags **will/would you?** и **can/can't/could you?**, когда мы хотим, чтобы кто-то что-то сделал.
Switch on the light, will you?
Help me with these bags, could you?
После повелительного наклонения в отрицательной форме употребляется *will you?*
Don't forget to post my letter, will you?
- c После *let's* употребляется *shall we?* для внесения предложения.
Let's listen to some music, shall we?
- d В question tags после *somebody/someone*, *everybody/everyone* и *nobody/no one* употребляется *they*.
Somebody told you, didn't they?
No one phoned for me, did they?
- e В question tags после *nothing* употребляется *it*.
Nothing is wrong, is it?
- f В question tags может употребляться *there* как подлежащее.
There won't be any problems, will there?

EXERCISE 147A

Put a question tag at the end of each sentence. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Example:

It's a good restaurant.

It's a good restaurant, isn't it?

- 1 You don't like this music.
- 2 Robert isn't at work today.
- 3 I'm too late.
- 4 You haven't seen the newspaper.
- 5 Lynne speaks French and German.
- 6 They didn't go to the concert.
- 7 You'd like to have something to eat.

8 We're leaving tomorrow.

9 You couldn't do me a favour.

10 You don't know where Sarah is.

11 Switch on the light for me.

12 Don't forget to lock the door.

13 Nobody was watching the TV.

14 Everyone will be here soon.

15 Nothing terrible has happened.

16 There's plenty of time.

17 Pass me that magazine.

18 **Let's** have a cup of tea.

148 Reply questions (Ответные вопросы)

1 Study the examples.

'I'm going to bed now.' **'Are you? Oh, good night, then.'**
'He can't swim.' **'Can't he? I thought he could.'**

Мы часто отвечаем с помощью 'reply questions' - кратких вопросов, образованных из вспомогательного глагола + personal pronoun, например, *Are you?* и *Can't he?*

Эти reply questions не являются настоящими вопросами; они часто лишь свидетельствуют, что мы слушаем. Они могут выражать интерес, сочувствие, удивление или гнев, в зависимости от интонации.

2 В reply questions употребляются те же вспомогательные глаголы, что и в предложении, на которое мы отвечаем.

'I'm going to bed now.' **'Are you? Oh, good night, then.'**
'We've finished.' **'Have you?'**

Если предложение содержит смысловой глагол *be*, то он употребляется и в reply question.

'I'm hungry.' **'Are you? I'll make you something to eat.'**

Если в предложении имеется *have got*, то и в reply question употребляется *have*.

'I've got a headache.' **'Oh, have you? Do you want some aspirin?'**

Если в предложении два и более вспомогательных глагола, то в reply question употребляется первый.

'I've been waiting for an hour.' **'Have you?'**

Do/does употребляется в present simple reply questions, а *did* в past simple reply questions.

'I like football.' **'Do you?'**
'She lives in Brighton.' **'Does she?'**
'We saw the film.' **'Did you?'**

3 Положительные reply questions употребляются для ответа на положительные утверждения, а отрицательные - на отрицательные. Compare:

- -

+ +

'He can't swim.' **'Can't he?'** *'He can swim.'* **'Can he?'**
'I don't like football.' **'Don't you?'** *'I like football.'* **'Do you?'**

Можно также отвечать на утвердительное предложение, употребляя отрицательный ответный вопрос с падающей интонацией. Этим выражается эмфатическое согласие.

'It was a fantastic film.' **'Yes, wasn't it? I really enjoyed it.'**

EXERCISE 148A

You are sitting on a park bench when a tramp comes up to you and starts a conversation. [Вы сидите в парке на скамейке, когда к вам подходит бродяга и начинает разговор].

React to what the tramp says using reply questions.

Tramp: It's a lovely day.

You: Yes, *isn't it?*

Tramp: This is my bench, you know.

You: Oh, *is it?* I'm sorry, I didn't know.

Tramp: It's all right. You can sit here. You may not believe this, but I was very rich once. I was almost a millionaire.

You: ___1___? That's amazing.

Tramp: Yes, but I gave all my money away.

You: ___2___? What, all of it?

Tramp: Yes, every penny. I gave it away to my friends, to my relatives. But they didn't thank me.

You: ___3___?

Tramp: No. Still, I'm much happier now.

You: ___4___?

Tramp: Yes, I like the simple life. I like sleeping in the park under the stars.

You: ___5___? Don't you get cold?

Tramp: No, I don't feel the cold. I'm used to it.

You: ___6___? Really? Even in winter?

Tramp: Yes, I've been sleeping on this bench for over twenty years.

You: ___7___? Really? **That's** a long time.

Tramp: Yes, the only problem is my health. I've got a bad heart condition.

You: Oh, ___8___?

Tramp: Yes, I haven't got long to live.

You: ___9___?

Tramp: No, but I'm going to enjoy my last few weeks. I'm going to eat and drink well ... But food and drink are so expensive nowadays.

You: Yes, they are, aren't they?

Tramp: Yes, if I had some money, I'd go and have a good meal.

You: ___10___?

Tramp: Yes ... You couldn't let me have a few pounds, could you?



149 Indirect questions (Косвенные вопросы)

- 1 Когда у людей спрашивают информацию, иногда употребляют indirect questions, начинающиеся с выражений *Could you tell me ... ? Do you know ... ?* или *Can you remember ... ?* Compare:

QUESTION

Where is the station?

When will they finish the job?

INDIRECT QUESTION

Could you tell me where the station is?

Do you know when they will finish the job?

В indirect questions порядок слов такой же, как и в утверждении, например, *the station is, they will finish.*

- 2 Обратите внимание, что происходит в present simple и past simple indirect questions.

What time does the shop close?

What did she say?

Can you tell me what time the shop closes?

Can you remember what she said?

В indirect questions не употребляется вспомогательный глагол *do* (*do, does and did*).

- 3 Если нет вопросительного слова, например, *what, who, where*, можно употреблять *if* или *whether* для введения indirect question.

Is she at home now?

Can he speak Italian?

Do you know if she is at home now?

I wonder whether he can speak Italian?

EXERCISE 149A

Make these questions into indirect questions, beginning with the words in brackets.

Example:

Where is the Tourist Information office? (Could you tell me)

Could you tell me where the Tourist Information office is?

- 1 When does the last bus leave? (Can you tell me)
- 2 Is he over 18? (Do you know)
- 3 Can she speak French? (Do you know)
- 4 How does this machine work? (Can you explain)
- 5 Where are you going on holiday? (Have you decided)
- 6 What did he tell you? (Do you remember exactly)
- 7 Will you be here tomorrow? (Do you know)
- 8 Does she like horse riding? (Have you got any idea)
- 9 Did you switch off all the lights? (Can you remember)
- 10 Has everyone gone home? (Do you know)

Note

—В косвенных вопросах также происходят вышеупомянутые изменения, например: ***'Where do you live?'*** → *He asked me where I lived.* СМ. 78.

150 Short answers (Краткие ответы)

- 1 Мы часто отвечаем на *Yes/No* questions, используя short answers - краткие ответы, состоящие из подлежащего (например, *you, he, she*) + вспомогательный глагол (например, *be, have, can*).

'*Are you going out?*' 'Yes, I am.' (= Yes, I am going out)
'*Has he seen the film?*' 'No, he hasn't.' (= No, he hasn't seen the film)
'*Can she speak French?*' 'Yes, she can.' (= Yes, she can speak French)

Если в вопросе есть смысловый глагол *be*, то он употребляется в кратком ответе.

'*Are you angry?*' 'No, I'm not.'

Если в вопросе имеется *have got*, в кратком ответе употребляется *have*.

'*Have you got a car?*' 'No, I haven't.'

Если в вопросе имеется два и более вспомогательных глагола, то в кратком ответе употребляется первый.

'*Have you been working?*' 'Yes, I have.'

В кратких ответах *do/does* употребляется в present simple, а *did* - в past simple.

'*Do you know Kate?*' 'Yes, I do.'
'*Does Simon smoke?*' 'No, he doesn't.'
'*Did they see the film?*' 'Yes, they did.'

- 2 В ответ на утверждение можно также употреблять краткие ответы.

'*I'm not angry.*' 'Yes, you are.'
'*Sue lives in Western Road.*' 'No, she doesn't.'
'*Simon is very helpful.*' 'Yes, he is.'

EXERCISE 150A

Complete the short answers to these questions, as in the examples.

Examples:

'Have you ever been to the USA?' 'No, / haven't.'

- 1 'Can you play the guitar?' 'No, _____'
- 2 'Are you over 21?' 'Yes, _____'
- 3 'Did Andrew go to school yesterday?' 'Yes, _____'
- 4 'Do you smoke?' 'No, _____'
- 5 'Does Sarah like tennis?' 'Yes, _____'
- 6 'Have you got time for a coffee?' 'No, _____'
- 7 'Is Ken working today?' 'No, _____'
- 8 'Were you at home last night?' 'Yes, _____'
- 9 'Will you be seeing Martin tonight?' 'Yes, _____'
- 10 'Have they been living here very long?' 'No, _____'
- 11 'Has Lynne got any brothers or sisters?' 'No, _____'
- 12 'Does Simon want to go to university?' 'Yes, _____'

EXERCISE 150B

All these statements are untrue. Disagree with them using short answers.

Examples:

'Rio de Janeiro is the capital of Brazil.' *'No, it isn't.'*
'Marconi didn't invent the radio.' *'Yes, he did.'*

- 1 'Penguins can fly.'
- 2 'The earth doesn't move around the sun.'
- 3 'Shakespeare was born in London.'
- 4 'The population of the world isn't increasing.'
- 5 'The Second World War ended in 1940.'
- 6 'Spaghetti grows on trees.'

151 *So/neither am I, so/neither do I, so/neither can I, etc*
(*И я также/ Ия также не и т.д.*)

1 Study these examples.

'I'm going out later.' **'So am I.'** (= I, also, am going out later.)
He can play the guitar, and so can I. (= ... I, also, can play the guitar.)
'I'm not feeling very well.' **'Neither am I.'** (= I, also, am not feeling very well.)
She can't drive, and neither can I. (= ... I, also, can't drive.)

So (= 'также') и *neither* (= 'также не') может употребляться перед вспомогательным глаголом (например, *be, can*) + subject (например, *I, he*).

В этой конструкции может также употребляться смысловой глагол *be* и *have* в *have got*.

'I'm thirsty.' **'So am I.'**
You haven't got any money and neither have I.

Если имеется два и более вспомогательных глагола, то после *so* и *neither* употребляется первый.

'I've been studying.' **'So have I.'**
Do/does в present simple, а *did* в past simple употребляются после *so* и *neither*.

'I like tennis.' **'So do I.'**
I don't want anything to eat, and neither does Sue.
I went to the concert last week. **'So did I.'**

2 Вместо *neither* можно употреблять *nor*.

I haven't got a car. **'Nor/Neither have I.'**

3 *Not ... either* может употребляться вместо *neither* и *nor*.

'I'm not cold.' **'Neither am I./Nor am I. /I'm not either.'**
I can't swim, and neither can you. /and nor can you. /and you can't either.

4 (*N*)*either* имеет два варианта произношения: /'(n)aɪðə(r)/ или /'(n)i:ðə(r)/.

EXERCISE 151A

Agree with these statements using 'So ...I' or 'Neither ...I'.

Examples:

'I don't like noisy people.' 'Neither do I.'

'I'm a very tidy person.' 'So am I.'

1 'I'm not very interested in football.'

2 'I enjoy travelling.'

3 'I've never been to Australia.'

4 'I'd like to go there one day.'

5 'I haven't got a very good memory.'

6 'I haven't been working very hard recently.'

7 'I often forget things.'

8 'I went to bed quite late last night.'

9 'I should go to bed earlier.'

10 'I always tell the truth.'

11 'I'd rather die than tell a lie.'

12 'I didn't tell lies even when I was a child.'

Note

– Относительно *either* и *neither* см. также 119.2.

152 / think so, I hope so, I expect so, etc

(Я так полагаю, я надеюсь на это, я рассчитываю на это и т.д.)

1 Study the examples.

'Is she ill?' 'I think so.' (= Я полагаю, что она больна.)

'Do you think the weather will be nice tomorrow?' 'I hope so.' (= Я надеюсь, что погода будет прекрасной.)

'Do you think you'll come to the party?' 'I expect so.' (= Я рассчитываю, что приду на вечеринку.)

So употребляется после таких глаголов, как *think, hope, expect, imagine* и *suppose*, с тем, чтобы избежать повторения того, что было сказано ранее.

So также употребляется таким образом в выражении *be afraid*.

'Is she seriously ill?' 'I'm afraid so.'

2 Отрицательную форму с глаголами *suppose, imagine* и *expect* можно образовать двумя способами:

subject + verb + *not*

I suppose *not*.

I imagine *not*.

I expect *not*.

subject + *do not* + verb + *so*

I *don't* suppose *so*.

I *don't* imagine *so*.

I *don't* expect *so*.

Hope и *be afraid* всегда употребляется с ... *not* (не *do not ... so*).

'Do you think you will be late tonight?' 'I hope *not*.' (= Я надеюсь, что не опоздаю.)

'Did he pass the exam?' 'I'm afraid *not*.' (= Боюсь, он не сдал.)

Обычно *think* употребляется с *do not ... so*.

'Is she ill?' 'I *don't* think *so*.' (= Я не думаю, что она больна.)

EXERCISE 152A

Give short answers using the words in brackets. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Examples:

'Do you think it will be a good **concert**?' 'Yes, I hope so.' (Yes | hope)

'Do you think we'll be **late**?' 'No, I hope not.' (No | hope)

- 1 'Are you going to sell your **car**?' (Yes | think)
- 2 'Will you give him the **money**?' (Yes | suppose)
- 3 'Have your parents heard the **news**?' (No | think)
- 4 'Will you be able to help **us**?' (No | afraid)
- 5 'Is she going to apply for the **job**?' (Yes | imagine)
- 6 'Do you think they will come with **us**?' (No | expect)
- 7 'Will he have to go into **hospital**?' (Yes | afraid)
- 8 'Will you have time to go shopping this **afternoon**?' (No | suppose)
- 9 'Do you think everything will be all **right**?' (Yes | expect)
- 10 'Does he know about the accident **yet**?' (Yes | imagine)

153 Defining relative clauses with *who*, *that* and *which*

(Определяющие относительные придаточные предложения с *who*, *that* и *which*)

1 Рассмотрите примеры:

/ spoke to the woman who owns the hotel.

Did you see the letter that came this morning?

Who owns the hotel и *that came this morning* являются 'defining relative clauses'. В ЭТИХ предложениях речь идет о том, какого человека или какой предмет имел в виду говорящий (например, *who owns the hotel* определяет, какая женщина; а *that came this morning* определяет, какое письмо).

2 По отношению к людям употребляется *who*. Compare:

/ spoke to the woman. She owns the hotel.

The man was very nice. He interviewed me.

I spoke to the woman who owns the hotel.

The man who interviewed me was very nice.

По отношению к предметам употребляется *that*. Compare:

Did you see the letter? It came this morning.

The keys have disappeared. They were on this table.

Did you see the letter that came this morning?

The keys that were on this table have disappeared.

Обратите внимание, что *who* и *that* заменяет местоимение.

/ spoke to the woman who owns the hotel. (Not: I spoke to the woman who she owns the hotel.)

3 *Which* может употребляться вместо *that* (говоря о предметах) в defining relative clause.

*Did you see the letter **which** came this morning?*

*The keys **which** were on this table have disappeared.*

В неофициальном стиле возможно употребление *that* вместо *who* (говоря о людях).

*/ spoke to the woman **that** owns the hotel.*

4 Обратите внимание, что можно опустить *who*, *that* и *which*, когда они являются дополнениями в defining relative clauses, например: *He's the man (who) we met last night.* См. 154.

EXERCISE 153A

Join each pair of sentences using *who* for people and *that* for things. Examples:

That's the woman. She works in the post office.

*That's the woman **who** works in the post office.*

The man wasn't English. He spoke to us.

*The man **who** spoke to us wasn't English.*

1 He's the man. He painted my house.

2 What is the name of the boy? He telephoned you.

3 What's happened to the money? It was on my desk.

4 They're the people. They offered Sue a job.

5 The car has now been found. It was stolen.

6 She's the person. She gives me a lift to work every day.

7 The lock has now been repaired. It was broken.

8 Most of the people are very nice. They work in Peter's office.

154 Leaving out *who*, *that* and *which* in defining relative clauses (Пропуск *who*, *that* и *which* в определяющих относительных придаточных предложениях)

1 *Who*, *that* и *which* может быть подлежащим (subject) или дополнением (object) в defining relative clause. Compare:

*Marianne is the girl **who** invited us to the party.*

who is the subject: *she* invited us to the party

*Marianne is the girl **who** we met last night.*

who is the object: we met *her* last night

2 *Who*, *that* или *which* часто опускаются, когда они являются дополнениями в defining relative clauses.

Marianne is the girl we met last night. (Мы встретили ее вчера вечером.)

Have you seen the book I put on this table? (Я положил ее на этот стол.)

- 3 Но нельзя опускать *who, that* или *which*, когда они являются подлежащими в этих предложениях.

Marianne is the girl who invited us to the party. (Not: ~~Marianne is the girl invited us ...~~)
Have you seen the book that was on this table. (Not: ~~Have you seen the book was on this table?~~)

- 4 Вместо *who* можно употреблять *whom* (по отношению к людям), когда это слово является дополнением глагола в relative clause.

/ *met a woman whom I know.* (I know her)

Но слово *whom* - достаточно формальное и не очень распространенное в повседневной речи. Вместо него можно употреблять *who* или *that* (или их опустить).

/ *met a woman (who) I know.*

EXERCISE 154A

Complete the sentences using *who* for people and *that* for things; if it is possible to leave out *who* or *that*, write (*who*) or (*that*) - in brackets.

Examples:

I can't find the envelopes (*that*) I bought this morning.

Have you seen the film *that* is on TV tonight?

- 1 John Murray is the man _____ owns the Grand Hotel.
- 2 The man _____ we spoke to wasn't very nice.
- 3 This is the sweater _____ I bought on Saturday.
- 4 What is the name of the company _____ you work for?

5 A **bi-lingual** person is someone _____ can speak two languages equally well.

6 Who's that boy _____ Sally is dancing with?

7 Are these all the letters _____ came in this morning's post?

8 Have you found the money _____ you lost?

9 The people _____ used to live in that house have moved.

10 I don't like films _____ are very violent.

155 Defining relative clauses *with whose, where, when and why/that* (Определяющие относительные придаточные предложения с *whose, where, when* и *why/that*)

1 *Whose* (Чей)

Whose употребляется в relative clauses (вместо *his, her, their* и т.д.) для выражения принадлежности. Compare:

I've got a friend. His brother is an actor.

*They're ~~thè~~ people. **Their** house caught fire.*

I've got a friend whose brother is an actor.

They 're the people whose house caught fire.

Не смешивайте *whose* и *who's*; *who's* - *who is* или *who has*.

*I've got a friend **who's** at university.* (= *who is at university*)

- 2 **Where, when and why/that** (Где, когда и почему/что)
- a *Where* употребляется (для мест), а *when* (для времени) в relative clauses.
The factory where I work is going to close down.
Is there a time when we can meet?
- b После слова *reason* можно употреблять *why* или *that* в relative clauses.
Is there a reason why/that you want to leave now?
- c *When, why* и *that* можно опустить.
Is there a time we can meet?
Is there a reason you want to leave now?
Where также можно опустить, если употребляется предлог.
The hotel we stayed at was very small.

EXERCISE 155A

Answer the questions using *whose*, as in the example.

Example:

- 1 *She's the woman whose husband teaches at Annie's school.*
- 1 Who's Mrs Barnes? (Her husband teaches at Annie's school.)
- 2 **Who's** Jim Owen? (His flat was broken into.)
- 3 Who are Mr and Mrs Peters? (Their children were injured in the accident.)
- 4 Who's that girl? (Her brother works in the post office.)
- 5 Who are those people? (Their credit cards were stolen.)
- 6 Who are you? (My mother phoned the police.)

EXERCISE 155B

Complete the sentences using *where, when* or *why/that*.

Example:

That is the church *where* Ken and Kate were married.

- 1 Did they tell you the reason_____they wanted you to do that?
- 2 What's the name of the restaurant_____you had lunch?
- 3 I can remember a time_____there was no television.
- 4 Is that the hospital_____you had your operation?
- 5 **I don't** understand the reason_____he was late.
- 6 Do you remember the time_____your car broke down on the motorway?

156 Defining and non-defining relative clauses

(**Определяющие и не определяющие относительные придаточные предложения**)

- 1 **'Defining'** relative clauses указывают на существительное: в этих предложениях речь идет о лице, предмете и т.д., которых имеет в виду говорящий. См. 153 и 154.

/ spoke to the woman who owns the hotel. (who owns the hotel tells us which woman)
The house which Sue has bought is over 100 years old. (which Sue has bought tells us which house)

- 2 В 'non-defining' relative clauses не говорится, какое лицо, предмет и т.д. имеет в виду говорящий; эти предложения дают больше информации о лице или предмете уже известных.

Ken's mother, who is 69, has just passed her driving test. (who is 69 does not tell us which woman; we already know that it is Ken's mother)

Sue's house, which is in the centre of town, is over 100 years old. (which is in the centre of town does not tell us which house; we already know that it is Sue's house)

Non-defining clauses более распространены в официальном стиле, особенно в письменном. Когда эти предложения записываются, ставится запятая (,) в начале предложения (и часто в конце).

Last weekend I met Sue, who told me she was going on holiday soon.

Frank Morris, who is one of my best friends, has decided to go and live in France.

- 3 В non-defining clauses всегда употребляется *who* по отношению к людям и *which* по отношению к предметам; в этих предложениях нельзя употреблять *that*.

She gave me the key, which I put in my pocket. (Not: ~~She gave me the key, that I put in my pocket.~~)

В non-defining clauses нельзя опускать *who* или *which*.

My uncle John, who lives in Manchester, is coming to visit me next week. (Not: My ~~uncle John, lives in Manchester, is coming ...)~~

She gave me the key, which I put in my pocket. (Not: ~~She gave me the key, I put in my pocket.~~)

EXERCISE 156A

Add commas (,) where necessary.

Example:

Robert's parents . who are both **retired** ____
now live in Spain.

- 1 The people ____ who live next door ____
helped us to move the furniture.
- 2 Have you still got the money ____ that I gave
you?
- 3 Sydney ____ which has a population of more
than three million ____ is **Australia's** largest
city.
- 4 **Peter's** sister ____ who **I've** known for years
____ is a very **nice** person.
- 5 We saw Sue last night with that man ____
who works in the library.
- 6 The chair ____ that was broken ____ has now
been repaired.

EXERCISE 156B

Complete the sentences using *who*, *that* or *which*, but only where necessary - leave a blank if possible. In one sentence two answers are possible.

Example:

Is that the same **song** ____ we heard yesterday?

- 1 Maria, ____ has only been in Britain for a few
weeks, speaks excellent English.
- 2 Who was the girl ____ you were speaking to
just now?
- 3 My sister, ____ wasn't feeling very hungry,
didn't want to go to the restaurant.
- 4 **I've** lost all the money ____ you gave me.
- 5 This is the letter ____ came in today's post.
- 6 Mr and Mrs Woods, ____ live next door to us,
have gone on holiday.
- 7 Brighton, ____ is a tourist centre on the south
coast of England, is about 85 kilometres from
London.

157 Non-defining relative clauses with *whose*, *where*, *when* and *whom* (Не определяющие относительные придаточные предложения с *whose*, *where*, *when* и *whom*)

Whose, *where* и *when* (см. 155) могут употребляться в non-defining relative clauses.

Tina Harris, whose brother is the actor Paul Harris, is a good friend of mine.

We visited a town called Christchurch, where we had lunch in an Italian restaurant.

We're going on holiday in September, when the weather isn't so hot.

Whom также может употребляться вместо *who*, когда это слово является дополнением глагола в non-defining clause (см. 154.4).

Sarah Ross, who/whom you met in Madrid last summer, will be at the party tonight.

EXERCISE 157A

Peter is going to the United States next year. Complete what he says about his visit using *whose*, *who/whom*, *where* and *when*.

'I'm going to the States at the beginning of January when, hopefully, it won't be too cold. I'm flying to New York, _____(1)_____ my friend Brian has been living for the past two years. I'm really looking forward to meeting his American girlfriend Cyndy, _____(2)_____ I met when they both came over to London last year. Cyndy, _____(3)_____ brother is quite a famous jazz musician, has promised to take me to Greenwich Village, _____(4)_____ there are a lot of jazz clubs. After two weeks in New York, I'll take the Greyhound bus to Cleveland, Ohio. I'm going to stay there with my Aunt Jackie, _____(5)_____ son - my cousin Abe - I met last summer in England. Then, if I have enough money, I'll travel south to New Orleans. I hope to get there by the first two weeks of February, _____(6)_____ the Mardi Gras Festival takes place.'

158 Relative clauses with prepositions + *which* and *whom* (Относительные придаточные предложения с предлогами + *which* и *whom*)

1 Defining clauses

Перед *which* и *whom* в defining relative clause может употребляться предлог, например, *in which*, *with whom*.

That's the town in which he was born.

The people with whom I stayed were very kind.

Но в повседневной речи более обычным является положение предлога в конце предложения и пропуск местоимения *which*, *whom* и т.д..

That's the town he was born in.

The people I stayed with were very kind.

2 Non-defining clauses

- a В официальном стиле можно также употреблять предлог перед *which* и *whom* в non-defining relative clause.

She's studying chemistry, about which I know very little.

Mr and Mrs Morris, with whom we went on holiday, live in Bristol.

Но в повседневной речи более обычным является положение предлога в конце предложения и употребление *who* вместо *whom*.

She's studying chemistry, which I know very little about.

Mr and Mrs Morris, who we went on holiday with, live in Bristol.

Обратите внимание, что нельзя опускать местоимение *which*, *who* и т.д. в non-defining clause.

- b Обратите внимание на конструкцию *some of/many of/much of/none of/all of/* и т.д. + *which/whom*.

A number of my friends, some of whom you've met before, will be at the party.

He gave me a lot of advice, much of which was very useful.

EXERCISE 158A

Join each pair of sentences without using *who*, *whom* or *which*.

Examples:

The restaurant was in West Street. We went to it.

The restaurant we went to was in West Street.

The woman is a good friend of mine. I borrowed the money from her.

The woman I borrowed the money from is a good friend of mine.

1 The man is Sue's cousin. I introduced you to him.

2 The hotel overlooked the sea. We stayed at it.

3 The shop is closed. I bought the shoes from it.

4 The people like him very much. He works with them.

EXERCISE 158B

Join each pair of sentences using (i) *who* or *which*, and (ii) a preposition + *whom* or *which*, as in the example.

Example:

Mr Jones is a teacher at Annie's school. I was talking to him a moment ago.

(i) *Mr Jones, who I was talking to a moment ago, is a teacher at Annie's school.*

(ii) *Mr Jones, to whom I was talking a moment ago, is a teacher at Annie's school.*

1 Peter's party is next Saturday evening. We are all invited to it.

2 Mr Mason apologized for the mistake. We complained to him.

3 The film *Family Life* is showing next week. I've heard good reports about it.

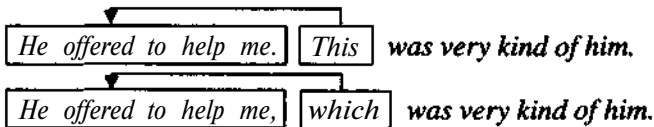
EXERCISE 158C

A woman is complaining about a man she really dislikes. Complete what the woman says using the words in brackets and *of which* or *of whom*.

'He's always giving people lots of advice, much of which (much) is complete nonsense. He also talks about all the famous people he says he knows, _____(1)_____ (most) I'm sure he's never even met. He boasts about the hundreds of books he says he's read, _____(2)_____ (many) I'm sure he's never opened in his life. He talks about his 'three lovely children', _____(3)_____ (all) are, in fact, as horrible as their father. He talks constantly about what a good son he is, and how often he visits his parents, _____(4)_____ (neither) ever actually see him. And what else? Well, he spends lots of money, _____(5)_____ (none) is his, and drives two big cars, _____(6)_____ (both) belong to his wife!'

159 Which referring to a whole clause
(Which, относящееся ко всему предложению)

В придаточных предложениях может употребляться *which*, которое относится ко всему предложению. Compare:



which = the fact that he offered to help me

EXERCISE 159A

Join each idea in A with the most suitable idea in B using *which*.

Example:

1 She lent me the money, which was very generous of her.

A

- 1 She lent me the money.
- 2 They had to wait for over an hour.
- 3 There was a lot of snow on the roads.
- 4 I knew you didn't want to go to the concert.
- 5 There was a bus strike.
- 6 There was a delicious smell coming from the kitchen.

B

- This made driving dangerous.
- It made us all feel very hungry.
- That is why I didn't buy you a ticket.
- It meant I had to take a taxi.
- This annoyed them very much.
- This was very generous of her.

60 Time: *when, as, while, as soon as, before, after, until* (Время: *когда, как, пока, как можно ... , перед, после, до*)

- 1** Когда нужно выразить, что действия происходят одновременно, можно употреблять *when, as, while*.
When I was watching TV, the telephone rang.
As they were walking down the street, they saw Sue.
I often listen to the radio while I'm having breakfast.
- Обратите внимание, что обычно используется *when, as* или *while* + форма continuous (например, *when I was watching, as they were walking, while I'm having*) для более продолжительных действий.
- Часто употребляется (*just*) *as* для двух непродолжительных действий, которые происходят одновременно, например: *The baby started crying (just) as I got into bed!*
- 2** Когда необходимо выразить, что действия происходят одно за другим, можно употреблять *when, as soon as, before, after*.
When I had finished breakfast, I went out.
I'll phone you as soon as I get home.
The train had left before they arrived at the station.
After he left school, he started working in a bank.
- Обратите внимание, что когда речь идет о будущем, обычно употребляется present simple после *when, as soon as, before* и т.д., например: *I'll phone you as soon as I get home.* СМ. 22.
- 3** *When* может иметь то же значение, что и *while/as, before* or *after*.
When/While/As *was watching TV, the telephone rang.*
*The train had left **when/before** they arrived at the station.*
When/After he left school, he started working in a bank.
- 4** *Until* (или *till*) употребляется в значении 'до того времени, когда'.
We waited until she arrived.
I knew nothing about it until you told me.

EXERCISE 160A

Choose the correct answer.

Example:

I'm not going out now. I'll wait ~~until~~/~~when~~ it stops raining.

1 **While/When** I had locked all the doors, I went to bed.

2 I fell off the chair *while/until* I was changing the light bulb.

3 They waited **when/until** everybody was there before/until they started the meeting.

4 My grandfather worked hard all his life **until/when** he retired.

5 I usually get up *before/as soon as* I wake up.

6 It started to rain **until/just as** we got to the park.

7 I broke my leg *as soon as/when* I was skiing.

8 The film had already started **when/just as** we sat down in the cinema.

161 Contrast: *although, even though, though, in spite of, despite, while, whereas, however* (Противопоставление: *несмотря на то, хотя, однако, несмотря на, вопреки, несмотря на, пока; в то время как, тогда как, в то время как, однако*)

1 *Although* и *even though* можно употреблять для введения противопоставления. После *although* и *even though* употребляется предложение с подлежащим и глаголом.

Although she doesn't enjoy her job, she works hard.

She passed the exam, although she hadn't studied for it.

Even though they were late, they didn't hurry.

Even though более эмфатично, чем *although*.

Though вместо *although* может употребляться, особенно, в неофициальном стиле.

Though they were late, they didn't hurry.

Though также употребляется в значении 'however' [однако] (see 5 below) в конце предложения.

The room is very small. It's quite comfortable though.

2 *In spite of* или *despite* может употребляться при противопоставлении. После *in spite of/despite* может употребляться существительное или *-ing* форма.

In spite of the bad weather, we went out for a walk.

Despite being late, they didn't hurry.

Говорят также *in spite of/despite the fact (that) ...*

In spite of the fact that the weather was bad, we went out for a walk.

They didn't hurry despite the fact that they were late.

3 Сравните *in spite of/despite* и *although*:

In spite of the rain/Despite the rain, we started to play tennis.

Although it was raining, we started to play tennis.

4 Противопоставления двух понятий можно достичь, употребляя *while* и *whereas*.

He is quiet and shy, while/whereas his sister is lively and talkative.

5 Противопоставление можно также выразить, употребляя наречие *however* с двумя предложениями.

She said she didn't want to change her job. However, she may change her mind.

EXERCISE 161 A

Rephrase the sentences beginning with the words in brackets.

Example:

She has plenty of money, but she is very mean. (although)

Although she has plenty of money, she is very mean.

1 They have a car, but they rarely use it. (though)

2 He was innocent, but he was sent to prison. (although)

3 He has a number of relatives living nearby, but he never visits them. (even though)

4 She never takes any kind of exercise, but she is quite fit and healthy. (even though)

EXERCISE 161B

Rephrase the sentences using the words in brackets and a noun, as in the examples.

Examples:

They went out for a walk, even though the weather was bad. (despite)

They went out for a walk despite the bad weather.

She managed to write, even though her hand was **injured**. (in spite of)

She managed to write in spite of her injured hand.

1 All the trains were on time, even though the snow was **heavy**. (despite)

2 Our coach didn't arrive late, even though the traffic was **terrible**. (in spite of)

3 A lot of people buy those houses, even though the prices are **high**. (despite)

EXERCISE 161C

Rephrase the sentences using the words in brackets and (i) an *-ing* form, and (ii) *the fact (that) ...*

Example:

He stayed up late, even though he was very **tired**. (despite)

(i) *He stayed up late despite being very tired.*

(ii) *He stayed up late despite the fact (that) he was very tired.*

1 I didn't buy the car, even though I had the **money**. (despite)

2 He stayed outside in the cold weather, even though he felt **ill**. (despite)

3 People continue to smoke, even though they know the **dangers**. (in spite of)

EXERCISE 161 D

Sally and Peter are good friends, but they are very different.

Compare Sally and Peter. Join each idea in A with the most suitable idea in B. Make sentences using *while/whereas*.

Example:

1 *She likes hard work, while/whereas he's quite lazy.*

- | A | B |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 She likes hard work . | He prefers classical music. |
| 2 She likes jazz and pop music. | He prefers staying at home. |
| 3 She likes going out a lot. | He can be rather mean. |
| 4 She's very practical. | He's quite lazy. |
| 5 She's very generous. | He's quite idealistic. |

162 Reason and result: because, because of, as, since, so, as a result, therefore, so/such ... (that)

(Причина и результат: потому что, так как, из-за, вследствие, как, с тех пор, как результат, следовательно, такой ... что ...)

1 Reason: because, because of, as, since

a *Because* употребляется перед придаточным предложением с подлежащим и глаголом.

He ran to the station because he was late.

We didn't go out because it was raining.

Because употребляется перед существительным.

We didn't go out because of the rain.

We arrived late because of the traffic.

b *As* и *since* употребляются в значении 'because' [потому что] перед придаточным предложением; *as* и *since* часто ставятся в начале предложения.

As it was raining, we didn't go out.

Since you haven't got any money, I'll lend you some.

2 Result: so, as a result, therefore, so/such ... (that)

a *So, as a result* и *therefore* могут употребляться для выражения результата.

So (с или без *and*) употребляется перед придаточным предложением.

He was late (and) so he ran to the station.

And as a result и *and therefore* употребляются перед придаточным предложением.

It was raining hard and as a result we didn't go out.

I failed my driving test the first time and therefore I took it again.

Therefore может также следовать перед глаголом, например, ... *and I therefore took it again.*

As a result и *therefore* употребляются также в начале нового предложения.

It was raining hard. As a result, we didn't go out.

I failed my driving test the first time. Therefore, I took it again.

Употребление *therefore* характерно для официального стиля.

b *So/such ... (that)* ... может также употребляться, когда речь идет о результатах чего-то.

The film was so good (that) I went to see it again.

It was such a beautiful afternoon (that) we decided to go out for a walk.

So ставится перед прилагательным и наречием, например, *so good, so well*, в то время как *such* употребляется перед существительным (с прилагательным или без него), например, *such a beautiful afternoon, such an idiot*. См. 139.1.

EXERCISE 162A

Complete the sentences in A using *because* or *because of* and an idea from B. Use each idea in B only once.

Example:

1 *He phoned the police because he 'd lost his wallet.*

| A | B |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1 He phoned the police _____ | his bad leg |
| 2 I didn't have any lunch _____ | I thought it might rain |
| 3 Our plane was delayed _____ | I wasn't hungry |
| 4 He went to Paris _____ | he'd lost his wallet |
| 5 I took an umbrella _____ | the fog |
| 6 He couldn't run very fast _____ | he wanted to learn French |

EXERCISE 162B

Choose the correct answers.

Example:

I haven't got much money *as/so* I can't afford a new car.

- 1 *As/As a result* it was such a beautiful day, we decided to have a picnic.
- 2 It was his birthday *because/so* we decided to buy him a present.
- 3 *As a result/Since* all the seats on the train were taken, we had to stand.
- 4 The banks were closed and *as a result/because* we couldn't get any money.
- 5 I didn't find the book very interesting and *so/as* I didn't finish it.
- 6 We couldn't drive across the bridge *as a result/because* it was closed.
- 7 She had the best qualifications and she *so/therefore* got the job.

EXERCISE 162C

Join each pair of sentences using *so/such ... (that)*.

Example:

He's got a very good memory. He never needs to write anything down.

He's got such a good memory (that) he never needs to write anything down.

- 1 It was a very warm evening. We had dinner outside in the garden.
- 2 He was very nervous. He couldn't eat anything.
- 3 Our neighbours' party was very noisy. We couldn't sleep.
- 4 The restaurant was very crowded. They couldn't find anywhere to sit down.
- 5 We were all having a good time. We didn't want to stop.

63 Purpose: *to, in order to, so as to, for, so that* (Цель: *с целью, для того чтобы*)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Для выражения цели можно употреблять <i>to infinitive</i> - почему кто-то делает что-то.</p> <p><i>I went to Paris to learn French.</i></p> <p><i>I'm going out to do some shopping.</i></p> |
|---|---|

В более официальном стиле употребляется *in order to* или *so as to*.

I went to Paris in order to learn French.

We got up early so as to have plenty of time.

В отрицательных предложениях обычно употребляется *in order not to* или *so as not to* (не одно *not to*).

We got up early so as not to be late. / We got up early in order not to be late. (Not: ~~We~~got up ~~early~~ not to ~~be~~ late.)

- 2** *For* может употребляться для выражения чьей-то цели, но лишь тогда, когда после него следует существительное (не глагол).

We went to a restaurant for lunch.

I'm going out for a walk.

For + *-ing* форма употребляется для выражения цели или функции предмета.

A thermometer is used for measuring temperature.

We use this knife for cutting bread.

- 3** *So (that)* также употребляется для выражения цели. Эта конструкция часто употребляется с *can, can't, will* или *won't*.

I'll give you a key so (that) you can unlock the door.

We'll leave early so (that) we won't arrive late.

So (that) с *could (n't)* и *would(n't)* часто употребляется для выражения прошедшего времени.

I gave you a key so (that) you could unlock the door.

We left early so (that) we wouldn't arrive late,

EXERCISE 163A

Answer each question in A by making a sentence using *to* or *for* and the most suitable idea in B.

Examples:

1 *I'm going to the library to return a book.*

2 *She's gone to the greengrocer's for some potatoes.*

A

1 Why are you going to the library?

2 Why has she gone to the greengrocer's?

3 Why is he taking the car to the garage?

4 Why did he phone you?

5 Why do you get up early every day?

6 Why have they gone to the pub?

B

go jogging

a drink

invite me to his party

some potatoes

return a book

have it serviced

EXERCISE 163B

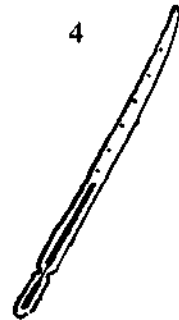
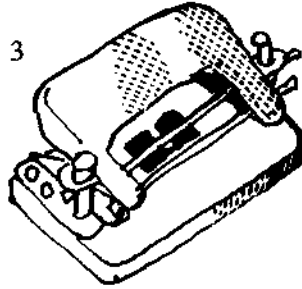
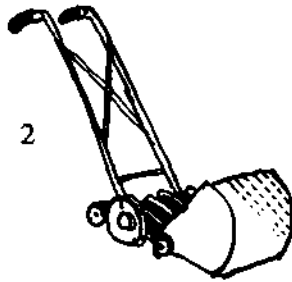
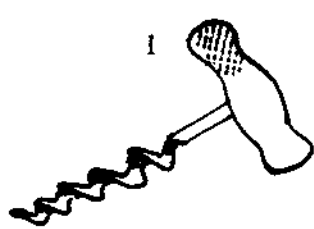
What are these things used for? Make sentences using the words in the box.

Example:



| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|----------------|
| cut grass | make holes in paper | show direction |
| take corks out of bottles | measure temperature | |

It's used for showing direction.



EXERCISE 163C

Join these ideas using the words in brackets.

Example:

I wrote down the number. I didn't want to forget it. (so as not to)

I wrote down the number so as not to forget it.

- 1 He's started walking to work. He wants to get more exercise, (so as to)
- 2 The government are going to increase taxes. They want to raise more money, (in order to)
- 3 We took a map with us on the journey. We didn't want to get **lost**. (so as not to)
- 4 They stopped work at 1 o'clock. They wanted to have **lunch**. (in order to)

EXERCISE 163D

Join the sentences using *so that* and the words in brackets.

Example:

She got up early. She didn't want to be late for work. (wouldn't)

She got up early so that she wouldn't be late for work.

- 1 He switched on the light. He wanted to see what he was **doing**. (could)
- 2 I turned down the music. I didn't want to disturb the **neighbours**. (wouldn't)
- 3 She repeated everything. She wanted us to remember it. (would)
- 4 She's saving money. She wants to buy a new car. (can)

164 Purpose: *in case* (Цель: в случае)

1

In case употребляется для выражения действий, которые выполняются, чтобы быть готовым или быть в безопасности, поскольку может случиться что-то еще.

Take an umbrella with you in case it rains. (... because perhaps it will rain.)

I'll take some food with me in case I'm hungry on the journey. (... because perhaps I will be hungry on the journey.)

I'll write down the telephone number in case I forget it. (... because perhaps I will forget it.)

После *in case* употребляется present simple для выражения будущего времени, например, ... *in case I forget it*. СМ. 22.2

2 Сравните *if* (ср. 66) и *in case*:

We'll buy another concert ticket if Simon wants to come with us. (We will wait and see if Simon wants to come before we buy another ticket.)

We'll buy another concert ticket in case Simon wants to come with us. (We will buy another ticket now. Then we will already have a ticket for Simon if he wants to come.)

3 *In case* может употребляться для выражения прошедшего времени.

I wrote down the phone number in case I forgot it.

We bought another concert ticket in case Simon wanted to come with us.

4 После *in case* может употребляться *should*, когда возможность менее очевидна. Compare:

Take an umbrella with you in case it rains.
(I think perhaps it will rain.)

Take an umbrella with you in case it should rain. (I am less sure it will rain.)

EXERCISE 164A

Complete the sentences in A using *in case* and an idea from B.

Example:

1 *You'd better hurry up in case you miss your train.*

A

1 You'd better hurry up _____

2 Take a book on the **journey** _____

3 Put on some suncream _____

4 Wear a coat when you go **out** _____

5 You should lock the car _____

B

you (get) **sunburnt**.

you (catch) a cold.

you (miss) your train.

someone (try) to steal it.

you (get) bored.

EXERCISE 164B

Complete the sentences using *if* or *in case*.

Example:

I'll write down the address in case I forget it.

1 We'll walk home _____ we miss the last bus.

2 Go and see the doctor _____ you **don't** feel well.

3 You should carry some kind of identification with you _____ you have an accident.

4 I'll come and see you later today _____ I have enough time.

5 We'll close all the windows _____ it rains while we're out.

Note

– **Выражение** *in case of* отличается от *in case*. *In case of* часто встречается в объявлениях и значит 'в случае', например: ***In case of fire, press the alarm.*** (= If there is a fire ...).

165 Place: *in, at, on* (Место: *в, на*)

- 1 *In* употребляется, когда мы представляем место как трехмерное пространство.

Simon is in his room.

Do you like swimming in the sea?

In также употребляется, когда место представляется как площадь, пространство.

We went for a walk in the park.

He's got a flat in Milan.



- 2 *At* употребляется, когда место представляется как точка.

I waited at the bus stop for twenty minutes.

I'll meet you at the station. (a meeting point)

- 3 *On* употребляется, когда место представляется как поверхность.

What's that on the floor?

I'll put this picture on the wall.

On также употребляется, когда место представляется в виде линии.

Memphis is on the Mississippi River.

Brighton is on the south coast of England.



- 4 С городами, деревнями, поселками употребляется *at*, когда место представляется как точка. Например, *a point on a journey*.

Our train stops at Brighton.

In употребляется, когда представляется само место, например: *He's got a flat in Milan.*

- 5 Со зданиями может часто употребляться *at* или *in*.

We had lunch at/in Luigi's restaurant.

She works at/in the post office.

At предпочтительней, когда здание вообще представляется как место, где что-то происходит.

'Where were you last night?' I was at the cinema.'

My brother is at university.

Но *in* употребляется, когда представляется само здание. Compare:

We stayed at the Queens Hotel.

There are fifty bedrooms in the Queens Hotel.

- 6 В адресе употребляется *at*, если имеется в виду номер дома; в британском английском языке употребляется *in*, когда дается лишь название улицы.

I live at 42 East Street.

I live in East Street.

On употребляется для обозначения этажности, например: *I live in a flat on the first floor/second floor etc.*

EXERCISE 165A

Complete the sentences using the prepositions *at, in* or *on*. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.


Example:

What have you got *in* your pocket?

- 1 There's some tea _____ the shelf _____ the cupboard.
- 2 Does your train stop _____ Lyon?
- 3 My friend works _____ a chemist's _____ the town centre.
- 4 Turin is _____ the north of Italy, _____ the River Po.
- 5 Shall we meet _____ the coach station?
- 6 'Is Ken _____ the living room?' 'No, he's _____ the garden.'
- 7 They're staying _____ the Metropole Hotel while they are _____ Brighton.
- 8 Rio de Janeiro is _____ the south-east coast of Brazil.
- 9 There's a chemist's _____ the corner _____ the end of the street.
- 10 We had lunch _____ Mario's cafe _____ Main Road _____ our way home.

166 Place and movement: *in, into, out of, on, onto, off, inside, outside*
(Место и движение: *в, с, из, на, внутри, снаружи*)


1 *In, into, out of*



*Sally is in her bedroom.
I fell **into/in** the river.
He came out of the room and locked the door.*

in *into or in* *out of*

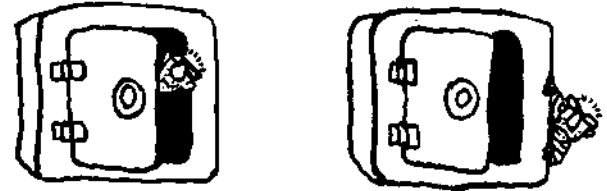
2 *On, onto, off*



*Your keys are on the table.
He jumped onto/on the horse.
Take your feet off the table.*

on *onto or on* *off*

3 *Inside outside*



*She was sitting **inside/in** the cafe.
There is a telephone box outside the bank.*

inside or in *outside*

- 4 Обратите внимание, что *in* употребляется, когда речь идет об автомобилях, а *on* - об общественном транспорте, например, *buses, trains*.

I usually go to work in my car.

Did you come to school on the bus?

Говорят *get in (to) /out of a car*, но *get on (to) /off a bus, train* и т.д.

She got into her car and started the engine.

Two policemen got on the train at Oxford.

Относительно *by car/train* и т.д. см. 175.

EXERCISE 166A

Complete each sentence using the most suitable preposition in the box. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Example:

There was an envelope lying *on* the floor.

in into out of on onto off inside outside

- 1 Ken fell _____ the ladder when he was changing the light bulb.
- 2 Andrew normally goes to school _____ the bus.
- 3 When I was _____ my hotel room, I started to take my clothes _____ my suitcase.
- 4 There's a bus stop right _____ our house.
- 5 Sally came _____ the house, got _____ her motorbike and rode away.
- 6 My car broke down this morning so I went to work _____ a taxi.
- 7 The cat jumped _____ roof of the car and looked down at the dog.
- 8 Annie jumped _____ the diving board _____ the swimming pool.
- 9 Robert came _____ the telephone box and got _____ his car.

167 Place and movement: *above, below, over, under, underneath, on top of* (Место и движение: *над, под, на, на поверхности*)

- 1 *Above* и *over* могут иметь значение 'выше, чем'; *below* и *under* могут иметь значение 'ниже, чем':

- a *Over* и *under* употребляются для описания вертикального соотношения.



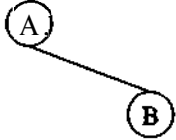
A is over B.

B is under A.

The nurse leaned over the sick child.

I pushed the letter under the door.

- b** *Above* и *below* употребляются, когда один предмет не расположен непосредственно над или под другим.



A is above B.

B is below A.

We stayed at a hotel above the lake.

From the top of the hill we could see a house below us in the valley.

- c** *Over* употребляется в значении 'накрывающего', а *under* - 'накрытого чем-то'.

He put his hand over his face.

What are you wearing under your coat?

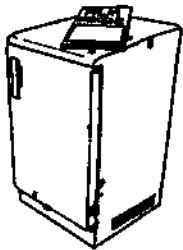
- d** *Over* употребляется в значении 'вдоль' (см. также 168.5).

We walked over the fields to the village.

- 2** *Underneath* может употребляться вместо *under*.

What are you wearing underneath your coat?

- 3** *On top of* означает, что один предмет находится 'над' другим и 'касается' его.



The magazine is on top of the fridge.

EXERCISE 167A

Choose the correct preposition.

Example:

I found some money on the floor ~~*under*~~/*below* the sofa.

1 The house was on a hill *above/over* the village.

2 The cat was sitting *below/under* the kitchen table.

3 On our way to the village we drove *above/over* a small bridge.

4 There are some old shoes *above/on top of* the wardrobe.

5 He sat down *below/under* an apple tree.

6 She was wearing a long dress *below/underneath* her raincoat.

168 Other prepositions of place and movement (Другие предлоги места и движения)

1 *In front of, behind*



in front of

behind

*I'll meet you **in front of** the post office.
There is someone hiding **behind** that tree.*

2 *Opposite, between*



opposite

between

*The bank is **opposite** the cinema.
There is a coach service **between** Sydney and Melbourne.*

3 *Near, next to, by, beside*



near

next to

*They live **near** the sea.
The police station is **next to** the cinema.*

By и beside - оба обозначают 'ОКОЛО, рядом, возле'.

*Come and sit **by/beside** me.*

4 *Along, across, through*



along

across

through

*They walked along the street looking in all the shop windows.
A small bridge goes across the river.
We drove through the city.*

5 *Across, over*

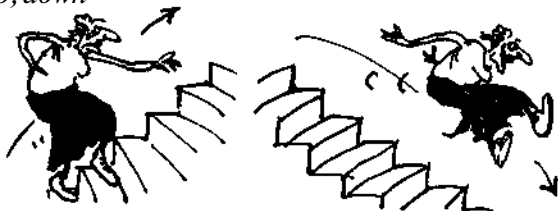
Across и *over* употребляются в значении 'через, вдоль'.

The cafe is just across/over the road. A small bridge goes across/over the river.

Употребление *over* предпочтительней для движения вверх на другую сторону.

He climbed over the wall. (Not: ... across the wall.)

6 *Up, down*



up

down

She went up the stairs. Then she came down again.

7 *Past, (a)round*



past

The policeman just walked past the man.

Round употребляется для обозначения положения или движения по кругу или кривой.



round



round

They were all sitting round the table.

I live just round the corner.

Round также употребляется в значении 'повсюду' или 'езде'.

We walked round the town centre.

Around может также употребляться вместо *round*, например: *We walked around the town centre.*

8 **From, to, towards**

We flew from Paris to Madrid.

Who is that woman walking towards us?

9 **Get to, arrive at/in**

Говорят *arrive in/at* (a place), но *get to* (a place).

She arrived in/got to Paris last night.

Говорят *arrive in* (в страну или город), но *arrive at* (другие места).

She arrived in France/Paris last night.

She arrived at the hotel just after 10 o'clock.

10 Когда речь идет о движении, перед словом *home* предлог не употребляется.

/ went home after school.

Для обозначения нахождения говорят *at home*.

I was at home last night.

EXERCISE 168A

Complete the sentences using the most suitable prepositions in the box. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

through across up down in round between along to opposite
in front of next to from at towards behind over past

Example:

What's that you've tied *round* your waist?

1 I was sitting _____ the driver in the back seat of the car.

2 A tall man was sitting _____ me at the cinema and I couldn't see much of the film.

3 There is a shoe shop _____ the chemist's and the library.

4 We walked _____ the stairs to the top floor, then we walked _____ to the bottom again.

5 What time did you arrive _____ work yesterday?

6 Who was the first person to swim _____ the Atlantic?

7 There was a woman sitting _____ the driver _____ the front passenger seat of the car.

8 We're flying _____ Paris _____ Amsterdam tomorrow. We arrive _____ Amsterdam at 6.00.

9 I got _____ the cinema late and missed the beginning of the film.

10 There's a post office _____ right _____ my office. You can see it from my window.

11 The burglars got into the building by climbing _____ a window.

12 We were driving _____ the road looking for a petrol station for about half an hour.

13 We walked _____ the bridge to the other side of the river.

14 The dog jumped _____ the wall into someone's garden.

15 When the bus came I put out my hand, but it just went _____ me without stopping.

16 We couldn't see the man's face because he was standing with his back _____ us.

169 Time: *at, in, on* (Время: о, в)

1 *At, in* и *on* употребляется следующим образом:

at + время дня

*at 2 o'clock at 6.30 at midnight
at noon (= 12 часов дня)
at lunchtime*

in + часть дня

*in the morning in the afternoon
in the evening*

Но говорят *at night*.

on + день недели

*on Monday on Wednesday on Saturday
on Christmas day*

on + день недели + часть дня

*on Monday morning on Wednesday evening
on Saturday night*

on + число месяца

on 4th July on 1st January

at + выходные

at the weekend at weekends

at + праздничные дни

at Christmas at Easter

in + более длительные периоды,
например, months, seasons,
years и т.д.

*in July in the summer in 1983
in the 19th century*

2 *At, on* и *in* не употребляются перед *next, last, this, every, all, each, some, any* и *one*.

We're leaving next Monday.

I'll see you this evening.

They play tennis every weekend.

At, on или *in* не употребляются перед *tomorrow* и *yesterday*.

What are you doing tomorrow evening?

3 *At* обычно опускается при выяснении времени (*At*) *what time ... ?*

What time are you leaving?

4 *In* также употребляется для выражения периода времени в будущем.

I'll be finished in half an hour. (= an hour from now) [через час]

We're meeting in two weeks. (= two weeks from now) [через две недели]

Обратите внимание на выражение *in ... 's/ time*.

We're meeting in a week's time.

In употребляется также для выражения времени, необходимого для выполнения чего-то.

/ can walk from my house to the town centre in twenty minutes. (= мне потребуется 20 минут для выполнения этого)

EXERCISE 169A

Add *at*, *on* or *in* where **necessary**.

Example:

Can you meet me *at* 2 o'clock — next Saturday afternoon?

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Kate doesn't normally work _____ weekends, but she had to work _____ last Saturday. | 6 They went on holiday to Spain _____ Easter and then again _____ the summer. |
| 2 We're leaving _____ tomorrow morning, but we'll be back _____ three weeks' time. | 7 The bridge was built _____ the 16th century. |
| 3 Did she send you a card _____ your birthday? _____ | 8 Do you enjoy driving _____ night? |
| 4 _____ what time does the meeting start _____ Monday? | 9 I'm taking my driving test _____ 4.30 _____ July 3rd. |
| 5 I can normally get home from work _____ about half an hour _____ Friday evenings. | 10 He was born _____ 1900 and died _____ 1972. |
| | 11 I'm going to a conference in Egypt _____ a week. |

170 *On time and in time (Точно в назначенный час, вовремя)*

1 *On time* означает 'вовремя, точно в назначенный час'.

The buses are very unreliable. They never arrive on time. (= точно в указанное время)
In my school, the classes always start on time. (= точно в указанное время)

2 *In time* означает 'вовремя'.

He discovered the fire in time to stop it spreading. (= вовремя, чтобы потушить его)
I hope my leg gets better in time for the football match on Saturday. (= вовремя до футбольного матча)

EXERCISE 170A

Complete the sentences using *on time* or *in time*.

Example:

I **didn't** arrive *in time* to see her before she left.

- The bus service is terrible; the buses are never _____.
- I hope my car will be repaired _____ for the weekend.
- She's very punctual. She always arrives _____.
- She didn't arrive _____ to say goodbye to him.
- I don't think I'll be home _____ to see the film on TV this evening.

171 *At the end and in the end*

(В конце чего-то, спустя (через) некоторое время)

- 1 *At the end* означает 'в конце чего-то'.
We're going on holiday at the end of this week.
At the end of the film I felt very sad.
- 2 *In the end* означает 'наконец' или 'спустя (через) некоторое время'.
We couldn't decide what to do yesterday evening. In the end we decided to stay at home.
At first, I didn't like him, but in the end we became goodfriends.

EXERCISE 171 A

Complete the sentences using *at the end* or *in the end*.

Example:

We were going to walk home, but *in the end* we decided to take a taxi.

- 1 I hated school at first, but _____ I quite enjoyed it. 4 I looked **everywhere** for my wallet and
2 They're going to Italy _____ of next week. _____ I found it in my jacket.
3 At first, he didn't want to come with us on holi- 5 She's starting work _____ of May.
day, but _____ he changed his mind. 6 We were all exhausted _____ of the journey.

172 *Time: in, during, for, while*

(Время: в, во время, в течение, в то время как)

- 1 *In and during*
- a *During* и *in* могут употребляться для указания периода времени, часто в одном и том же значении.
*We were in Rome **during/in** the summer.*
*It snowed **during/in** the night.*
- b Употребление *during* предпочтительней для выражения чего-то, что продолжается в течение всего периода.
*We were in Rome **during** the whole of the summer.* (Not: ... **in the whole of the summer.**)
- c *During*, а не *in* употребляется по отношению к какому-то виду деятельности, например, визит или завтрак (а не периоду времени).
*We visited the Colosseum **during** our visit to Rome.* (Not: ... **in our visit to Rome.**)
***During** lunch I explained my plans.* (Not: **In lunch** ...)
- 2 *During, for and while*
- a *During* указывает, когда что-то происходит; *for* указывает на длительность чего-то.
Compare:
*It snowed **during** the morning.* | *It snowed **for** four hours.*
*We were in Rome **during** the summer.* | *We were in Rome **for** ten days.*

- b** *While* имеет то же значение, что и *during*. Обычно употребляется *during* + noun; но *while* + clause. Compare:

during + noun

He broke his arm during the fight.
It started to rain during the picnic.

while + clause

He broke his arm while they were fighting.
It started to rain while they were having a picnic.

EXERCISE 172A

Complete the sentences using *during, in, for* or *while*. Sometimes **more** than one answer is possible.

Example:

Someone broke into their flat *while* they **were** away on holiday.

1 Some people were talking in the cinema _____ the film.

2 **We've** been waiting _____ almost an hour.

3 Something woke me up _____ the night.

4 I was on holiday _____ two weeks _____ the spring.

5 I saw Sue _____ my visit to London.

6 They stopped work _____ half an hour _____ the afternoon.

7 We visited some interesting places _____ we were in London.

8 I'll be in France _____ the whole of September.

Note

– Относительно *for, since, ago* и *before* см. 174.

173 Time: *by, until, from, to/until, before, after* (Время: *к, до, от, перед, после*)

1 *By* и *until*

Until (или *till*) означает 'до того (как)'; *by* означает 'не позже, чем'. Compare:

I'll stay until Sunday lunchtime. (= до обеда в воскресенье)

He'll be out till 10 o'clock. (= до 10)

I'll have to leave by Sunday lunchtime. (= не позже, чем до обеда в воскресенье)

He'll be home by 10 o'clock. (= не позже 10)

2 *From ... to/until*

The shop opens from 8.30 to 5.30 every day.

I'll be on holiday from Monday until/till Friday next week.

3 *Before* и *after*

I'll be home before 6 o'clock.

After dinner we went for a walk.

EXERCISE 173A

Complete the sentences using *for*, *until*, *from* or *to*. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Example:

The film starts at **8.10**, so we must be at the cinema *by* **8.00** at the latest.

- 1 I waited _____ half past eight _____ nine o'clock, but she didn't come.
- 2 They hope to finish the job _____ Thursday next week.
- 3 He normally works _____ Monday _____ Friday.
- 4 How many more weeks are there _____ your holiday?
- 5 If you want a ticket for the concert, let me know _____ next Wednesday at the latest.
- 6 We won't start the meeting _____ everyone is here.

174 For, since, ago and before (В течение, с тех пор, ... тому назад и до)

- 1 For употребляется с периодом времени для выражения длительности чего-то в настоящем, прошедшем и будущем.

*We were in **Rome** for ten **days** last August.*

They usually go on holiday for two weeks every summer.

*I'll be in **Manchester** for the next three days.*

- 2 For and since часто употребляется с present perfect для выражения действий, которые продолжаются в течение **какого-то** периода. Compare:

*I've been watching **TV** for two hours.*

*I've known **her** for three months.*

*I've been watching **TV** since 7 o'clock.*

I've known her since November.

For употребляется, когда указывается на продолжительность периода, например, *two hours, six months.*

Since употребляется, когда указывается на начало периода, например, *1 o'clock, April.*

- 3 Ago - это наречие и означает 'тому назад'.

It's 10 o'clock now. Sue left two hours ago. (= Сю уехала в 8 часов.)

Ago употребляется после выражения времени.

*She left **a few minutes** ago.*

Six months ago they moved to Manchester.

Обратите внимание на вопрос *How long ago ... ?*, например: *How long ago did she leave?*

Ago употребляется с past tense, но не с present perfect. Например, нельзя сказать:

~~She has left a few minutes ago.~~

- 4 Compare ago and for:

I went to New York two weeks ago.

(= две недели тому назад)

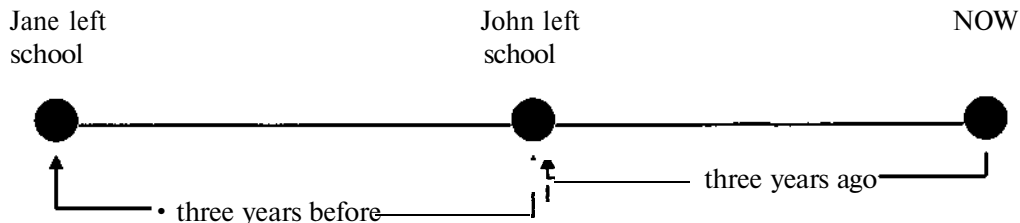
*I / went to New **York** for two weeks.*

(= Я провел две недели там)

5 Сравните *ago* и *before*:

ago = 'до настоящего времени'; *before* - 'до прошедшего времени'

John left school three years ago; Jane had already left school three years before.



EXERCISE 174A

Complete the sentences using */or, since, ago* and *before*.

Example:

Tina moved away from Newcastle five years *ago* and she hasn't been back there *since* then.

- 1 My grandparents visited Edinburgh _____ two weeks in 1980. They had been there five years _____, so it wasn't completely new to them.
- 2 My brother has been interested in music _____ quite a long time. He was given his first guitar 20 years _____.
- 3 John worked in a travel agency _____ six months in 1985. He already had some experience of the tourist industry because he had worked in a Tourist Information office in London two years _____.
- 4 Patricia started working as a journalist with a newspaper in Madrid ten years _____. She's been working for the same newspaper ever _____ then.

Note

– Относительно *for* и *since* см. также 11.

75 Means of transport: *by, on, in* (Виды транспорта: на, в)

1 *By* + *noun* употребляется для указания, как мы передвигаемся, путешествуем.

*by car by bus by coach by bicycle by motorbike
by train by Underground/Tube by tram by plane
by boat/ship by road by rail by air by sea*

I always come to school by bus.

They travelled to Paris by rail.

Но говорят *on foot* (= пешком).

Does he usually go to school on foot?

- 2** Когда употребляются *my/a/the* и т.д. перед *car/bus/train* и т.д., нельзя употреблять *by*. *In* употребляется с автомобилями, а *on* - с велосипедами, мотоциклами и общественным транспортом, например, *buses, trains*.

I usually go to work in my car. (Not: ~~...by my car.~~)

They went for a ride on a motorbike. (Not: ~~...by a motorbike.~~)

Did you go to London on the train? (Not: ~~...by the train?~~)

EXERCISE 175A

Complete the sentences using *by, on* or *in*.

Example:

I'm not going to Rome *on* my motorbike. **I've** decided to go *by* train instead.

1 Annie usually goes to school _____ her bicycle, but sometimes she goes _____ bus.

2 The journey takes 10 minutes _____ bus and about 25 minutes _____ foot.

3 Robert didn't come to work _____ his car yesterday morning. His car had broken down and he had to come _____ taxi.

4 Did you travel right across London _____ the Underground?

5 **We've** decided to travel to New York _____ sea rather than go _____ air.

176 *Like, as and as if* (Подобно и как)

1 *Like* и *as*

- a** *Like* и *as* могут употребляться для указания на сходство:

Like

My sister is quite like me.

He eats like a pig!

This steak is very tough. It's like eating leather.

В этом случае *like* выступает как предлог; он употребляется перед существительным, например *like a pig*, местоимением, например *like me*, или *-ing* формой, например, *like eating*.

As

Your hair looks nice as it is now.

Nobody else can sing as she can.

В этом случае *as* выступает как союз; он ставится перед придаточным предложением с подлежащим и глаголом, например, *as it is, as she can*.

В неофициальном стиле часто употребляется *like* в качестве союза вместо *as*.

Nobody can sing like she can.

Некоторые считают, что такое употребление *like* 'неправильное'.

b *As* употребляется как предлог для выражения чьего-то занятия или указания на функцию предмета.

/ once worked as a postman.

Please **don't** use my shoe as a hammer.

Сравните *as* и *like*:

He works as a cleaner. (Он на самом деле уборщик.)

She uses the living room as her office. (Эта комната на самом деле ее кабинет.)

He looks like a pop singer. (На самом деле он не поп-певец.)

My children treat our house like a hotel. (На самом деле это не гостиница.)

c *Like* можно употреблять для приведения примеров.

She enjoys some water sports, like sailing and windsurfing.

2 As if

a *As if* ставится перед подлежащим + глагол и указывает на то, как кто-то или что-то выглядит.

You look as if you 're cold.

It looks as if it's going to stop raining.

As if + прошедшее время иногда употребляется для выражения действия в настоящем времени.

My brother sometimes behaves as if he was my father.

Предложение здесь не относится к прошедшему; прошедшее время (*he was my father*) употребляется, поскольку сама идея 'нереальна' (на самом деле он не мой отец).

Were часто употребляется вместо *was* после *as if* для выражения 'нереальных' действий, особенно в неофициальном стиле.

My brother sometimes behaves as if he were my father.

b *As though* может употребляться вместо *as if*.

You look as though you 're tired.

My brother sometimes behaves as though he were my father.

c В неофициальном стиле иногда употребляется *like* вместо *as if/though*.

It looks like it's going to stop raining.

EXERCISE 176A

Complete the sentences using *like* or *as*. Sometimes either word is possible.

Example:

Sarah looks a lot *like* her brother.

1 I joined the company _____ a secretary.

2 Their garden is in a terrible mess. It looks _____ a jungle.

3 I prefer bright colours, _____ yellow and red.

4 When you've finished, put everything back _____ it was before.

5 The building looks more _____ a church than a bank.

6 Stop behaving _____ a fool.

7 Nobody else can make me laugh quite _____ she can.

EXERCISE 176B

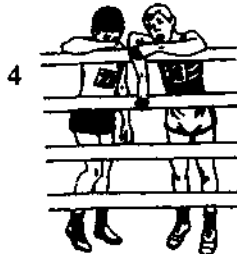
Make sentences about the people in the pictures using the words in the boxes.

| | |
|-----------------|-------------|
| He/She/It looks | as if _____ |
| They look | |

| | |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| they're in love | they've been running |
| she's just woken up | he's going to fall |
| they're having fun | she's just had some good news |

Example:

She looks as if she's just woken up.



EXERCISE 176C

Complete each sentence in A using *as if* and the most suitable idea from B. Use the verbs in brackets in the past tense.

Example:

1 *She's 50 years old, but she looks as if she was/were 30.*

A

- 1 She's 50 years old, but she looks _____
- 2 He's only a receptionist, but he acts _____
- 3 They're quite rich, but they **behave** _____
- 4 He's only got a cold, but he acts _____
- 5 It's my car, but he treats it _____

B

- (own) the hotel
- (belong) to him
- (be) dying
- (be) poor
- ~~(be)~~ 30

177 *With* (= having) and *in* (= wearing)

1

With может употребляться для указания, что кто-то или что-то имеет.

*He is a tall man **with** brown hair.* (= у него черные волосы)

*London is a large city **with** a population of over 9 million.* (= он имеет население свыше 9 миллионов)

2

In может употребляться для выражения, в чем кто одет.

*He often goes to work **in** his jeans.* (= в джинсах)

*Who's that woman **in** the black dress?* (= в черном платье)

EXERCISE 177A

Complete the sentences using *with* or *in*.

Example:

My suitcase is the brown one *with* the blue stripe down the side.

- 1 We're looking for a flat ___ three bedrooms.
- 2 **Who's** that man over there ___ the green sweater?
- 3 The police are looking for a short man ___ black curly hair and brown eyes.
- 4 She's a lively woman ___ a great sense of humour.
- 5 A fat man ___ a dark blue suit came out of the bank ___ a black briefcase.

[78 Adjective + preposition (Прилагательное + предлог)

После многих прилагательных употребляются предлоги. Например, говорят *afraid of*, *interested in* и *bored with*.

Ниже приведены наиболее употребительные выражения adjective + preposition:

- *excited about* *worried about* *nervous about*
- *angry about* *annoyed about* *furious about*

I'm excited about having my birthday party tomorrow.

*Are you **worried** about your exam?*

I'm angry about all the mess you 've made.

- *good at* *bad at* *clever at* *hopeless at*

I'm not very good at mathematics.

You 're not bad at chess.

- *surprised **at/by*** *shocked **at/by*** *astonished **at/by*** *amazed **at/by***

*We were surprised **at/by** the size of the house.*

- ***famous** for* ***wellknown** for* *responsible for*

*Brazil **is famous** for its coffee.*

Who is responsible for breaking this window?

- ***different from/to***

*He's very different **from/to** his sister.*

- *interested in*

I'm quite interested in photography.

- *afraid of* *frightened of* *scared of* *proud of* ***full of***
- *ashamed of* *jealous of* *envious of* *suspicious of* *short of*
- *aware of* *conscious of* *capable of* *fond of* *tired of*

Are you afraid of spiders?

I'm very proud of you.

Are you jealous of his success?

*He's very **fond** of her.*

*My homework was **full of** mistakes.*

We 're a bit short of milk. Can you buy some more?

I'm tired of doing the same things every day.

- **nice/kind/good/friendly/polite/rude/stupid** someone

It was very **nice** of Simon to **lend** you the money.

- **keen on**

She's not very **keen on** tennis.

- **engaged to** **married to** **similar to**

Marianne is **engaged to** Alan.

Your camera is **similar to** mine.

- **nice/kind/good/friendly/polite/rude** someone

A shop assistant should be **polite to** customers.

- **pleased with** **bored with** **disappointed with** **happy with**

You look **very pleased with** yourself.

I became **bored with** the book and stopped reading it.

We were **disappointed with** the football match.

- **angry/annoyed/furious** with someone for (doing) something

Are you **angry with** me for being late?

EXERCISE 178A

Complete the sentences using the words in the box. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Example:

I'm getting bored *with* my present job.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----|----|------|----|-------|----|------|-----|----|----|
| of | by | with | on | about | in | from | for | at | to |
|----|----|------|----|-------|----|------|-----|----|----|

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 They're very proud ____ their children. | 11 We were very disappointed ____ the film. |
| 2 My sister has just got engaged ____ her boyfriend. | 12 Are you afraid ____ flying? |
| 3 Are you worried ____ your driving test? | 13 I was shocked ____ the news of the accident. |
| 4 You're very good ____ explaining things. | 14 The garden is full ____ roses. |
| 5 Sydney in Australia is famous ____ its Opera House. | 15 We're a bit short ____ petrol. We'd better stop at the next petrol station. |
| 6 She's quite capable ____ doing the job. | 16 I'm not very good ____ drawing. |
| 7 We're getting really excited ____ our holiday. | 17 My grandparents are very fond ____ their old cat. |
| 8 Are you interested ____ playing tennis tomorrow? | 18 Cricket is quite different ____ baseball. |
| 9 He's not very keen ____ football. | 19 Your hairstyle is quite similar ____ mine. |
| 10 It was very kind ____ them to give us a lift to the station. | 20 She was very angry ____ me ____ losing her key . |

Note

– **После** некоторых вышеприведенных прилагательных возможно употребление и других предлогов, **например**, *frightened by*, *annoyed at*, *disappointed in*. Более подробные сведения можно найти в любом хорошем словаре.

[79 Noun + preposition (Существительное + предлог)

После многих существительных употребляются определенные предлоги. Например, говорят *(a) reason for, (an) example of, (an) increase in*.

Ниже приведены некоторые наиболее употребительные примеры выражений *noun + preposition*:

- *difference between*

*There are a lot of **difference between** living in the country and living in a city.*

- *reason for* *demand for* *need for*

*What was the **reason for** the accident?*

*There is a **need for** more houses in this area.*

- *increase/decrease in* *rise/fall in*

*There has been an **increase in** the price of petrol.*

- *difficulty in* doing something

*Does he have much **difficulty in** doing his schoolwork?*

Но обратите внимание: *difficulty with* something

*Does he have much **difficulty with** his schoolwork?*

- *example of* *cause of* *picture/photograph of*

*This building is an **example of** good modern architecture.*

*What was the **cause of** the accident?*

*Have you got a **photograph of** your family?*

- *answer to* *solution to* *reply to* *invitation to* *reaction to*

*Have you had an **answer to** your letter?*

*Where are the **answers to** the exercise?*

*I got an **invitation to** dinner yesterday.*

- *attitude to/towards*

*What's your **attitude to/towards** this idea?*

- *relationship with*

*Our company has a very good **relationship with** the bank.*

Но обратите внимание: *relationship between*

*The **relationship between** our company and the bank is very good.*

EXERCISE 179A

Complete the sentences using the words in the box. In one sentence two answers are possible.

Example:

I've had an invitation *to* a wedding next month.

| |
|-----------------------------------|
| towards of between for in with to |
|-----------------------------------|

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 I have a good relationship_____my boss. | 7 The government want to improve the relationship_____the police and the general public. |
| 2 He refused to give me an answer_____my question. | 8 He is very shy and has great difficulty___making friends. |
| 3 What are the main differences_____the two countries? | 9 I thought her attitude_____you was rather unpleasant. |
| 4 We need a solution_____the world's population problem. | 10 There is no need_____you to shout. I can hear you. |
| 5 Smoking is one of the causes_____heart disease. | 11 Nobody knows the reason_____his decision. |
| 6 Has there been an increase_____unemployment recently? | 12 The artist drew a picture_____my mother. |

Note

–**После** некоторых вышеприведенных существительных возможно употребление и других предлогов. Более подробные сведения можно найти в любом хорошем словаре.

180 Preposition + noun (Предлог + существительное)

Перед многими существительными употребляются определенные предлоги. Например, говорят *on television* и *by mistake*.

Ниже приведены наиболее употребительные примеры выражений preposition + noun:

- *by mistake* *by accident* *by chance*

I put salt in my coffee by mistake.

- Говорят: (to pay) *by cheque/by credit card*, but (to pay) *in cash* or (to pay) *cash*.

I'd like to pay by credit card.

- (a book/film/painting etc) *by someone*

I'm reading a book by James Joyce. (= написанная Джеймсом Джойсом)

- (to go/come) *for a drink/a meal/a walk/a swim*

Would you like to go for a drink?

- (to have something) *for breakfast/lunch/dinner*

We had spaghetti for lunch.

- *We say for example.*

I'd like to go somewhere warm on holiday, for example Greece or Turkey.

- (to**be/fall**) *in love with* someone/something

*Jimmy is in love with **Angela**.*

- *in* someone's *opinion*

In my opinion you should phone the police.

- (to**be/go/come**) *on **holiday/a journey/a trip/business***

I'm going on holiday in April.

Но обратите внимание: (to **go/come**) *for a holiday*

*I'd like to go to Jamaica **for** a holiday.*

- *on **television/the radio***

What's on television this evening?

EXERCISE 180A

Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

Example:

In my opinion you're wrong.

by with in on for

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 We're going to Italy _____ a short holiday in May. | 5 I could pay you _____ cheque or _____ cash. Which would you prefer? |
| 2 Robert has gone away _____ holiday for two weeks. | 6 I heard an interesting programme _____ the radio last night. |
| 3 The book, <i>Gone With the Wind</i> , was written _____ Margaret Mitchell. | 7 _____ chance, I happened to have his address with me. |
| 4 I didn't mean to do that; I did it _____ mistake. | 8 Lynne and Bruno are very much _____ love _____ each other. |

Note

– **Более** подробную информацию о сочетаниях preposition + noun combinations можно найти в любом хорошем словаре.

181 Verb + preposition (Глагол + предлог)

После многих глаголов употребляются определенные предлоги. Например, говорят *believe in* и *concentrate on*.

Ниже приведены некоторые наиболее употребительные примеры выражений verb + preposition:

- *apologize to **someone** for* (doing) something

*I apologized to **her** for being late.*

- *apply for*

Are you going to apply for the job?

- *believe in*

Do you believe in life after death?

- *belong to*

Does this book belong to you?

- *care about* [интересоваться, заботиться]

/ don't care about money. Money can't buy happiness.

Но: *care for* [присматривать]

She's very good at caring for sick animals.

- *take care of* [присматривать]

Could you take care of the baby while I go out shopping?

- *complain to* (someone) *about* (something)

The workers complained to the manager about the working conditions.

- *concentrate on*

Concentrate on the road when you're driving.

- *crash into* *run into* *drive into* *bump into*

When I was driving home I almost crashed into a bus.

- *depend on*

'Are you going to the beach tomorrow?' 'It depends on the weather.'

- *die of*

A lot of people are dying of AIDS.

- *dream about* (while asleep)

/ was dreaming about Sue when I suddenly woke up.

Но: *dream of* [представлять себя]

When I was younger I dreamt of being a famous pop-singer.

Также: *dream of* [рассматривать]

/ wouldn't dream of changing my job.

- *hear about* [знать, слышать]

Have you heard about Jimmy? He broke his leg in a skiing accident.

Но: *hear from* (=получить известие от)

We haven't heard from Mike since he wrote to us last May.

Также: *hear of* (=знать о существовании кого-то/чего-то)

Have you heard of a disco called The Dance Factory?

- *laugh at* *smile at*

Who's that girl smiling at you?

- *listen to*

*Would you like to **listen to** some music?*

- *look at* [смотреть]

***Look at** this photograph.*

Но: *look for* [искать]

*Can you help me, please? I'm **looking for** West Street.*

Также: *look after* [присматривать]

*Could you **look after** the baby while I go out shopping?*

- *rely on*

*You can't **rely on** the post. It's always late.*

- *search for*

*I've been **searching for** my keys.*

- *shout at* (eg when you are angry)

***Don't shout at me!** I can hear you.*

- *talk to* *talk to*

*I **spoke to** Sue this morning.*

*m **suffer from***

***He suffers from** asthma.*

- *think about* [думать]

*You look sad. What are you **thinking about**?*

Но: *think of/about* [рассматривать]

*I'm **thinking of/about** changing my job.*

Также: *think of* (=иметь мнение о)

*'**What do you think of** Sue?' 'She's **very nice.**'*

Также: *think of* [вспоминать]

*/ **can't think of** any reason why the accident happened.*

- *wait for*

*How long have you been **waiting for** the bus?*

- *write to*

*I'll **write to you** soon.*

EXERCISE 181A

Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

Example:

I was worried and found it difficult to concentrate *on* my work.

for from after to of on at about in into

- 1 When he gets angry he always starts shouting _____ everyone.
- 2 This car isn't mine. It belongs _____ Mike.
- 3 Selfish people only care _____ themselves.
- 4 He complained _____ the children _____ the mess **they'd** made.
- 5 I won't tell anyone what happened. You can rely _____ me.
- 6 She apologized _____ me _____ losing her temper.
- 7 **I've** written _____ the company and applied _____ the job.
- 8 Mrs Woods **suffers** _____ bronchitis.
- 9 My grandfather died _____ old age.
- 10 We're thinking _____ going to the cinema.
- 11 Have you ever thought _____ moving to another country?
- 12 I remember his face, but I can't think _____ his name.
- 13 **'We** went to the **concert.** **'What** did you think _____ **it?'**
- 14 **'Do** you know a disco called The Zap **Club?'** **'No,** I've never heard _____ **it.'**
- 15 Excuse me. We're looking _____ the sports centre. Could you tell us how to get there?
- 16 Thank you for looking _____ my mother while she was ill.
- 17 I don't believe _____ horoscopes,
- 18 She dreams _____ being an actress one day.
- 19 I dreamt _____ my grandmother last night,
- 20 She searched through her bag _____ a pen.
- 21 We're depending _____ you to help us.
- 22 The car went out of control and crashed _____ the back of a bus.

Note

– Более подробную информацию о сочетаниях verb + preposition можно найти в любом хорошем словаре.

182 Verb + object + preposition (Глагол + дополнение + предлог)

После некоторых глаголов употребляются дополнения с предлогами. Например, говорят *borrow something from someone*.

Ниже приведены наиболее употребительные примеры выражений verb + object + preposition:

- *accuse someone of (doing) something*

The police accused the man of murder.

- *blame someone/something/or something*

Don't blame me for what happened. It wasn't my fault.

But: *blame something on someone/something*

Don't blame what happened on me. It wasn't my fault.

- *borrow***something** *from* someone
/ *borrowed some money from my mother.*
- *congratulate* someone *on* (doing) something
We congratulated them on getting married.
- *explain* something *to* someone
/ *explained the problem to the police.*
- *invite* someone *to* something

Mike *has invited me to the cinema this evening.*

- *remind* someone *about* something [напомнить]
Simon reminded me about Sarah's birthday, so I bought a card.

Ho: *remind* someone of **something/someone** (= заставить кого-то запомнить)

This song reminds me of the first time we met.

- *tell* someone *about* something
Did they tell you about their holiday?
- *warn* someone *about***something/someone**
His boss has warned him about being late for work.

EXERCISE 182A

Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

Example:

They blamed the accident *on* the driver of the lorry.

| |
|-------------------------|
| from on to about of for |
|-------------------------|

- 1 Don't blame other people _____ your own mistakes.
- 2 This town reminds me _____ the place where I was born.
- 3 Will you remind Peter _____ the party next Saturday?
- 4 I congratulated Mary _____ getting the new job.
- 5 I borrowed the umbrella _____ a friend of mine.
- 6 The woman accused me _____ trying to steal her bag.
- 7 They've invited us _____ their house for dinner.
- 8 **We've** warned him _____ swimming in that part of the river.

183 Review of prepositions (Обзор предлогов)

EXERCISE 183A

Complete the description of the scene in the picture using the words in the box. Use each word only once.

behind in front of outside inside up down
on onto off into out of along across at
round towards between near past next to opposite



There is a cafe *between* a supermarket and a post office. A woman is coming 1 the supermarket. Some people are sitting 2 the cafe — 3 the post office is a bank. A man is getting 4 a bus 5 the bank. 6 the bus there is a girl getting 7 a motorbike. An old man is going 8 some steps 9 the post office; a young woman is coming 10 the steps. Another woman is walking 11 the road 12 the bank. Some children and a dog are running 13 the street 14 the cafe. A car is waiting 15 some traffic lights 16 the supermarket. Some people are crossing the road 17 the car. There is a telephone box 18 the corner of the street 19 the supermarket. A young man is walking 20 the corner.

EXERCISE 183B

Complete the sentences using the words in the box. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Example:

We're going away *on holiday* for two weeks *in* July.

at in on since for from of to
during between about with under

- 1 We're **meeting** ____ the clock tower ____ North Street ____ 8 o'clock this evening.
- 2 I went **shopping** ____ town ____ Friday afternoon.
- 3 We're **thinking** ____ going ____ the concert ____ Saturday. Are you **interested** ____ coming?
- 4 **She's** been **studying** ____ the University ____ Manchester ____ the past three years.
- 5 He had great difficulty ____ finding a job when he was living ____ the north of England.
- 6 They live ____ 148 Dyke Road. Their flat is ____ the second floor.
- 7 We took a lot of photographs ____ our visit ____ Rome last summer.
- 8 ____ my opinion they show too many old films ____ TV.
- 9 They went **away** ____ holiday ____ the end of last week.
- 10 They've been staying ____ the International Hotel ____ Oxford Street ____ they arrived ____ England.
- 11 He's **suffered** ____ bad headaches ____ he had the accident.
- 12 At first I didn't want to go swimming in the river, but ____ the end I changed my mind.
- 13 My brother worked ____ a tourist guide ____ London ____ three months ____ the summer.
- 14 I found an old photograph ____ the floor ____ the bed ____, my room.
- 15 When she was a child, she dreamt ____ being a famous dancer.
- 16 I'm not very good ____ making decisions.
- 17 You can depend ____ him to arrive ____ time; he's never late.
- 18 We've arranged to meet ____ a cafe ____ a drink ____ 9 o'clock this evening.
- 19 I have a very good relationship ____ my sister.
- 20 There is no need ____ you to worry ____ me. I'll be all right.
- 21 You're very different ____ your mother, but quite similar ____ your father.
- 22 **They're** looking ____ a house ____ four bedrooms and a garden.
- 23 The police accused the woman ____ stealing the money.
- 24 'Do you know a pop band called Running Heads?' 'No, I've never heard ____ them.'
- 25 Newcastle is a large, commercial and industrial city ____ a population of about 300,000. It is ____ the north-east of England, ____ the River Tyne.
- 26 Is there very much difference ____ the two word processors?
- 27 I've always wanted my parents to be proud ____ me.
- 28 People are angry ____ the increase ____ food prices.
- 29 I complained ____ the shop assistant ____ the hole ____ the sweater.
- 30 My parents first went ____ Greece ____ a short holiday ____ 1980.

184 Indirect objects with or without *to* and *for* (Косвенные дополнения с и без *to* и *for*)

- 1** Некоторые глаголы, например *give*, *buy*, могут иметь два дополнения: прямое и косвенное. Обычно косвенное относится к лицу и ставится сначала.

verb + indirect object + direct object

I'll give Sally the money.
Richard bought me some flowers.

- 2** Можно использовать следующую конструкцию:

verb + direct object + *to/for* + indirect object

I'll give the money to Sally.
Richard bought some flowers for me.

Эта конструкция используется, например, когда особый акцент делается на косвенное дополнение.

I'll give the money to Sally, not Peter.

- a** Некоторые общеупотребительные глаголы, применяемые в этой конструкции с *to*:

bring give lend offer owe pass pay post
promise read recommend sell send show take
teach tell throw write

They're going to offer the job to Sue.
He showed the letter to a friend.

- b** Некоторые общеупотребительные глаголы, применяемые в этой конструкции с *for*:

bring build buy change choose cook do fetch
find fix get keep make order prepare save

She bought some books for her brother.
I'll cook a meal for you.

- 3** Когда прямым дополнением является местоимение, например, *them*, *it*, то обычно оно ставится первым, например: *She gave them to her brother.* (Вместо: *She gave her brother them.*)

EXERCISE 184A

Rephrase the sentences without using *to* or *for*.

Example:

Give this message to Martin.

Give Martin this message.

I'll make some coffee for you.

I'll make you some coffee.

- 1 Have you sent the letter to your brother?
- 2 I'll get a present for Sally.
- 3 Have you told the news to your parents?
- 4 I bought some stamps for you.
- 5 She lent her car to Peter.
- 6 I kept a seat for you.
- 7 **He's** prepared a meal for us.
- 8 Will you give this message to Mrs Woods?

EXERCISE 184B

Put the parts of the sentence into the correct order.

Example:

Sarah | **I** | my new camera | lent |.

/ lent Sarah my new camera.

To your mother | have | the money | given | you | ?

Have you given the money to your mother?

1 they | the job | me | didn't offer |.

2 for her son | she | a book | bought |.

3 the salt | pass | can | me | you | ?

4 you | this package | will | to your parents | take | ?

5 a taxi | ordered | they | us | have |.

6 he | to all | showed | the photographs | his friends |.

85 Phrasal verbs: introduction (Фразовые глаголы: введение)

- 1 Phrasal verbs - это глаголы, которые некоторым образом изменяют свое значение за счет добавления 'частиц', например, *down, away, on, in, up, after, off, across*.

Please sit down.

I'll throw away the rubbish.

Could you turn on the TV?

- 2 В некоторых случаях значение фразового глагола является сочетанием значений составляющих его частей.



- 3 В других случаях фразовый глагол имеет значение, отличное от значения составляющих его частей.

He's given up eating meat. (= He's stopped eating meat.) [бросил]

Sue takes after her mother. (= Sue looks like or is like her mother.) [похожа]

Looking after a baby is hard work. (= Taking care of a baby is hard work.) [ухаживать]

EXERCISE 185A

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the phrasal verbs below.
Use each phrasal verb only once.

Example:

It was lucky that nobody was killed when the bomb *went off*.

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>speak up</i> (= speak louder) | <i>fill</i> | <i>in</i> (= complete) |
| <i>come across</i> (= find by chance) | | <i>keep on</i> (= continue) |
| <i>turn down</i> (= refuse) | | <i>go up</i> (= increase) |
| <i>go off</i> (= explode) | | <i>hold up</i> (= delay) |

- 1 Could you _____ this application form, please?
- 2 They just _____ making a noise even though I'd asked them to stop.
- 3 The price of coffee has _____ again.
- 4 We can't hear you very well. Could you _____ a bit, please?
- 5 The coach was _____ by the heavy traffic and didn't arrive in London until 8.00.
- 6 Unfortunately, your request for a pay rise has been _____
- 7 He _____ some old photographs when he was cleaning the attic.

186 Types of phrasal verbs (Типы фразовых глаголов)

Phrasal verbs образуются путем добавления 'частиц', например: *away, up, down, out, off, after, in, on*, к глаголу.

I'll throw away the rubbish.

He's given up smoking.

Существует четыре типа фразовых глаголов:

Type 1

Эти фразовые глаголы не требуют дополнения.

verb + particle

Sit down.

Look out! [Осторожно!]

We set off on our journey. [начали]

Type 2

Эти фразовые глаголы требуют дополнение. Когда дополнение существительное, оно ставится до или после частицы.

verb + particle + object

verb + object + particle

I'll throw away the rubbish.

Take off your shoes.

I'll throw the rubbish away.

Take your shoes off.

Но когда подлежащее выражено местоимением, например *it, them*, оно может стоять перед частицей, а не после нее.

I'll throw it away. (Not: ~~*I'll throw*~~ away it.)

Take them off. (Not: ~~*Take off*~~ them.)

Type 3

Эти фразовые глаголы требуют дополнения, но глагол нельзя отделять от частицы.

verb + particle + object

Sue takes after her mother. (Not: ~~*Sue takes*~~ her mother after.)

Looking after a baby is hard work. (Not: ~~*Looking a baby*~~ after is hard work.)

Type 4

Эти фразовые глаголы состоят из трех частей: a verb + particle + preposition, например, *look forward to*. Глагол нельзя отделять от других частей.

verb + particle + preposition + object

I'm looking forward to the weekend.

You go now and I'll catch up with you later.

You shouldn't go back on your promises.

EXERCISE 186A

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the (Type 1) phrasal verbs in the box. Use each phrasal verb only once.

Example:

The lift *has broken down* and isn't working at the moment.

break out take off break down grow up
get up

- 1 Our plane _____ from New York at 6 o'clock yesterday evening.
- 2 My younger sister wants to be a doctor when she _____
- 3 A fire _____ in the offices of the ABC cinema last night.
- 4 Do you like _____ early in the mornings?

EXERCISE 186B

Complete the sentences using the (Type 2) phrasal verbs in brackets. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Example:

Could you | the light? (switch on)
Could you switch on the light?/Could you switch the light on?

- 1 Would you like to | this jacket? (try on)
- 2 I don't enjoy playing football any more. I think I'll | it. (give up)
- 3 My wife wants me to | my moustache. (shave off)
- 4 I have to speak to Mr Mason. I'd better | him. (ring up)
- 5 That music is rather loud. Would you | it? (turn down)

EXERCISE 186C

Replace the words in italics with the correct form of the (Type 3) phrasal verbs in the box.

Example:

We've *examined* the problem very carefully.

We've *gone into* the problem very carefully.

| |
|--|
| get over go into run into come into look after |
|--|

- 1 Who is going to *take care of* **the** children while you go to the pub?
- 2 Although she had very good medical care, it took her a long time to *recover from* her illness.
- 3 Jane *inherited* a great deal of money when her grandmother died.
- 4 I *met* an old friend *by chance* in town yesterday afternoon.

EXERCISE 186D

Replace the words in italics with the correct form of one of the (Type 4) phrasal verbs in the box.

| |
|---|
| get rid of put up with come up with go back on look back on |
|---|

Example:

You shouldn't *break* a promise.

You shouldn't *go back on* a promise.

- 1 Have you *thrown away* your old typewriter?
- 2 We must try **to find** a solution to the problem.
- 3 When you **remember** the past, **it's** easy to see the mistakes you've made.
- 4 I don't think I can *tolerate* this awful weather much longer.

EXERCISE 186E

Replace the noun in *italics* with a pronoun. (Note that sometimes you will have to change the word order.)

Examples:

Could you look after *the children*?

Could you look after them?

I'll **turn off** *the TV*.

I'll turn it off.

1 He's going to give up *his job*.

2 I've thrown away *the ticket*.

3 **He's** looking after *his sick mother*.

4 Are you looking forward to *the party*?

5 Can you fill in *the form*?

6 She takes after *her father*.

7 He can't do without *his car*.

187 Pronunciation of endings *-(e)s* and *-ed* (Произношение окончаний *-(e)s* и *-ed*)

Compare 'voiced' [гласные] и 'unvoiced' [согласные] sounds:

VOICED



При произношении гласных происходит вибрация голоса.

UNVOICED



При произношении согласных вибрация голоса не происходит.

1 Pronunciation of *-(e)s* ending

Правила произношения окончания *-(e)s* те же, что и для существительных во множественном числе (например, *books, churches*), притяжательного падежа 's/s' (например, *Ken's, my parents'*) и третьего лица единственного числа глаголов в present simple (например, *he plays, she watches*).

Окончание *-(e)s* имеет три варианта произношения:

a *-(e)s* произносится, как /ɪz/ после следующих звуков /tʃ/, /ʃ/, /s/, /z/, /dʒ/, /ʒ/.

| | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| /tʃ/ | /ʃ/ | /s/ |
| <i>watches</i> /wɒtʃɪz/ | <i>washes</i> /wɒʃɪz/ | <i>kisses</i> /kɪsɪz/ |
| <i>churches</i> /tʃɜːtʃɪz/ | <i>wishes</i> /wɪʃɪz/ | <i>Chris's</i> /krɪsɪz/ |

| | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| /z/ | /dʒ/ | /ʒ/ |
| <i>loses</i> /luːzɪz/ | <i>bridges</i> /brɪdʒɪz/ | <i>garages</i> /gæɹɑːʒɪz/ |
| <i>realizes</i> /rɪəlaɪzɪz/ | <i>George's</i> /dʒɔːdʒɪz/ | |

b *-(e)s* произносится, как /s/ после согласных звуков (кроме упомянутых в а).

| | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>stops</i> /stɒps/ | <i>my parents'</i> /peərənts/ | <i>books</i> /bʊks/ |
| <i>scopes</i> /həʊps/ | <i>waits</i> /weɪts/ | <i>Mick's</i> /mɪks/ |
| <i>laughs</i> /lɑːfs/ | <i>months</i> /mʌnθs/ | |
| <i>wife's</i> /waɪfs/ | <i>maths</i> /mæθs/ | |

c *-(e)s* произносится, как /z/ после гласных звуков (кроме упомянутых в а).

| | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>plays</i> /pleɪz/ | <i>cars</i> /kɑː(r)z/ | <i>Ken's</i> /kenz/ | <i>dogs</i> /dɒgz/ |
| <i>wives</i> /waɪvz/ | <i>ends</i> /endz/ | <i>clothes</i> /kloʊðz/ | <i>trees</i> /triːz/ |

2 Pronunciation of *-ed* ending

Окончание *-ed* используется для образования past tense и past participle правильных глаголов (например, *played, watched*).

Окончание *-ed* имеет три варианта произношения:

a *-ed* произносится, как /ɪd/ после звуков /t/ и /d/.

| | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| /t/ | /d/ |
| <i>waited</i> /weɪtɪd/ | <i>ended</i> /endɪd/ |
| <i>started</i> /stɑːtɪd/ | <i>needed</i> /niːdɪd/ |

b *-ed* произносится, как /t/ после согласных звуков (кроме /tʃ/).

| | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>stopped</i> /stɒpt/ | <i>looked</i> /lʊkt/ | <i>watched</i> /wɒtʃt/ |
| <i>hoped</i> /həʊpt/ | <i>worked</i> /wɜːkt/ | <i>touched</i> /tʌtʃt/ |
| <i>washed</i> /wɒʃt/ | <i>kissed</i> /kɪst/ | <i>laughed</i> /lɑːft/ |
| <i>wished</i> /wɪʃt/ | <i>danced</i> /dɑːnst/ | <i>coughed</i> /kɒʃt/ |

c *-ed* произносится, как /d/ после гласных звуков (кроме /d/).

| | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>played</i> /pleɪd/ | <i>opened</i> /əʊpənd/ | <i>lived</i> /lɪvd/ | <i>filled</i> /fɪld/ |
| <i>showed</i> /ʃəʊd/ | <i>raised</i> /reɪzd/ | <i>agreed</i> /ə'griːd/ | <i>used</i> /juːzd/ |

EXERCISE 187A

Put these words into three groups according to the pronunciation of the *-(e)s* endings.

| | | | | |
|------------------|------------------|-------------------|--------|--------|
| opens | waits | washes | Mick's | cars |
| stops | teaches | Sally's | misses | drives |
| dishes | Alice's | watches | admits | shows |
| books | Bert's | studies | brings | hopes |

| | | |
|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1 | 2 | 3 |
| /ɪz/ | /s/ | /z/ |
| <i>washes</i> | <i>waits</i> | <i>opens</i> |

EXERCISE 187B

Put these words into three groups according to the pronunciation of the *-ed* endings.

| | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|------------|----------|----------|
| passed | failed | painting | loved | finished |
| ended | hoped | opened | planned | invented |
| danced | studied | worked | waited | |
| lived | watched | remembered | admitted | |

| | | |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 | 2 | 3 |
| /ɪd/ | /t/ | /d/ |
| <i>painting</i> | <i>passed</i> | <i>failed</i> |

188 Spelling of endings *-(e)s, -ing, -ed, -er, -est, -ly* (Правописание окончаний *-(e)s, -ing, -ed, -er, -est, -ly*)

Существительные, глаголы, прилагательные могут иметь следующие окончания:

Noun+*-(e)s* (plural)

Verb + *-(e)s* (3rd person singular present simple)

Verb + *-ing* (present participle or gerund)

Verb + *-ed* (past tense or past participle)

Adjective + *-er* (comparative)

Adjective + *-est* (superlative)

Adjective + *-ly* (adverb)

| |
|---------------|
| <i>chairs</i> |
|---------------|

| |
|--------------------------------|
| <i>waits</i> <i>watches</i> |
|--------------------------------|

| |
|-----------------------------------|
| <i>waiting</i> <i>watching</i> |
|-----------------------------------|

| |
|---------------------------------|
| <i>waited</i> <i>watched</i> |
|---------------------------------|

| |
|---------------------------------|
| <i>slower</i> <i>slowest</i> |
|---------------------------------|

| |
|---------------|
| <i>slowly</i> |
|---------------|

При добавлении этих окончаний происходят изменения в написании:

1 Adding *-e* before *-s*

a Если слово заканчивается на *-ch, -sh, -s, -x* или *-z*, перед *-s* ставится *-e*.

| | |
|--------------|----------------|
| <i>watch</i> | <i>watches</i> |
| <i>dish</i> | <i>dishes</i> |
| <i>bus</i> | <i>buses</i> |
| <i>mix</i> | <i>mixes</i> |
| <i>fizz</i> | <i>fizzes</i> |

b После существительных *tomato, potato, echo, hero, negro* и глаголов *do* и *go* также ставится *-e* перед *-s*.

| | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| <i>tomato</i> | <i>tomatoes</i> |
| <i>potato</i> | <i>potatoes</i> |
| <i>do</i> | <i>does</i> |
| <i>go</i> | <i>goes</i> |

2 Nouns ending in *-f(e)*

Некоторые существительные, оканчивающиеся на *-f* или *-fe*, опускают *-f/-fe* и прибавляют *-ves* во множественном числе, например, *half, thief, leaf, loaf, self, shelf, wolf, knife, wife, life*.

| | |
|--------------|----------------|
| <i>half</i> | <i>halves</i> |
| <i>thief</i> | <i>thieves</i> |
| <i>knife</i> | <i>knives</i> |
| <i>wife</i> | <i>wives</i> |
| <i>life</i> | <i>lives</i> |

3 Опускание *-e*

a Если слово оканчивается на одно *-e*, перед *-ing, -ed, -er* и *-est -e* обычно опускается.

| | |
|--------------|----------------|
| <i>live</i> | <i>living</i> |
| <i>move</i> | <i>moved</i> |
| <i>white</i> | <i>whiter</i> |
| <i>large</i> | <i>largest</i> |

Исключение: *be/being*

b В глаголах, оканчивающихся на *-ee, -e* перед *-ing* не опускается.

| | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| <i>see</i> | <i>seeing</i> |
| <i>agree</i> | <i>agreeing</i> |

c В прилагательных, оканчивающихся на *-e*, *-e* перед окончанием наречия *-ly* не опускается.

| | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| <i>nice</i> | <i>nicely</i> |
| <i>complete</i> | <i>completely</i> |

d Но в прилагательных, оканчивающихся на *-le, -le* переходит в *-ly* при образовании наречий.

| | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>simple</i> | <i>simply</i> |
| <i>possible</i> | <i>possibly</i> |

Исключения: *true/truly, whole/wholly*

4 Changing *-y* to *-i*

a Если слово оканчивается на согласную + *-y*, перед *-s -y* переходит в *-ie*.

| | |
|--------------|----------------|
| <i>city</i> | <i>cities</i> |
| <i>carry</i> | <i>carries</i> |

b Если слово оканчивается на согласную + *-y*, перед *-ed, -er, -est* и *-ly -y* переходит в *-i*.

| | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| <i>carry</i> | <i>carried</i> |
| <i>happy</i> | <i>happier</i> |
| <i>friendly</i> | <i>friendliest</i> |
| <i>easy</i> | <i>easily</i> |

c перед *-ing -y* переходит в *-i*.

| | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| <i>carry</i> | <i>carrying</i> |
| <i>fly</i> | <i>flying</i> |

d после гласных *-y* не переходит в *-i*.

| | |
|-------------|---------------|
| <i>boy</i> | <i>boys</i> |
| <i>pray</i> | <i>prayed</i> |
| <i>grey</i> | <i>greyer</i> |

Исключения: *day/daily, pay/paid, say/said, lay/laid*

5 Changing *-ie* to *-y*

Если слово оканчивается на *-ie*, перед *-ing -ie* переходит в *-y*.

| | |
|------------|--------------|
| <i>tie</i> | <i>tying</i> |
| <i>lie</i> | <i>lying</i> |

6 Doubling final consonants (Удвоение конечных согласных)

a Если односложное слово оканчивается на одну гласную + одну согласную, перед **-ing, -ed, -er** и **-est** конечная согласная **удваивается**.

| | |
|-------------|----------------------|
| <i>sit</i> | <i>sitting</i> |
| <i>drop</i> | <i>dropped</i> |
| <i>big</i> | <i>bigger</i> |
| <i>fat</i> | <i>fattest</i> |

b Но в конце слова **-у, -wили -х** не **удваивается**.

| | |
|-------------|----------------------|
| <i>play</i> | <i>playing</i> |
| <i>slow</i> | <i>slower</i> |
| <i>mix</i> | <i>mixed</i> |

c Если слово, состоящее из двух и более слогов, оканчивается на одну гласную + одну согласную, конечная согласная удваивается, если конечный слог ударный.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>forget</i> (for'get) | <i>forgetting</i> |
| <i>prefer</i> (pre'fer) | <i>preferred</i> |
| <i>admit</i> (ad'mit) | <i>admitted</i> |

Если конечный слог не ударный, конечная согласная не удваивается.

| | |
|---------------------------------|----------------|
| <i>open</i> ('open) | <i>opening</i> |
| <i>visit</i> ('visit) | <i>visited</i> |

Исключения: В британском варианте английского языка удваивается в конце слова **-l**, если конечный слог неударный.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>travel</i> ('travel) | <i>travelling</i> |
| <i>cancel</i> ('cancel) | <i>cancelled</i> |

EXERCISE 188A

Add the **-s/-es** ending to these words; put the words into the correct groups: 1, 2, 3 or 4.

| | | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|------------------|-------|--------|
| wait | shelf | copy | catch | buzz | plate |
| worry | miss | run | pay | admit | wife |
| finish | fly | knife | spy | disco | tomato |
| teach | marry | | | | |

| | | | |
|-----------|------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| +s | +es | /s +ies | /z +ives |
| waits | catches | copies | shelves |

EXERCISE 188B

Add the **-ing** endings to these words; put the words into the correct groups: 1, 2, 3 or 4.

| | | | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|-------|--------|-------|
| stop | die | dry | come | play | knit | show |
| fix | make | tie | offer | visit | travel | write |
| plan | marry | shop | behave | stay | admit | |
| leave | | | | | | |

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|----------------|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| +ing | /d +ing | /j +ying | x2+-ing |
| drying | coming | dying | stopping |

EXERCISE 188C

Add the *-ed* endings to these words; put the words into the correct groups: 1, 2, 3 or 4.

| |
|---|
| apply rob wash arrive trap pull move empty drop carry discover phone pray hope travel study show admit save |
|---|

| | |
|--|--|
| 1 + <i>-ed</i> <i>washed</i> | 2 / + <i>-ed</i> <i>arrived</i> |
| 3 -y+ <i>-ied</i> <i>applied</i> | 4 X 2+ <i>-ed</i> <i>robbed</i> |

EXERCISE 188D

Add the *-er* and *-est* endings to these words; put the words into the correct groups: 1, 2, 3 or 4.

| |
|--|
| happy big high nice late busy slow simple short wide fat easy thin cheap white red black funny |
|--|

| | |
|--|--|
| 1 + <i>-er/-est</i> <i>higher - highest</i> | 2 / + <i>-er/-est</i> <i>nicer - nicest</i> |
| 3 / + <i>-ier/-iest</i> <i>happier - happiest</i> | 4 x 2 + <i>-er/-est</i> <i>bigger - biggest</i> |

EXERCISE 188E

Add the *-ly* endings to these words; put the words into the correct groups: 1, 2 or 3.

| |
|---|
| tete happy gentle hopeful real horrible idle quick beautiful lucky dry sudden definite polite heavy probable temporary |
|---|

| | | |
|------------------------------------|---|---|
| 1 + <i>-ly</i> <i>lately</i> | 2 / + <i>-ly</i> <i>gently</i> | 3 / + <i>-ily</i> <i>happily</i> |
|------------------------------------|---|---|

189 Contractions (Стяжение)

1 'Стяжение' - это такие краткие формы, как *I'm* (= *I am*), *you've* (= *you have*), *isn't* (= *is not*) и *don't* (= *do not*).

К стяжению очень часто прибегают в разговорном и неофициальном письменном английском языке, например, в письмах к друзьям.

При стяжении на письме ставится апостроф (') там, где буква или буквы опускаются.

I'm (= *I am*; ' = *a*)

you've (= *you have*; ' = *ha*)

isn't (= *is not*; ' = *o*)

don't (= *do not*; ' = *o*)

2 Ниже приведены наиболее употребительные стяжения:

I'm /aɪm/ (= *I am*)

I've /aɪv/ (= *I have*)

I'll /aɪl/ (= *I will*)

I'd /aɪd/ (= *I had* or *I would*)

you're /juə(r)/ (= *you are*)

you've /ju:v/ (= *you have*)

you'll /ju:l/ (= *you will*)

you'd /ju:d/ (= *you had* or *you would*)

he's /hi:z/ (= *he is* or *he has*)

he'll /hi:l/ (= *he will*)

he'd /hi:d/ (= *he had* or *he would*)

she's /ʃi:z/ (= *she is* or *she has*)

she'll /ʃi:l/ (= *she will*)

she'd /ʃi:d/ (= *she had* or *she would*)

it's /ɪts/ (= *it is* or *it has*)

it'll /ɪtl/ (= *it will*)

it'd /ɪtəd/ (= *it had* or *it would*)

we're /wiə(r)/ (= *we are*)

we've /wi:v/ (= *we have*)

we'll /wi:l/ (= *we will*)

we'd /wi:d/ (= *we had* or *we would*)

they're /ðeə(r)/ (= *they are*)

they've /ðeɪv/ (= *they have*)

they'll /ðeɪl/ (= *they will*)

they'd /ðeɪd/ (= *they had* or *they would*)

let's /lets/ (= *let us*)

isn't /ɪznt/ (= *is not*)

aren't /ɑ:nt/ (= *are not*)

wasn't /wɒznt/ (= *was not*)

weren't /wɜ:nt/ (= *were not*)

don't /dəʊnt/ (= *do not*)

doesn't /dɒznt/ (= *does not*)

didn't /dɪdnt/ (= *did not*)

haven't /hævnt/ (= *have not*)

hasn't /hæznt/ (= *has not*)

hadn't /hædnt/ (= *had not*)

can't /kɑ:nt/ (= *cannot*)

couldn't /kʊdnt/ (= *could not*)

won't /wəʊnt/ (= *will not*)

wouldn't /wʊdnt/ (= *would not*)

shan't /ʃɑ:nt/ (= *shall not*)

shouldn't /ʃʊdnt/ (= *should not*)

oughtn't /ɔ:tnt/ (= *ought not*)

mustn't /mʌsnt/ (= *must not*)

needn't /ni:dnt/ (= *need not*)

mightn't /maɪnt/ (= *might not*)

daren't /deənt/ (= *dare not*)

Обратите внимание, что:

's может быть *is* или *has*

She's a student. (= *She is a student.*)

She's got two brothers. (= *She has got two brothers.*)

'd может быть *had* или *would*

I'd seen the film before. (= *I had seen the film before.*)

I'd like a coffee. (= *I would like a coffee.*)

am not сокращается как *aren't* /ɑ:nt/ в вопросах, например, *Aren't I right?*

Обратите внимание, что иногда возможны два отрицательных стяжения. Нельзя, например, сказать *she isn't* или *she's not*, *you aren't* или *you're not*, *he won't* или *he'll not*.

Очень часто краткие формы употребляются после личного местоимения, например, *I'm*, *you've* или в отрицаниях, например, *isn't*, *don't*. Но иногда краткую форму (особенно 's) можно употреблять после существительного.

Maria's a student. (= *Maria is a student.*)

Myfather's got a new car. (= *Myfather has got a new car.*)

Краткая форма также может употребляться после вопросительного слова, например, *what*, *where* *who* и после *there*, *here*, *that* и *now*.

What's the time? (= *What is the time?*)

There'll be trouble. (= *There will be trouble.*)

Where's Peter gone? (= *Where has Peter gone?*)

That's right. (= *That is right.*)

Нельзя употреблять утвердительные краткие формы 's, 've и т.д. в конце предложения (потому что глагол в конце предложения ударный).

Do you know who she is? (Not: *Do you know who she's?*)

'Have you finished?' 'Yes, I have.' (Not: *'Yes, I've.'*)

Но отрицания *isn't*, *haven't* и т.д. могут употребляться в конце предложения.

'Is she English?' 'No, she isn't.'

You've finished, but I haven't.

Note

– В 'ненормированном' английском языке (языке, который не считается 'правильным') *ain't* /eɪnt/ часто употребляется как сокращенная форма от *am not*, *are not*, *is not* and *have not*, *has not*, например, *I ain't hungry.* (= / *am not hungry.*)

– Не смешивайте *it's* (= *it is* или *it has*) и *its* (притяжательная форма от *it*), например: *The cat ate its food.*

190 Irregular verbs (Неправильные глаголы)

Verbs can be regular or irregular: (Глаголы могут быть правильными и неправильными)

1 Regular verbs

Regular verbs (eg *work, play, move*) add *-ed* in the past tense and past participle.

| INFINITIVE FORM | PAST TENSE | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|
| <i>work</i> | <i>worked</i> | <i>worked</i> |
| <i>play</i> | <i>played</i> | <i>played</i> |
| <i>move</i> | <i>moved</i> | <i>moved</i> |

2 Irregular verbs

Irregular verbs do not add *-ed* in the past tense and past participle:

a Некоторые неправильные глаголы имеют одинаковую форму в infinitive, past tense и past participle.

| INFINITIVE FORM | PAST TENSE | PAST PARTICIPLE | INFINITIVE FORM | PAST TENSE | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| <i>bet</i> | <i>bet</i> | <i>bet</i> | <i>put</i> | <i>put</i> | <i>put</i> |
| <i>burst</i> | <i>burst</i> | <i>burst</i> | <i>read /ri:d/</i> | <i>read /red/</i> | <i>read /red/</i> |
| <i>cost</i> | <i>cost</i> | <i>cost</i> | <i>set</i> | <i>set</i> | <i>set</i> |
| <i>cut</i> | <i>cut</i> | <i>cut</i> | <i>shut</i> | <i>shut</i> | <i>shut</i> |
| <i>hit</i> | <i>hit</i> | <i>hit</i> | <i>split</i> | <i>split</i> | <i>split</i> |
| <i>hurt</i> | <i>hurt</i> | <i>hurt</i> | <i>spread</i> | <i>spread</i> | <i>spread</i> |
| <i>let</i> | <i>let</i> | <i>let</i> | | | |

b Другие неправильные глаголы одинаковы в двух из трех форм.

| INFINITIVE FORM | PAST TENSE | PAST PARTICIPLE | INFINITIVE FORM | PAST TENSE | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|--------------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------|--------------------|
| <i>beat</i> | <i>beat</i> | <i>beaten</i> | <i>fight</i> | <i>fought</i> | <i>fought</i> |
| <i>become</i> | <i>became</i> | <i>become</i> | <i>find</i> | <i>found</i> | <i>found</i> |
| <i>bend</i> | <i>bent</i> | <i>bent</i> | <i>get</i> | <i>got</i> | <i>got</i> |
| <i>bleed</i> | <i>bled</i> | <i>bled</i> | <i>hang</i> | <i>hung</i> | <i>hung</i> |
| <i>breed</i> | <i>bred</i> | <i>bred</i> | <i>have</i> | <i>had</i> | <i>had</i> |
| <i>bring</i> | <i>brought</i> | <i>brought</i> | <i>hear</i> | <i>heard</i> | <i>heard</i> |
| <i>build</i> | <i>built</i> | <i>built</i> | <i>hold</i> | <i>held</i> | <i>held</i> |
| <i>burn</i> | <i>burnt*</i> | <i>burnt*</i> | <i>keep</i> | <i>kept</i> | <i>kept</i> |
| <i>buy</i> | <i>bought</i> | <i>bought</i> | <i>lay</i> | <i>laid</i> | <i>laid</i> |
| <i>catch</i> | <i>caught</i> | <i>caught</i> | <i>lead</i> | <i>led</i> | <i>led</i> |
| <i>come</i> | <i>came</i> | <i>come</i> | <i>lean</i> | <i>lent*</i> | <i>lent*</i> |
| <i>creep-</i> | <i>crept</i> | <i>crept</i> | <i>learn</i> | <i>learnt*</i> | <i>learnt*</i> |
| <i>deal</i> | <i>dealt</i> | <i>dealt</i> | <i>leap</i> | <i>leapt*</i> | <i>leapt*</i> |
| <i>dig</i> | <i>dug</i> | <i>dug</i> | <i>leave</i> | <i>left</i> | <i>left</i> |
| <i>dream</i> | <i>dreamt*</i> | <i>dreamt*</i> | <i>lend</i> | <i>lent</i> | <i>lent</i> |
| <i>feed</i> | <i>fed</i> | <i>fed</i> | <i>light</i> | <i>lit</i> | <i>lit</i> |
| <i>feel</i> | <i>felt</i> | <i>felt</i> | <i>lose</i> | <i>lost</i> | <i>lost</i> |

| INFINITIVE FORM | PAST TENSE | PAST PARTICIPLE | INFINITIVE FORM | PAST TENSE | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| <i>make</i> | <i>made</i> | <i>made</i> | <i>stand</i> | <i>stood</i> | <i>stood</i> |
| <i>mean</i> | <i>meant</i> | <i>meant</i> | <i>stick</i> | <i>stuck</i> | <i>stuck</i> |
| <i>meet</i> | <i>met</i> | <i>met</i> | <i>sting</i> | <i>stung</i> | <i>stung</i> |
| <i>pay</i> | <i>paid</i> | <i>paid</i> | <i>strike</i> | <i>struck</i> | <i>struck</i> |
| <i>run</i> | <i>ran</i> | <i>run</i> | <i>sweep</i> | <i>swept</i> | <i>swept</i> |
| <i>say</i> | <i>said</i> | <i>said</i> | <i>swing</i> | <i>swung</i> | <i>swung</i> |
| <i>sell</i> | <i>sold</i> | <i>sold</i> | <i>teach</i> | <i>taught</i> | <i>taught</i> |
| <i>send</i> | <i>sent</i> | <i>sent</i> | <i>tell</i> | <i>told</i> | <i>told</i> |
| <i>shine</i> | <i>shone</i> | <i>shone</i> | <i>think</i> | <i>thought</i> | <i>thought</i> |
| <i>shoot</i> | <i>shot</i> | <i>shot</i> | <i>understand</i> | <i>understood</i> | <i>understood</i> |
| <i>sit</i> | <i>sat</i> | <i>sat</i> | <i>win</i> | <i>won</i> | <i>won</i> |
| <i>sleep</i> | <i>slept</i> | <i>slept</i> | <i>wind</i> | <i>wound</i> | <i>wound</i> |
| <i>smell</i> | <i>smelt*</i> | <i>smelt*</i> | | | |
| <i>speed</i> | <i>sped</i> | <i>sped</i> | | | |
| <i>spell</i> | <i>spelt*</i> | <i>spelt*</i> | | | |
| <i>spend</i> | <i>spent</i> | <i>spent</i> | | | |
| <i>spill</i> | <i>spilt*</i> | <i>spilt*</i> | | | |
| <i>spit</i> | <i>spat</i> | <i>spat</i> | | | |
| <i>spoil</i> | <i>spoilt*</i> | <i>spoilt*</i> | | | |

* Эти глаголы могут быть правильными:
burned, dreamed, leaned, leaped, learned,
smelled, *spelled, spilled, spoiled.*

С Другие неправильные глаголы различны в трех формах.

| INFINITIVE FORM | PAST TENSE | PAST PARTICIPLE | INFINITIVE FORM | PAST TENSE | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|------------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| <i>be</i> | <i>was/were</i> | <i>been</i> | <i>ring</i> | <i>rang</i> | <i>rung</i> |
| <i>begin</i> | <i>began</i> | <i>begun</i> | <i>rise</i> | <i>rose</i> | <i>risen</i> |
| <i>bite</i> | <i>bit</i> | <i>bitten</i> | <i>see</i> | <i>saw</i> | <i>seen</i> |
| <i>blow</i> | <i>blew</i> | <i>blown</i> | <i>sew</i> | <i>sewed</i> | <i>sewn*</i> |
| <i>break</i> | <i>broke</i> | <i>broken</i> | <i>shake</i> | <i>shook</i> | <i>shaken</i> |
| <i>choose</i> | <i>chose</i> | <i>chosen</i> | <i>show</i> | <i>showed</i> | <i>shown</i> |
| <i>do</i> | <i>did</i> | <i>done</i> | <i>shrink</i> | <i>shrank</i> | <i>shrunk</i> |
| <i>draw</i> | <i>drew</i> | <i>drawn</i> | <i>sing</i> | <i>sang</i> | <i>sung</i> |
| <i>drink</i> | <i>drank</i> | <i>drunk</i> | <i>sink</i> | <i>sank</i> | <i>sunk</i> |
| <i>drive</i> | <i>drove</i> | <i>driven</i> | <i>speak</i> | <i>spoke</i> | <i>spoken</i> |
| <i>eat</i> | <i>ate</i> | <i>eaten</i> | <i>spring</i> | <i>sprang</i> | <i>sprung</i> |
| <i>fall</i> | <i>fell</i> | <i>fallen</i> | <i>steal</i> | <i>stole</i> | <i>stolen</i> |
| <i>fly</i> | <i>flew</i> | <i>flown</i> | <i>stink</i> | <i>stank</i> | <i>stunk</i> |
| <i>forbid</i> | <i>forbade</i> | <i>forbidden</i> | <i>swear</i> | <i>swore</i> | <i>sworn</i> |
| <i>forget</i> | <i>forgot</i> | <i>forgotten</i> | <i>swim</i> | <i>swam</i> | <i>swum</i> |
| <i>forgive</i> | <i>forgave</i> | <i>forgiven</i> | <i>take</i> | <i>took</i> | <i>taken</i> |
| <i>freeze</i> | <i>froze</i> | <i>frozen</i> | <i>tear</i> | <i>tore</i> | <i>torn</i> |
| <i>give</i> | <i>gave</i> | <i>given</i> | <i>throw</i> | <i>threw</i> | <i>thrown</i> |
| <i>go</i> | <i>went</i> | <i>gone</i> | <i>wake</i> | <i>woke</i> | <i>woken</i> |
| <i>grow</i> | <i>grew</i> | <i>grown</i> | <i>wear</i> | <i>wore</i> | <i>worn</i> |
| <i>hide</i> | <i>hid</i> | <i>hidden</i> | <i>write</i> | <i>wrote</i> | <i>written</i> |
| <i>know</i> | <i>knew</i> | <i>known</i> | | | |
| <i>lie</i> | <i>lay</i> | <i>lain</i> | | | |
| <i>mistake</i> | <i>mistook</i> | <i>mistaken</i> | | | |
| <i>ride</i> | <i>rode</i> | <i>ridden</i> | | | |

* Этот глагол может также быть правильным: *sewed.*

Учебно-контрольные тесты

Эти тесты предназначены для проверки понимания и умений использования основных разделов грамматики в учебном пособии

The Heinemann English Grammar.

Предлагается 88 тестов.

Ответы на тесты на страницах 348-353 издания, содержащего ключи к ответами.

Contents

- 1 Present simple and present continuous (Units 1-3)
- 2 Past simple and past continuous (Units 4-5)
- 3 *Been* and *gone* (Units 6-7)
- 4 Present perfect *with just, yet* and *already* (Units 6, 8)
- 5 Present perfect simple and present perfect continuous (Units 6, 9, 10)
- 6 Present perfect *with for* and *since* (Units 6, 11)
- 7 Present perfect and past simple (Units 6, 12)
- 8 Present perfect and present tense (Units 6, 9, 13)
- 9 Present perfect simple and past simple (Unit 14)
- 10 Past perfect continuous, past simple and past continuous (Units 4, 5, 15)
- 11 *Will* and *going to* (Units 16-18)
- 12 Present continuous and *going to* (Units 19-20)
- 13 Present simple and *will* (Units 21-22)
- 14 Future continuous and future perfect (Units 23-24)
- 15 Future in the past: *was/were going to* (Unit 25)
- 16 Continuous forms with *always* (Unit 26)
- 17 Verbs not used in the continuous (Unit 27)
- 18 Review of the present and the past (Unit 28)
- 19 Review of the future (Unit 29)
- 20 Imperative and *let's* (Unit 30)
- 21 *Be* (Unit 31)
- 22 *There is, there are* (Unit 32)
- 23 *Have* and *have got* (Units 33-34)
- 24 Ability: *can, could, be able to* (Unit 36)
- 25 Permission: *can, could, may, might, be allowed to* (Unit 37)
- 26 Obligation and necessity (Units 38-39)
- 27 Review of permission and obligation (Unit 40)
- 28 *Needn't have* and *didn't need to* (Unit 41)
- 29 Obligation and advice (Unit 42)
- 30 Possibility: *may, might, could* (Unit 43)
- 31 Possibility: *can* (Unit 44)
- 32 Probability: *should, ought to* (Unit 45)
- 33 **Deduction:** *must, can't* (Unit 46)
- 34 Review of possibility, probability and deduction (Unit 47)
- 35 Requests, offers and suggestions (Units 48-50)
- 36 Habits: *used to, will, would* (Unit 51)
- 37 Refusals: *won't, wouldn't; promises* and threats: *will* (Units 52-53)
- 38 *May/might as well* (Unit 54)
- 39 Other uses of *should* (Unit 55)
- 40 *Wish* and *if only* (Unit 56)
- 41 *Would rather* (Unit 57)
- 42 *It's time* (Unit 58)
- 43 The passive (Units 59-60)
- 44 The passive with *by* and *with* (Unit 63)
- 45 The passive (Units 61, 62, 64)
- 46 *Have something done* (Unit 65)
- 47 *If* sentences, conditionals (Units 66, 68-70, 72)
- 48 Unreal past conditionals (Unit 71)
- 49 Conditional clauses without *if* (Unit 73)
- 50 Review of conditionals (Unit 74)
- 51 Reported speech: statements (Units 76-78)
- 52 Reported speech: questions (Unit 78)
- 53 Using the *to* infinitive in reported speech (Unit 79)
- 54 Review of reported speech (Unit 80)
- 55 *-ing* form or infinitive (Units 82-98)
- 56 (*-ing* and *ed*) adjectives (Unit 99)
- 57 Participle (*-ing*) clauses (Unit 100)
- 58 Singular and plural (Units 101-103)
- 59 Possessive forms (Units 104-106)
- 60 Countable and uncountable nouns (Unit 107)
- 61 Articles (Unit 108)
- 62 Articles (Unit 109)
- 63 Articles (Units 108-113)
- 64 Quantity (Units 114-119)
- 65 Pronouns, etc (Units 120-125)
- 66 *One (s)* (Unit 124)

-
- 67 **Something, anything**, etc (Unit 125)
68 Form, position and order of adjectives (Unit 126)
69 Comparatives, superlatives and **as ... as** (Units 127-129)
70 Adjectives and adverbs (Unit 130)
71 Adverb position (Units 131-136)
72 Adverbs (Units 133-139)
73 Comparison: adverbs (Unit 140)
74 Negatives (Unit 141)
75 Questions (Units 142-147)
76 Question tags (Unit 147)
77 Reply questions (Unit 148)
78 Indirect questions (Unit 149)
79 Short answers (Units 150, 152)
- 80 **So/neither am I** etc (Unit 151)
81 Relative clauses (Units 153-159)
82 Linking words (Units 160-164)
83 Prepositions of place and movement (Units 165-168)
84 Prepositions of time (Units 169-174)
85 Other prepositions (Units 175-177)
86 Word and preposition combinations (Units 178-182)
87 Indirect objects with or without **to and/or** (Unit 184)
88 Phrasal verbs (Units 185-186)
- Answers** on pages 348-352 of the '**with answer key**' edition.

1 Present simple and present continuous (Units 1-3)

(i) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form: the present simple or the present continuous.

- 1 Britain _____. (have) an election at least once every four years.
- 2 I _____ (negotiate) a new pay deal with my boss at the moment.
- 3 It _____ (rain) every time I _____ (leave) my umbrella at home.
- 4 Please sit **down!** I _____. (try) to watch this TV programme.
- 5 American Football _____ (become) very popular in England.
- 6 Robert never _____ (go) abroad for his holidays. It's too expensive.
- 7 Many of the world's natural resources _____ (disappear).
- 8 Rain _____ (fall) very heavily in Bombay during June and July.
- 9 My parents are in America on holiday. They _____ (stay) near San Francisco.
- 10 The traffic _____ (move) very slowly on the motorway today. Workmen _____ (repair) the road.

(ii) Choose the correct answer — A or B.

- 1 _____ skiing in the French Alps every year.
A *We go* B *We're going*
- 2 _____ one of Agatha Christie's books at the moment.
A */ read* B *I'm reading*
- 3 Some modern cars _____ on unleaded petrol.
A *run* B *are running*
- 4 The St Lawrence River _____ into the North Atlantic.
A *flows* B *is flowing*
- 5 'Where's the cat?' '_____ on the sofa.'
A *It lies* B *It's lying*
- 6 Drive **carefully** _____ heavily this morning.
A *It snows* B *It's snowing*
- 7 Be **careful!** The ladder _____ down.
A *falls* B *is falling*
- 8 The planet Mercury _____ round the sun every eighty-eight days.
A *travels* B *is travelling*

2 Past simple and past continuous (Units 4-5)

(i) There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

- 1 The Titanic travelled to New York when it hit an iceberg and sank in the Atlantic.
- 2 The jumper was shrinking when I washed it.
- 3 Christopher Columbus was sailing in the Santa Maria when he discovered America.
- 4 I was breaking my toe when I tripped over the dog.
- 5 The mouse was having a heart attack when the cat jumped down from the chair.
- 6 The footballer ran towards the goal when he fell over.
- 7 James Dean drove a sports car when he was dying.

(ii) Make sentences. Put the verbs into the correct form: the past simple or the past continuous.

- 1 while I | write | a letter the phone | ring |.
- 2 you | read | the newspaper as soon as it j ar-
rive|?
- 3 she | not | lock | the door when she | leave |
the office |.
- 4 the train | go | through the tunnel when it |
suddenly | stop |.
- 5 Sally | wash | her hair when the doorbell |
ring|.
- 6 John Logic Baird | invent | the television or
the telephone | ?
- 7 they | cry | when they | hear | the bad news |.
- 8 the cat | lie | on the sofa when the mouse |
come | into the room |.

3 Been and gone (Units 6-7)

Choose the correct answer.

- 1 The children are back at school now.
They've *been/gone* on holiday for the summer.
- 2 'Have you ever *been/gone* to Niagara Falls?'
'No, but I've *been/gone* to the Great lakes.'
- 3 Bill worked very hard today. He's *been/gone* to bed early.

4 I've got a lot of money. I've *been/gone* to the bank today.

5 'His car isn't in the garage. I think he's *been/gone* away for the day.'

4 Present perfect with *just, yet* and *already* (Units 6, 8)

Put the words in the correct order.
(Sometimes two answers are possible.)

Example:

started | have | they | to have | just | dinner |.
They have just started to have dinner.

1 just | to rain | has | it | started |.

2 you | that book | have | yet | finished | ?

3 yet | that film | seen | haven't | I |.

4 the bus | just | left | has |.

5 you | already | done | your shopping | have | ?

6 has | for several jobs | Bob | applied | already |.

5 Present perfect simple and present perfect continuous (Units 6, 9, 10)

(i) Complete the sentences using the present perfect simple or present perfect continuous of the words in the box.

| | | |
|-------|--------|------|
| break | grow | make |
| play | put up | lose |

1 My young brother _____ three centimetres this month.

2 The young children _____ a snowman all morning.

3 I _____ my arm twice in two years.

4 I'm tired. I _____ tennis all afternoon.

5 Have you got any money? I _____ my wallet.

6 They _____ their tent for over an hour now and they still haven't finished.

(ii) Complete the questions. Use the present perfect simple or present perfect continuous.

Example:

I've saved some money.

How much *have you saved*!

How long *have you been saving* ?

1 Mike is losing his hair.

How long _____ his hair?

How much hair _____ ?

2 I'm looking for a flat.

How many flats _____ at?

How long _____ ?

3 Annie is doing her homework.

How long _____ it?

How much homework _____ ?

4 They're playing tennis.

How long _____ ?

How many games _____ ?

6 Present perfect with *for* and *since* (Units 6, 11)

Re-write the sentences beginning with the words given. Use *for* or *since*.

Example:

Great Britain introduced decimal currency in 1971.

Great Britain has had *decimal currency since* 1971.

1 I last read *War and Peace* in 1980.

I haven't _____

2 Sarah started studying Spanish two years ago.

Sarah has been _____

3 Steven Spielberg started directing films in the 1960s.

Steven Spielberg has been _____

4 It started raining on Monday.

It hasn't stopped _____

5 My mother stopped working ten years ago.

My mother hasn't _____

6 My sister stopped skiing in 1989.

My sister hasn't _____

7 Robert de Niro began acting in the 1970s.

Robert de Niro has been _____

7 Present perfect and past simple (Units 6, 12)

(i) There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1 I live in Brighton. I lived here for ten years.

2 Tolstoy has written *War and Peace*.

- 3 I started studying Spanish two years ago.
 4 Oh, **no!** **Look!** Someone stole my car **radio!**
 5 Who has discovered America?
 6 We've played tennis yesterday afternoon.
 7 When have you passed your driving test?
 8 When did Neil Armstrong walk on the moon?
 9 I never ate Chinese food in my life.
 10 Look at **Mike!** He grew a **beard!**

(ii) **Choose the correct answer — A or B?**

- 1 I _____ to Los Angeles in 1980.
 A *have been* B *went*
 2 You _____ a lot of interesting things in your life.
 A *have done* B *did*
 3 James Dean _____ in the film Rebel without a Cause.
 A *has starred* B *starred*
 4 Who _____ the wheel?
 A *has invented* B *invented*
 5 I _____ coffee since 1980.
 A *haven't drunk* B *didn't drink*
 6 How many people _____ in the Second World War?
 A *have died* B *died*
 7 I work in a bank now. I _____ there for a year.
 A *have worked* B *worked*
 8 We _____ the new Steven Spielberg film last week.
 A *have seen* B *saw*
 9 _____ the news last night?
 A *Have you heard* B *Did you hear*
 10 When _____ your new car?
 A *have you bought* B *did you buy*

8 Present perfect and present tense (Units 6, 9, 13)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

- 1 Carlo lives in Rome since three years.
 2 **Bob** is working hard at the moment.
 3 How long are you studying English?
 4 My parents are married for thirty years.
 5 I'm using a computer these days.
 6 Sarah knows Simon for a long time.
 7 Those men are waiting outside since 2.00.

- 8 Have you been sitting there for long?
 9 My sister lives in Brighton since 1980.
 10 The Rolling Stones rock group are playing together for over twenty years.

9 Past perfect simple and past simple (Unit 14)

(i) **Choose the correct answer — A or B.**

- 1 I arrived at the bus station late yesterday. When I got there, my bus _____
 A *left* B *had left*
 2 I arrived at the bus station at 10 o'clock last night. My bus _____ at 10.15.
 A *left* B *had left*
 3 I was asleep when my friend phoned me last night. I _____ in bed for two hours.
 A *was* B *had been*
 4 When I arrived home my father wasn't there. He _____ out.
 A *went* B *had gone*
 5 I had breakfast when I _____ a shower.
 A *had* B *had had*

(ii) **Make sentences. Put the verbs into the past simple or past perfect simple.**

- 1 when I | visit | the town last month | they | build | a new hospital
 2 when we | have | dinner | we | go | out for a walk
 3 when Sue | look | in the fridge | all the food | go
 4 I | not know | the way to John's house because I | not be | there before
 5 Mike | get | really exhausted in his first marathon because he | not run | in such a long race before

10 Past perfect continuous, past simple and past continuous (Units 4, 5, 15)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

- 1 We were waiting for an hour when our train finally arrived yesterday.
 2 I'd been playing football for over twenty years when I gave it up in 1980.

- 3 We lived in Paris for ten years when we moved to Madrid last year.
 4 After we'd been walking round the town for a few hours, we decided to have lunch.
 5 It was late and I was working since early in the morning, so I was very tired.

11 Will and going to (Units 16–18)

Complete the sentences. Use *will* or *going to* and the verbs in the box.

| | | | | | |
|-------|------|-------|------|------|------|
| Teach | lend | live | bite | take | look |
| have | buy | 'meet | rain | | |

- 1 'Would you like to come to the cinema with us?' 'All right. I _____ you at 7.00.'
 2 Look at those black clouds. It _____
 3 'I can't find my umbrella.' 'Don't worry. I _____ you mine.'
 4 'Have you seen my tennis racket?' 'No. I haven't. Just a minute. I _____ in the cupboard.'
 5 'I can't play chess.' 'I _____ you if you like.'
 6 'Why are you putting on your coat?' 'I _____ the dog for a walk.'
 7 'Why are you selling your house?' 'We _____ in the country.'
 8 Don't go near that dog! It _____ you!
 9 'I'm going to buy Sally a Walkman for her birthday.' 'She's already got one.' 'Has she? Well, I _____ her a new sweater.'
 10 Have you heard the news? Mrs Green's pregnant again. She _____ another baby.

12 Present continuous and going to (Units 19–20)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Which sentences have mistakes in them?

- 1 We're going to see a film this evening.
 2 The weather forecast says it's snowing tomorrow.
 3 What are you doing next weekend?
 4 I think England are winning the soccer match tonight.
 5 I'm staying at home this evening.
 6 Do you think Sarah is passing her exams this summer?

13 Present simple and will (Units 21–22)

Choose the correct answer — A or B.

- 1 We'll go for a picnic tomorrow if the weather _____ nice.
 A will be B is
 2 Simon will get a ticket for the U2 concert, providing he _____ all night.
 A will queue B queues
 3 If you go to Moscow, you _____ Red Square.
 A will see B see
 4 Sue will give me some money when she _____ paid.
 A will get B gets
 5 I'll phone Mike as soon as I _____ any news.
 A will hear B hear
 6 Unless you work hard, you _____ your exams.
 A will fail B fail

14 Future continuous and future perfect (Units 23–24)

Ken and Kate are going to Paris tomorrow. Here is their timetable for tomorrow morning:

| | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 7.30–8.30 | Drive to the airport |
| 8.30 | Check-in at the airport |
| 10.00–11.00 | Flight to Paris |
| 11.15–11.45 | Taxi to the hotel |
| 1.00 | Lunch at the hotel |

Complete the sentences about Ken and Kate. Put the verbs into the future continuous or future perfect.

- 1 At 8.00 they _____ (leave) home and they _____ (drive) to the airport.
 2 At 8.30 they _____ (arrive) at the airport and they _____ (check-in).
 3 At 10.15 they _____ (fly) to Paris.
 4 At 11.30 they _____ (arrive) in Paris and they _____ (drive) to their hotel.
 5 At 1.10 they _____ (have) lunch at the hotel.

15 Future in the past: was/were going to (Unit 25)

Make sentences with was/were going to ..., but

Example:

I | take | the dog for a walk | it | start | to **rain** / was going to take the **dog** for a walk, but it started to rain.

1 Robert | watch | the film on TV | he | fall asleep

2 I | visit | you | I | not have | enough time

3 Sarah | change | some traveller's cheques | the bank | be | closed

4 we | go | to the concert | it | be | **cancelled**

5 I | finish | work early | my boss | ask | me to work late

6 my parents | fly to Scotland | they | decide | to go by train

16 Continuous forms with always (Unit 26)

Put the verbs in brackets into the most suitable form: the present simple or the present continuous.

1 You're never **satisfied!** You _____ (always | complain)!

2 Maria is never late for work. She _____ (always | arrive) on time.

3 Stephanie is very conceited. She _____ (always | look) at herself in the mirror.

4 Joe is very kind. He _____ (always | help) people.

5 I never feel hungry in the mornings. I _____ (always | have) a small breakfast.

17 Verbs not used in the continuous (Unit 27)

Choose the correct answer — A or B.

1 Some people ___ there is life on other planets.

A are believing B believe

2 You look worried. What _____ about?

A are you thinking B do you think

3 'Where's Ken?' 'I think _____ a bath.'

A he's having B he has

4 I think Ken _____ a moustache.

A is having B has

5 Which sports _____?

A are you liking B do you like

6 You can switch off the **radio** _____ to it.

A I'm not listening B / **don't** listen

7 I _____ the Russian alphabet?

A Are you understanding

B Do you understand

8 **What's** wrong? You look like _____ a ghost!

A you've just been seeing

B you've just seen

9 Can you repeat that, please? _____ you.

A I wasn't hearing

B / **didn't** hear

10 How long _____ your best friend?

A have you been knowing

B have you known

18 Review of the present and the past (Unit 28)

(i) Correct the mistakes in this letter using suitable present or past forms.

Dear Mrs Black,

I write to you in reply to your advertisement in last Monday's Evening **Argus**.

At the moment, I working for Sun **Travel**, a company in London. I work there **for two years**. **Before** I was joining Sun Travel, I have worked for a student travel company in Spain. I work there for a year. Before that, I have worked for Worldwide Travel in Brighton for a year. Now I would like to move back to Brighton and I look for a job with a travel company in the **town**.

(ii) Use these words to make the sentences in a story. Put the verbs into a suitable present or past form.

1 What | be | the most embarrassing thing that | ever happen | to you in your life?

- 2 I | have | a terrible experience last Saturday.
 3 This | be | what | happen.
 4 I | leave | my flat at 2 o'clock and | go | into town to do some shopping.
 5 I | go | shopping most Saturday afternoons.
 6 By 4 o'clock I | finish | shopping and I | go | into a cafe for a cup of coffee.
 7 While I | sit | in the cafe, I | see | a friend called Julie Jones and she | join | me.
 8 At around 4.30 Julie and I | pay | the bill and | leave | the cafe.
 9 As we | leave, | I | offer | to give Julie a lift home in my car.
 10 She | say | she would like a lift so we | walk | to the car park together.
 11 I always | put | my car in the same car park near the town centre, but when we | get | to the car park, I | have | a big surprise.
 12 My car | be | not | there!
 13 Of course, I immediately | think | that someone | steal | it.
 14 I | phone | the police, but luckily I | do not.
 15 I suddenly | realise | the truth!
 16 I | not | drive | into town that day!
 17 I | come | on the bus instead.
 18 Imagine how stupid I | feel.
 19 My face | go | so red.
 20 Julie just | smile | and | say | 'Don't worry. We can take the bus home together!'

(iii) Complete the sentences in this story. Put the verbs in brackets into a suitable past form.

One night in January 1938 Samuel Beckett _____ 1 _____ (walk) home in Paris. He _____ 2 _____ (be) to the cinema and then to a cafe, where he _____ 3 _____ (spend) some time with friends. As Beckett and his friends _____ 4 _____ (walk) along the Avenue d'Orleans, a man _____ 5 _____ (stop) them and _____ 6 _____ (ask) them for money. The man _____ 7 _____ (drink) heavily all evening and he _____ 8 _____ (be) very drunk. Beckett _____ 9 _____ (refuse) to give him any money. When he _____ 10 _____ (start) to walk away the man _____ 11 _____ (take) out a knife and _____ 12 _____ (stab) Beckett in the chest. A young woman called Suzanne _____ 13 _____ (pass) by at the time. She _____ 14 _____ (stop)

and _____ 15 _____ (help) Beckett. Later she _____ 16 _____ (visit) him in hospital. Twenty-three years later Beckett and Suzanne _____ 17 _____ (get) married.

19 Review of the future (Unit 29)

Choose the correct or most suitable answer — A or B.

- 1 Who do you think _____ the next election?
 A *is winning* B *will win*
 2 _____ my flat by next weekend.
 A */ paint* B *I / have painted*
 3 Don't go out without a coat on _____ a cold.
 A *You 'll catch* B *You 're going to catch*
 4 I can't come out with you on Saturday. _____ a friend.
 A */ meet* B *I'm meeting*
 5 At 2.00 tomorrow _____ in my office.
 A *I'll work* B *'// be working*
 6 The concert _____ at 8.00 on Saturday.
 A *starts* B *is going to start*
 7 'Would you like a drink?' 'Oh, yes, _____ a Coke. Thank you.'
 A *I'll have* B *I'm going to have*
 8 'Where are you going with that ladder?' ' _____ the roof.'
 A *I'll repair* B *I'm going to repair*
 9 If _____ Martha, I'll tell her the news.
 A *I see* B *I'll see*
 10 Look out! That glass _____ off the table.
 A *falls* B *is going to fall*

20 Imperative and let's (Unit 30)

(i) How can you make your own yoghurt? Complete the instructions with the verbs in the box.

| | | | | |
|-----|-------|------|-------|------|
| add | leave | boil | leave | stir |
|-----|-------|------|-------|------|

_____ 1 _____ some milk for one minute. Then _____ 2 _____ the milk to cool for five minutes. Next, _____ 3 _____ a little natural yoghurt to the milk and _____ 4 _____ Then _____ 5 _____ the mixture in a warm place for about eight hours.

(ii) **Make suggestions. Use *Let's* or *Let's not* and the words in the box.**

| |
|----------------------------|
| tell stay hurry make |
|----------------------------|

- 1 We **don't** want to be late _____
- 2 We want to keep this a **secret** _____ anyone.
- 3 We want to be **careful** _____ any mistakes.
- 4 We **don't** want to go out now _____ at home.

21 *Be* (Unit 31)

(i) **Complete the sentences using the present or past forms of *be*.**

Hello. My name ____ 1 ____ John Jackson and my sister's name ____ 2 ____ Anna. We ____ 3 ____ from Newcastle. That ____ 4 ____ in the northeast of England. I ____ 5 ____ 25 years old and Anna ____ 6 ____ 16. Anna ____ 7 ____ born in Newcastle, but I ____ 8 ____ n't. I ____ 9 ____ born in Liverpool. What about you? What ____ 10 ____ your name? You ____ 11 ____ n't English. Where ____ 12 ____ you from? ____ 13 ____ that where you ____ 14 ____ born?

(ii) **Complete the sentences using the words in the box.**

| |
|---|
| is ('s) isn't are ('re) aren't was wasn't were weren't |
|---|

- 1 '____ Steven Spielberg a film **maker**?' 'Yes, he ____.'
- 2 '____ Dallas in **Arizona**?' 'No, it ____ It ____ in **Texas**.'
- 3 '____. Madonna **English**?' 'No, she ____ **American**.'
- 4 The **Rocky Mountains** ____ in Mexico. They ____ in the United States and Canada.
- 5 '____ Pablo Picasso **French**?' 'No, he ____ . He ____ **Spanish**.'
- 6 'Where ____ the first Olympic Games?' 'They ____ in **Greece**.'
- 7 '____ Marie and Pierre Curie **American**?' 'No, they ____'

22 *There is, there are* (Unit 32)

Complete the sentences. Use *there, it or they* with a suitable form of *be*.

Example:

There's an old castle on the hill. It's over 500 years old.

- 1 ____ a film on TV tonight ____ called *The Deer Hunter*.
- 2 ____ five **senses** ____ sight, hearing, taste, smell and touch.
- 3 '____ a computer shop in the town centre?' 'Yes, ____ in West Street.'
- 4 '____ any books about Alfred Hitchcock in the library?' 'Yes ____ in the film section.'
- 5 ____ a closing-down sale at the ABC Carpet Store last **month** ____ from the 26th to the 31st of July.
- 6 ____ another Olympic Games in the year 2020 ____ probably ____ held in Greece.

23 *Have and have got* (Units 33–34)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

- 1 I'm having a rest at the moment.
- 2 I'm having got a pain in my neck at the moment.
- 3 Had you got a good journey yesterday?
- 4 Have you got a new computer?
- 5 We're having dinner late tonight.
- 6 We usually have got dinner at 7 o'clock.
- 7 'Have you got a **car**?' 'Yes, I've got.'
- 8 I've got an appointment with the doctor.
- 9 Did Madonna have got blonde hair in 1991?
- 10 Do you have got a driving licence?

24 *Ability: can, could, be able to* (Unit 36)

Choose the correct answer — A, B or C.

- 1 How many languages ____ ?
A *do you can speak* B *can you speak*
C *can you to speak*

- 2 Mike _____ chess very well.
A *to can't play* B *doesn't can play*
C *can't play*
- 3 Maria _____ very fast when she was younger.
A *can run* B *could run*
C *was able run*
- 4 The traffic was very heavy, but Peter _____ to work on time.
A *managed to get* B *could get*
C *couldn't get*
- 5 They were whispering so I _____ what they were saying very clearly.
A *could hear* B *couldn't to hear*
C *couldn't hear*
- 6 My grandfather was a very good footballer. He _____ a professional if he had wanted to.
A *could be* B *was able to be*
C *could have been*
- 7 When Martha asked me for money, I _____ her some, so I did.
A *could lend* B *was able to lend*
C *could have lent*
- 8 Sue would like _____ to buy a new car.
A *to be able to afford* B *to can afford*
C *be able to afford*
- 9 Do you think that doctors _____ cancer in the future?
A *will can cure* B *will able to cure*
C *will be able to cure*
- 10 I _____ the company's offer of a job in Edinburgh, but I didn't want to live in Scotland.
A *could accept* B *could have accepted*
C *could to have accepted*

- 4 'Could I borrow your dictionary?' 'Yes, of course you **might**.'
- 5 My brother may borrow my sister's computer any time he wants to.
- 6 You can have a look at my newspaper if you like.
- 7 My sister's daughter could stay up late and watch the World Cup on TV last night.

26 Obligation and necessity (Units 38–39)

(i) Re-write the sentences using the words in brackets.

Example:

It is against the law to drive without a licence. (*mustn't*)

You mustn't drive without a licence.

1 It **isn't** necessary to be over 16 to get married, (*don't have to*)

2 It is important for me to pass the exam. (*must*)

3 It is necessary to have an appointment to see the **manager**. (*have to*)

4 It **isn't** necessary for you to apologise. (*don't have to*)

5 It is against the law to drive without a seat belt. (*mustn't*)

(ii) Complete each sentence using the most suitable word in the box.

| | | | |
|-----------|---------|---------|--------|
| must | have to | have to | had to |
| having to | have to | | |

1 I'm sorry, but I can't see you this evening. My boss has told me I _____ work late.

2 You're always working late! You _____ work late yesterday, too!

3 I've got a terrible toothache. I really _____ go to the dentist.

4 I've got an appointment with the dentist today. I _____ be there at 2.00.

5 I hate _____ go to the dentist.

6 The law says that you _____ report a motor accident to the police.

25 Permission: *can, could, may, might, be allowed to* (Unit 37)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1 'Can I use your car this evening?' 'Yes, of course you **could**.'

2 The law says that you might not drive a car in Britain without a seat belt.

3 'May I ask you for a favour?' 'Of course you **can**.'

27 Review of permission and obligation (Unit 40)

Choose the most suitable answer — A, B or C.

- 1 It isn't cold outside. **You** ____ wear a coat.
A *mustn't* B *can* C ***needn't***
- 2 You ____ keep out of that room. **It's** private.
A ***don't have to*** B *mustn't* C *must*
- 3 You ____ fall asleep when you drive a car.
A ***mustn't*** B *needn't* C *must*
- 4 **I'm** going to retire soon. Then I won't ____ work any more.
A *must* B *have to* C *can*
- 5 You ____ vote in Britain until you are 18.
A *have to* B *can* C ***aren't allowed to***
- 6 You ____ wear a uniform in the army.
A *can* B *have to* C *mustn't*
- 7 **Tomorrow** is a holiday. We ____ go to work.
A ***don't have to*** B ***aren't allowed to***
C *have to*
- 8 You ____ ride a bicycle on a motorway in Britain.
A *must* B ***don't have to*** C *can't*

28 Needn't have and didn't need to (Unit 41)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

- 1 We needn't have bought so much wine for the party because nobody drank much.
- 2 Mike needn't have gone to work yesterday, so he stayed at home.
- 3 It was nice of you to phone and thank me, but you really didn't need to.
- 4 Sue needn't have hurried home, so she took her time.
- 5 Kate **needn't** have made lunch when she arrived home from work because her husband had already done it.

29 Obligation and advice (Unit 42)

Choose the most suitable answer — A, B or C.

- 1 Language students ____ a little every day.
A ***is supposed to study*** B *should study*
C *had better study*

2 I think my car has been stolen. I ____ the police.

- A *had better phone*
B *should have phoned*
C *am supposed to phone*

3 I ____ tennis tomorrow, but I can't.

- A *had better play*
B *am supposed to play*
C *am not supposed to play*

4 I ____ this bill last month, but I forgot.

- A *should pay* B *had better pay*
C *ought to have paid*

5 We have to get up early tomorrow, so we ____ to bed too late tonight.

- A *had better not go* B *ought to go*
C *are supposed to go*

6 Everyone ____ a holiday sometimes.

- A *had better take* B *ought take*
C *should take*

7 **I've** forgotten to send my friend a birthday card. What ____?

- A *am I supposed to do* B *shall I do*
C ***shall I to do***

8 You ____ my new camera or I'll kill you!

- A *had better not break*
B *shouldn't break*
C ***aren't supposed to break***

9 I've got a terrible headache. I think I ____ take an aspirin.

- A *am supposed to* B *should take*
C *had better to take*

10 You ____ with us to the beach yesterday. We had a very nice time.

- A *had better come* B *should come*
C *should have come*

30 Possibility: may, might, could (Unit 43)

Re-write each sentence making it unsure. Use the words in brackets.

Example:

Sarah lent Simon some **money**. (*might*)
Sarah *might have lent* Simon some money.

- 1 It will rain **tonight**. (*may*)
- 2 Peter is in the Sports **centre**. (*could*)
- 3 Sally wrote to the **bank**. (*might*)
- 4 Ken didn't see me. (*may*)

- 5 I won't be here **tomorrow**. (*might*)
 6 The robbers had a key to the **office**. (*may*)
 7 The children aren't **asleep**. (*might*)
 8 People will be living on the moon in the year 2050. (*could*)
 9 Mike didn't receive my **letter**. (*may*)
 10 Those people are waving at us. (*might*)

31 Possibility: *can* (Unit 44)

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Use *can* or *may*.

Example:

It is sometimes very hot here in the summer.

It can be very hot here in the summer.

1 Perhaps it will be very hot here tomorrow.

It _____

2 Perhaps I am wrong.

I _____

3 It is possible for anyone to be wrong.

Anyone _____

4 Cats sometimes live for 20 years.

Cats _____

5 Perhaps your cat will live for 20 years.

Your cat _____

32 Probability: *should*, *ought to* (Unit 45)

Re-write each sentence making it probable. Use the word in brackets.

Example:

Kate is very **happy**. (*should*)

Kate should be very happy.

1 Simon is in his **room**. (*should*)

2 I'll finish the book **soon**. (*ought to*)

3 Maria received the letter **yesterday**. (*should*)

4 **We** won't be late home **tonight**. (*shouldn't*)

5 My parents arrived at their hotel a few hours ago. (*ought to*)

33 Deduction: *must*, *can't* (Unit 46)

Complete the sentences. Use *must* or *can't* and the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1 You haven't eaten all day. You _____ hungry. (*be*)

2 You _____ cold. It's 30 degrees in the shade! (*be*)

3 There are no lights on in the office. Everyone _____ home. (*go*)

4 Peter _____ ill. I've just seen him playing tennis. (*be*)

5 I _____ my bag on the train. I can remember having it with me when I got off the train. (*leave*)

6 You drove home at night without any lights on? You _____ crazy! (*be*)

7 'I've just finished reading War and Peace in Russian.' That _____ a long time!' (*take*)

34 Review of possibility, probability and deduction (Unit 47)

Choose the correct answer — A, B or C.

1 It _____ a lovely day tomorrow.

A *can be* B *could be* C *must be*

2 I'm getting fat. I think I _____ eating the wrong kind of food.

A *must be* B *can't be* C *can be*

3 I'm not sure, but I _____ Sue in town last night.

A *can see* B *must have seen*

C *may have seen*

4 Mike _____ driving to London tomorrow. He can't drive!

A *might be* B *can't be* C *must be*

5 My letter _____ yesterday, but it **didn't**.

A *must have arrived* B *may arrive*

C *should have arrived*

6 I can hear footsteps in the flat upstairs, so there _____ someone there.

A *must be* B *might be*

C *can't be*

7 We're very busy tomorrow so we _____ time to visit you. We aren't sure.

A *could not have* B *might not have*

C *ought to have*

8 That girl _____ 20 years old. She looks about 12!

A *maybe* B *must be* C *can't be*

35 Requests, offers and suggestions (Units 48–50)

Write what you could say in these situations using the words in brackets.

Example:

You offer to make someone a cup of coffee. (*Shall?*)

Shall I make you a cup of coffee?

- 1 You ask to use the phone in a friend's house. (*Can?*)
- 2 You ask the waiter for the menu in a restaurant. (*Could?*)
- 3 You ask your teacher to explain something to you. (*Could?*)
- 4 You ask a friend to lend you some money. (*Would?*)
- 5 You are carrying a lot of bags. You ask a stranger to open a door for you. (*Would/mind?*)
- 6 You offer to give a friend a lift home in your car. (*I'll*)
- 7 You offer to show a friend how to use a photocopier. (*Shall?*)
- 8 You suggest to a friend that you have a walk in the park. (*How about?*)
- 9 You invite someone to the cinema this evening. (*you like?*)
- 10 You ask a friend to suggest where you can meet **tomorrow**. (*shall we?*)
- 11 You suggest to a friend that you go swimming this weekend. (*Let's*)
- 12 You suggest to a friend that you watch a video this evening. (*Why don't?*)

36 Habits: used to, will, would (Unit 51)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

- 1 I use to go swimming a lot nowadays.
- 2 When I was a child I used to suck my thumb.
- 3 I don't use to get up early these days.
- 4 My uncle would live in San Francisco when he was younger.
- 5 Mike used to live in Paris for a year.
- 6 Sarah uses to like Madonna, but she doesn't any more.

- 7 When I was younger I would go running two or three times a week.
- 8 When I was a student I would have a beard.
- 9 Where did you used to live?
- 10 Our neighbours will keep playing loud music. It's really annoying.

37 Refusals: won't, wouldn't; promises and threats: will (Units 52–53)

(i) Complete each sentence using will, won't or wouldn't and a word in the box.

| |
|----------------------------|
| eat say go call be |
|----------------------------|

- 1 My girlfriend_____ to the concert with me, so I went on my own.
- 2 Thank you for letting me use your new computer. I_____very careful with it.
- 3 I've asked George three times now, but he still_____why he's angry with me.
- 4 Leave me alone or I_____the police.
- 5 Our cat _____ his food at the moment. I think he must be ill.

(ii) Now say if each sentence is a refusal, a promise or a threat.

38 May/might as well (Unit 54)

Complete the sentences using may as well ... and the words in the box.

| |
|--------------------------------|
| sell give up apply clean |
|--------------------------------|

- 1 I don't think I'll get the job. But I_____for it. I've got nothing to lose.
- 2 We_____the flat now. We've got to clean it some time and we've got nothing to do at the moment.
- 3 You never use your computer. You_____it.
- 4 I_____playing the piano. I'll never learn to play very well.

39 Other uses of should (Unit 55)

(i) Re-write each sentence using the verb in brackets and that ... should ...

Example:

I told my friend to sell his car. (*suggest*)

I suggested that my friend should sell his car.

- 1 My doctor told me to see a specialist.
(*recommend*)
- 2 I told the shop assistant to give me my money back. (*insist*)
- 3 My teacher told me to buy a larger dictionary. (*suggest*)
- 4 The traffic warden told us to move our car. (*insist*)

(ii) Put the two ideas together. Make sentences with *that ... should*.

Example:

Mike acted so **strangely**. I was surprised.
/ *was surprised that Mike should act so strangely.*

- 1 You remembered my birthday. I'm pleased.
- 2 Sue offered me a job. I was surprised.
- 3 You lost your wallet. I'm very sorry.
- 4 John agreed with me. It was interesting.

40 *Wish and if only* (Unit 56)

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- 1 I'd love to have more money.
I wish _____
- 2 I'm very sorry I was rude to Jim's Wife.
I wish _____
- 3 Why doesn't Peter listen to me!
If only _____
- 4 Annie is sorry she ate so much chocolate.
Annie wishes _____.
- 5 I'd really like to live in the country.
I wish _____
- 6 Why can't we find a cure for cancer!
If only _____
- 7 Why doesn't it stop raining!
I wish _____

41 *Would rather* (Unit 57)

Complete the sentences using *would rather* and the verbs in the box.

| | | | | |
|----|----|----------|----------|------|
| do | go | not play | not tell | have |
|----|----|----------|----------|------|

- 1 I'm hungry. I _____ lunch now than later.
- 2 This is a secret. I _____ you _____ anyone what I said.

3 We don't want to go to Scotland by car. We _____ by train.

4 I _____ tennis now. I'm too hot.

5 'Are you going to do the shopping today?' 'I _____ you _____ it. I'm very busy.'

42 *It's time* (Unit 58)

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in the box.

| | | | |
|-----|-----|-------|----|
| ask | buy | clean | go |
|-----|-----|-------|----|

1 It's very late. It's time I _____ to bed.

2 My car is rather dirty. I think it's about time I _____ it.

3 I've been earning the same salary for 15 years. It's time I _____ my boss for a pay rise.

4 You're always borrowing my tennis racket! Don't you think it's about time you _____ your own?

43 *The passive* (Units 59–60)

(i) Re-write the sentences in the active, beginning with the words given.

Example:

The phone is being repaired now.
They *are repairing the phone now*.

1 A new motorway has been built.

They _____

2 The information is kept on our computer.

We _____

3 A man was arrested late last night.

The police _____

4 The medicine should be taken after meals.

You _____

5 The hotel will have to be sold.

We _____

6 Mike doesn't like being criticized.

Mike doesn't like people _____

7 When I returned to the town, my old school had been pulled down.

When I returned to the town, they _____

8 As I was walking home, I thought I was being followed.

As I was walking home, I thought someone _____.

(ii) **Re-write these sentences in the passive, leaving out *they* or *someone*.**

Example:

They have sold the company.

The company has been sold.

- 1 They are interviewing the president on TV at the moment.
- 2 They deliver the post twice a day.
- 3 They took the old man to hospital.
- 4 They were repairing the traffic lights yesterday.
- 5 Someone has opened this letter.
- 6 I remember someone telling me the news.
- 7 They should reduce taxes.
- 8 Someone must have told Ann about the accident.
- 9 They had cancelled the 9.15 train, so I took a later train.
- 10 They are going to change the law soon.

(iii) **Choose the correct answers.**

The National Security Bank in downtown San Antonio _____1_____ (*robbed/wasrobbed*) last night. A safe _____2_____ (*blew open/was blown open*) and around \$800, 000 _____3_____ (*stole/was stolen*). The robbery _____4_____ (*took/wastaken*) place between midnight and 1.00 am. The police _____5_____ (*are looking/are being looked*) for two men who _____6_____ (*saw/were seen*) getting into a black car near the bank at about 1 o'clock last night. They _____7_____ (*also want/are also wanted*) to hear from Mr Joe Newman, 52, who _____8_____ (*worked/wasworked*) as a security guard at the bank. Mr Newman _____9_____ (*disappeared/wasdisappeared*) just before the robbery and he _____10_____ (*has not seen/has not been seen*) since then.

44 The passive with *by* and *with* (Unit 63)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

- 1 This letter was written by a typewriter.
- 2 The film *ET* was made by Steven Spielberg.
- 3 The omelette was made by three eggs.
- 4 *The Mona Lisa (La Gioconda)* was painted with Leonardo da Vinci.

45 The passive (Units 61, 62, 64)

Re-write these sentences beginning with the words given.

- 1 Someone will give you the Information later.
You _____
- 2 Someone sent me a letter.
A letter _____.
- 3 Someone knocked me over in the street.
I _____.
- 4 The president is expected to visit Moscow.
It _____
- 5 It is said that golf was invented in China.
Golf _____
- 6 The Queen of England is thought to be one of the richest women in the world. It _____
- 7 It is claimed that beings from outer space have visited the earth. Beings from outer space _____
- 8 People say that sunbathing causes skin cancer. Sunbathing is supposed _____

46 *Have something done* (Unit 65)

Re-write the sentences beginning with the words given.

Example:

They serviced Ken's car yesterday.
Ken *had his car serviced yesterday*.

- 1 They're repairing our roof at the moment.
We _____
- 2 They're going to fit a stereo in my car.
I _____
- 3 Someone cleans Sue's flat once a week.
Sue _____
- 4 Has anyone tested your eyes recently?
Have you _____?
- 5 Someone stole John's briefcase last week.
John _____

47 *If* sentences, conditionals (Units 66, 68–70, 72)

(i) **Choose the correct answer — A, B or C.**

- 1 I may go to the USA next year _____, I'll visit a friend in New York.
A *When I go* B *If I go* C *If I'll go*

2 I'll see you _____ back from my holiday.

A *when I'll come* B *when I come*

C *if I come*

3 _____ too busy tomorrow. I'll visit you.

A *When I'm not* B *If I'm not*

C *If I won't be*

4 _____ more money, I'd buy a new car.

A *When I have* B *If I have*

C *If I had*

5 If I knew Alan's address, _____ to him.

A *I'd write* B *I'll write*

C *I wrote*

6 Where would you live _____ anywhere?

A *if you lived* B *if you can live*

C *if you could live*

(ii) **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.**

1 **We'll** go out later if it _____ (stop) raining.

2 If I _____ (be) you, I'd go to the doctor.

3 Do you want to watch TV? I _____ (switch) it on if you do.

4 Simon doesn't want to come to the concert.

I _____ (buy) him a ticket if he did.

5 If we leave now, we _____ (not | be) late.

6 If I were you, I _____ (not | buy) that car.

7 If I _____ (lie) in the sun, I always get sunburnt.

8 If John _____ (not I apologize) to me, I **won't** speak to him any **more!**

9 _____ (you | stop) working if you were a millionaire?

10 _____ (you | phone) me tomorrow if you have time?

48 Unreal past conditionals (Unit 71)

Complete the sentences about these situations.

1 You went out for a walk without an umbrella. It rained, you got very wet and then you caught a cold.

a) If I _____ (take) an umbrella with me, I _____ (not | get) wet.

b) If I _____ (know) it was going to rain, I _____ (not | go) out.

c) **If I** _____ (not | go) out. I _____ (not | catch) a cold.

2 You went to bed late last night. This morning you woke up late. Then you missed your bus and you were late for work.

a) I _____ (not | wake up) late this morning if I _____ (not | go) to bed late last night.

b) If _____ (not | wake up) late, I _____ (not | miss) my bus.

c) If I _____ (not | miss) my bus, I _____ (not | be) late for work.

49 Conditional clauses without *if* (Unit 73)

Re-write the sentences without *if*, using the words in brackets.

Example:

If we don't take a taxi, we'll be late. (*unless*)
Unless we take a taxi, we'll be late.

1 If you don't go now, I'll be very **angry**. (*or*)

2 If you help me now, I'll help you later. (*provided*)

3 If you give me your address, I'll write to you. (*and*)

4 If they don't offer me a better job, I'll leave the **company**. (*unless*)

5 I'll stay up and watch the film if it isn't on too late. (*as long as*)

6 If you were in my place, what would you do? (*supposing*)

7 If I win the lottery, I'll give you half the **money**. (*should*)

50 Review of conditionals (Unit 74)

(i) **There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.**

1 Janet will be disappointed if she'll fail the exam.

2 If Peter had been more careful, he **wouldn't** break the camera.

3 You can use my car tomorrow if I don't need it.

4 If I won't have much time, I usually have a sandwich for lunch.

5 If I were you, I won't lend John any money.

6 If the bus doesn't come soon, I'll walk home.

7 I'd be happier if I don't have to work so hard.

(ii) Make *if* sentences about these situations.

Examples:

Mike never takes any exercise. He's so unfit.
*If Mike took some exercise, he **wouldn't** be so unfit.*

I **didn't** know your address. I didn't write to you.

If I'd known your address, I would have written to you.

1 We didn't know the film was on TV. We didn't record it on our video.

2 I go to bed late every night. I'm always tired.

3 Janet wasn't in a hurry. She walked home.

4 I haven't got enough money. I can't go skiing next week.

5 We didn't have an umbrella. We got wet.

51 Reported speech: statements (Units 76–78)

(i) Peter met an American woman called Kirsty Lane last month. Look at some of the things that Kirsty told Peter. What were her actual words?

Example:

She told Peter that she lived in New York.

7 live in New York.'

1 She said that she was 25 years old.

2 She said she worked in a bank.

3 She said she had been working there for a year.

4 She told Peter that she didn't like her job very much.

5 She said she was in Europe on holiday.

6 She said she was having a great holiday.

7 She said she had arrived in London the previous week.

8 She told Peter that she had been to Britain twice before.

9 She told him that she was going to Italy the following week.

10 She said that she couldn't speak Italian very well.

11 She said she would be in Italy for a week.

(ii) Here are some things that Peter told Kirsty last month. How can you report these things now?

Example:

'I work for an export company.'

He told *her (that) he worked for an export company.*

1 'I've been working there for a year.'

He said _____

2 'I'm looking for a better job.'

He told _____

3 'I like travelling.'

He said _____

4 'I've been to the United States.'

He said _____

5 'I went to New York last summer.'

He told _____

6 'I'd like to go to Australia one day.'

He said _____

7 'I've got one sister.'

He told _____

8 'Her name is Judy.'

He said _____

9 'My sister doesn't live in England.'

He told _____

10 'She lives in Spain.'

He said _____

52 Reported speech: questions (Unit 78)

(i) Frank Allen had an interview for a job in a garage last week. The manager of the garage, Mr Jones, interviewed him. He asked Frank a lot of questions.

Frank is telling a friend about the interview. Read what Frank says. What were the actual questions that Mr Jones asked.

Example:

(1) How old are you?

First, Mr Jones asked me ____1____ how old I was. Then he asked ____2____ where I worked now, and ____3____ how long I had worked there. After that, he asked me ____4____ where I had been to school, and ____5____ what exams I had taken at school. Then he asked ____6____ if I could drive a

car, _____7_____. how long I had been driving, and _____8____ if I had a car of my own. After that, he asked _____9_____ what my hobbies were, and _____10_____ what I liked doing in my free time. Then, finally, he asked me _____11_____ if I wanted the job. When I said I did, he asked me _____12_____ if I could start next month.

(ii) You went to England last month. When you were there, you met an English couple who asked you a lot of questions. Report the questions beginning *They asked me ...*

Example:

'Where are you from?'

They asked me where I was from.

- 1 'Where do you work?'
- 2 'How long have you been working there?'
- 3 'Are you on holiday in England?'
- 4 'When did you arrive here?'
- 5 'Have you been to Britain before?'
- 6 'How long are you going to stay here?'
- 7 'Do you like English food?'
- 8 'Have you got any brothers or sisters?'
- 9 'How long have you been studying English?'
- 10 'Can you speak any other languages?'

53 Using the *to* infinitive in reported speech (Unit 79)

Report the sentences using the words in the box and the *to* infinitive form.

Example:

'Can I get you a drink?' he said to us.

He offered to get us a drink.

| | | | |
|----------|---------|---------|---------|
| promised | invited | offered | advised |
|----------|---------|---------|---------|

- 1 'Would you like to go to the cinema?' she asked her friend.
- 2 'I could post the letter for you,' he said to her.
- 3 'You should take more exercise,' the doctor said to me.
- 4 'I won't drive too fast,' I said.

54 Review of reported speech (Unit 80)

Frank was driving home last night when a police car stopped him. Read what Frank says happened. What do you think were the actual words that the policeman and Frank said?

First of all, the policeman told me _____1_____ to switch off my engine. Then he asked me _____2_____ where I was going. When I told him _____3_____ I was going home, he asked me _____4_____ where I lived. So I gave him my address. Then he asked me _____5_____ where I had just come from. I said _____6_____ I had been at a friend's house all evening. Then he asked _____7_____ to see my driving licence. When I gave him my licence, he told me _____8_____ to get out of the car. Then he wanted to know _____9_____ if it was my car. I told him _____10_____ I had bought it last year. After that he went back to his car and spoke on the radio for a short time. Then he told me _____11_____ I could go home.

55 *-ing* form or infinitive (Units 82-98)

(i) **Choose the correct answer — A, B or C.**

- 1 Do you dislike _____ money?
A *borrow* B *to borrow* C *borrowing*
- 2 My girlfriend persuaded me _____ my hair cut.
A *have* B *to have* C *having*
- 3 I used _____ running every morning, but I never go now.
A *go* B *to go* C *going*
- 4 I've decided _____ for a new job.
A *look* B *to look* C *looking*
- 5 You needn't _____ me back that magazine. I've finished with it.
A *give* B *to give* C *giving*
- 6 You must always remember _____ your car locked.
A *keep* B *to keep* C *keeping*
- 7 It's very late. We really must _____ going.
A *be* B *to be* C *being*
- 8 How about _____ tennis at the weekend?
A *play* B *to play* C *playing*

- 9 You shouldn't encourage anyone_____
A *smoke* B *to smoke* C *smoking*
- 10 I'm not very good at_____speeches.
A *make* B *to make* C *making*
- 11 Going to the dentist always makes me_____
nervous.
A *feel* B *to feel* C *feeling*
- 12 I stopped writing_____the telephone.
A *answer* B *to answer* C *answering*
- 13 I don't particularly enjoy_____
A *cook* B *to cook* C *cooking*
- 14 Janet promised_____anyone what I'd said.
A *not tell* B *not to tell* C *to not tell*
- 15 It's a lovely morning. Why don't we_____
for a walk?
A *go* B *to go* C *going*
- 16 We haven't decided what_____this evening.
A *do* B *to do* C *doing*
- 17 We didn't expect England_____the football match.
A *win* B *to win* C *winning*
- 18 The police warned the man_____
A *to not move* B *not to move*
C *not move*
- 19_____a lot of sugar is supposed to be bad for you.
A *Eat* B *To eat* C *Eating*
- 20 I can't afford_____a new stereo.
A *buy* B *to buy* C *buying*
- 21 Ken switched on the radio_____the news.
A *hear* B *to hear* C *hearing*
- 22 All the hotels are full and we've got nowhere_____
A *stay* B *to stay* C *staying*

(ii) **There are mistakes in some of these | sentences. Find the mistakes and correct i them.**

- 1 I stopped to play football 20 years ago.
- 2 When will the car need servicing again? .
- 3 Thanks for letting me to borrow your car.
- 4 Would you like to having a coffee now?
- 5 To walk can be very relaxing.
- 6 It isn't easy learn to play the piano.
- 7 I went to the station for get my train.
- 8 They wanted that I go out with them.
- 9 Everyone refused helping the old man.
- 10 I usually avoid driving at night if I can.

- 11 How about to play tennis at the weekend?
- 12 As I walked past the house I saw some men build a swimming pool.
- 13 Have you finished to eat your breakfast?
- 14 I'm used to work at night now, but I found it difficult at first.
- 15 Do you like to take regular exercise?
- 16 We're thinking of to go to a disco tonight.
- 17 Can you to come to my party on Saturday?
- 18 I'm looking forward to see you tonight.
- 19 We hope to have a holiday soon.
- 20 Do you feel like to listen to some music?
- 21 Annie's mother made her to eat her lunch.
- 22 Do you want that someone helps you for move the table?

56 Participle (-ing and ed) adjectives (Unit 99)

Re-write the sentences beginning with the words given.

- 1 I'm surprised by the news.
I find_____
- 2 The man's behaviour was shocking.
We were all_____
- 3 Kate is interested in travel.
Kate finds_____
- 4 The tennis match was boring.
We were_____
- 5 I felt very relaxed in the sauna.
I found_____

57 Participle (-ing) clauses (Unit 100)

Join these ideas. Make sentences using -ing clauses, as in the examples.

Examples:

I arrived at the interview. I was feeling confident.

/ arrived at the interview feeling confident.

I had a shower. I made breakfast.

Having had a shower, I made breakfast.

1 I dropped my bag. I was running for a bus.

2 We got lost. We were driving through Paris.

3 I locked all the doors. I went to bed.

4 I'd just had a drink. I wasn't thirsty.

58 Singular and plural (Units 101-103)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

- 1 Do you like my new **jacket** and **trouser**?
- 2 Where is your family from?
- 3 The news aren't very good.
- 4 How many persons live in Britain?
- 5 Where is the **scissors**?
- 6 I've bought a new **teethbrush**.
- 7 Do you eat a lot of fish?
- 8 How much is this blue Levi's **jean**?
- 9 Are the **childrens** asleep yet?
- 10 People are interesting.
- 11 Your **hairs** look very nice today. Have you just washed them?
- 12 Ten kilometre are a long way to walk.
- 13 One of my brother work in a shoes shop.
- 14 Physics were my favourite subject at school.
- 15 I don't like wearing pyjamas in bed.
- 16 What are the government going to do about the problem of homelessness?
- 17 There were £30 in my wallet, but now **they've gone!**
- 18 Some passer-bys stopped and helped the old man when he fell over.

59 Possessive forms (Units 104-106)

(i) Join the nouns using 's or *the ... of* ...

Examples:

job | Sally
Sally's job

door | the car
the door of the car

- 1 news | this week
- 2 stolen car | the thieves
- 3 roof | the hotel
- 4 price | your meal
- 5 vacation | two weeks
- 6 end | the **film**
- 7 middle | our English lesson
- 8 name | the girl who came to dinner
- 9 girlfriend | Jim's brother
- 10 rising cost | petrol

(ii) Re-write the sentences beginning with the words given.

- 1 One of my friends is having a party.
A friend _____
- 2 The only theatre in the town is closed.
The town _____
- 3 Some of our neighbours have offered to help us.
Some neighbours _____
- 4 Rainfall in Britain has been light this year.
Britain _____
- 5 We've been visiting some of our relatives.
We've been visiting some relatives _____.

60 Countable and uncountable nouns (Unit 107)

Correct the mistakes.

- 1 The tourist office has informations about hotel accommodations.
- 2 You look different. Have you had your hairs cut?
- 3 There are traffics news on the radio every morning.
- 4 'Travelling light' means travelling without a lot of luggages.
- 5 We need a bread, some tomatoes and some spaghettis.
- 6 Where are the money I gave you? Have you spent them already?
- 7 We're having a beautiful weather at the moment.
- 8 Some of our furnitures were damaged when we moved.

61 Articles (Unit 108)

Complete the story. Put in *a, an* or *the*.

Last Sunday I decided to have _____ 1 _____ quiet evening at home. At around 8 o'clock I was in _____ 2 _____ kitchen cooking _____ 3 _____ omelette for my dinner _____ 4 _____ omelette was almost ready when _____ 5 _____ telephone rang. I went into _____ 6 _____ hall to answer it. It was _____ 7 _____ friend of mine, _____ 8 _____ girl called Lisa. Lisa is _____ 9 _____ student at _____ 10 _____ London School of Music and Art. She told me she was taking _____ 11 _____ im-

portant exam _____12_____ following day. She said she was sure she would fail _____13_____ exam. She sounded very worried. We talked for about _____14_____ quarter of _____15_____ hour. Then I suddenly remembered _____16_____ omelette on _____17_____ cooker! I put down _____18_____ phone and rushed into _____19_____ kitchen. It was terrible! _____20_____ room was full of smoke and _____21_____ omelette was completely black. It took me more than _____22_____ hour to clean up all _____23_____ mess.

62 Articles (Unit 109)

Choose the correct answer.

- 1 *Noise/The noise* is a form of pollution.
- 2 I'm worried about *noise/the noise* coming from my car.
- 3 Don't go swimming in this river. *Water/The water* here is polluted.
- 4 *Water/The water* turns to ice when it freezes.
- 5 The man gave *money/the money* to charity throughout his life.
- 6 Have you already spent *money/the money* I gave you yesterday?

63 Articles (Units 108–113)

(i) Put in *a, an* or *the* where necessary.

- 1 Have you ever been in _____ hospital for _____ serious operation?
- 2 Phil Collins can play _____ drums, _____ piano and _____ harmonica.
- 3 _____ giraffe is _____ tallest animal in _____ world.
- 4 My grandmother often listens to _____ radio in _____ bed at night.
- 5 I won't be at _____ home at 6 o'clock this evening. I'll still be at _____ work.
- 6 We'd like to live in _____ small cottage in _____ country.
- 7 There's _____ good film on at _____ cinema this evening.
- 8 Which is your favourite meal, _____ breakfast, _____ lunch or _____ dinner?
- 9 What is _____ government going to do for _____ unemployed of _____ Great Britain?

10 Don't you think _____ English are strange people?

(ii) Correct the mistakes.

- 1 The Canberra is capital of the Australia.
- 2 The San Diego is in the Southern California.
- 3 Is Amazon a longest river in the Latin America?
- 4 The Jamaica is island in Caribbean Sea.
- 5 The Snowdon is highest mountain in the England and Wales.
- 6 The Lake Michigan is in United States.
- 7 The Gobi desert is in the Asia.
- 8 Uffizi is one of a most famous museums in world.
- 9 Statue of Liberty was made in the France.
- 10 The Macy's is famous department store on the 34th Street in the New York.

64 Quantity (Units 114–119)

(i) Choose the correct answer: **A, B, C** or **D**.

- 1 There are _____ envelopes on my desk.
A *much* B *some* C *any* D *a little*
- 2 There isn't _____ money in my pocket.
A *no* B *some* C *any of* D *any*
- 3 Have you got _____ good computer games?
A *any* B *any of* C *a lot* D *many of*
- 4 Do you like Madonna? Have you got _____ her records?
A *some* B *every of* C *any* D *all*
- 5 There isn't _____ time before our flight leaves.
A *much* B *many* C *some* D *no*
- 6 I've got _____ idea where Mike is.
A *none* B *none of* C *no* D *any*
- 7 Do you know _____ people living in England?
A *much* B *many* C *much of* D *many of*
- 8 You've had _____ interesting experiences.
A *any* B *a lot* C *much* D *a lot of*
- 9 Would you like _____ more milk?
A *little* B *a little* C *few* D *a few*
- 10 _____ my friends want to see the concert.
A *No* B *Any of* C *None* D *None of*

(ii) Re-write the sentences beginning with the words given.

Example:

He isn't reliable and he isn't hard-working.
He is neither *reliable nor hard-working*.

- 1 She is intelligent and she is charming.
She is both _____
- 2 My brother can't sing and he can't play the guitar.
My brother can neither _____
- 3 My girlfriend didn't enjoy the party and I didn't enjoy the party.
Neither _____
- 4 Almost nobody likes Monday mornings.
Few _____
- 5 I've seen all Steven Spielberg's films.
I've seen every _____
- 6 She said that she only wanted a cup of coffee for breakfast.
She said that all _____
- 7 He can only speak a little French.
He **can't** speak _____
- 8 Almost no houses have video phones.
Few _____
- 9 All my sisters are single.
None _____
- 10 All my friends have passed their driving test.
None _____

65 Pronouns, etc (Units 120–125)**(i) Correct the mistakes.**

- 1 Look! There's Sally and his boyfriend!
Can you see them?
- 2 My brother he looks very young, but is older than I.
- 3 'Who's that outside?' 'It's I.'
- 4 My girlfriend and me phone us every day.
- 5 Ours flat was cheaper than their, but their is much smaller than our.
- 6 Did the old man hurt him when fell out of his bed?
- 7 I woke up, got dressed myself and made me some breakfast.
- 8 Is easy to cut you when you're shaving.

9 When we warned herself not to walk home by her **own**, she just laughed at us.

10 We were very annoyed with us for forgetting about yours party.

(ii) Put in a suitable pronoun or adjective eg they, you, me, our etc.

- 1 _____ can get married in England at the age of 16.
- 2 **Stephanie** is very conceited. She's always looking at _____ in the mirror.
- 3 Someone called to see **you**——didn't tell me _____ name.
- 4 How far is _____ from Barcelona to Madrid?
- 5 Living by _____ can be lonely.
- 6 _____ **isn't** expensive to play tennis in England.
- 7 The police say that _____ want to interview Joe Newman.
- 8 If you don't want to come to the theatre with _____, I'll go on _____ own.

66 One (s) (Unit 124)**Choose the correct answer — A, B or C.**

- 1 I'm looking for a new shirt. I'd like to buy _____ with a button-down collar.
A *a one* B *one* C *ones*
- 2 My sister has already got a good job, but she wants _____.
A *a better ones* B *better one*
C *a better one*
- 3 We've got some red wine, but we haven't got any _____.
A *white* B *white one* C *a white one*
- 4 Do you like these chairs more than _____?
A *those one* B *those ones* C *those*

67 Something, anything, etc (Unit 125)**(i) Re-write the sentences beginning with the words given.**

Example:

There wasn't anybody in the restaurant.
There was *nobody in the restaurant*.

- 1 I've eaten nothing all day.
I haven't eaten _____

2 **There's** nobody living in that house.

There isn't _____

3 I haven't got anything to do today.

I've got _____

4 We haven't been anywhere this week.

We've been _____

(ii) **There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.**

1 You look worried. Is something wrong?

2 I've spent all my money. I've got anything left.

3 There isn't nothing good on TV tonight.

4 That house is empty now. **There's** somebody living there.

5 **We've** looked anywhere for the letter, but we can't find it everywhere.

6 Tina is very nice. Everybody likes her.

7 We'd like to go somewhere warm on holiday this summer.

8 **There wasn't** nowhere to sit down in the room, so we had to stand.

68 Form, position and order of adjectives (Unit 126)

Complete the sentences. Put the words in brackets in the correct order.

Example:

We _____ (antique | a | bought | vase | large).

We *bought a large antique vase.*

1 My girlfriend _____ (motorbike | has got | a | Japanese | powerful).

2 The garden _____ (beautiful | this summer | looks).

3 Your grandmother _____ (woman | very | a | seems | cheerful).

4 The man _____ (a | leather | was wearing | black | coat | long).

5 We _____ (an | restaurant | French | had lunch at | expensive).

6 The Pyramids of Egypt _____ (old | are | around 5, 000 years).

69 Comparatives, superlatives and *as ... as* (Units 127-129)

(i) **Correct the mistakes.**

1 Today is more sunny as yesterday.

2 My boyfriend isn't as clever than he thinks.

3 Ken is a very more careful driver than Simon.

4 You aren't taller as I.

5 What was the happier day of your life?

6 The more older my grandmother gets, the more forgetful she becomes.

7 **Camping** isn't as comfortable than staying in a hotel, but it's much healthy.

8 The problem of world pollution is getting more and more bad.

(ii) **Re-write the sentences beginning with the words given, as in the examples.**

Examples:

A Rolls Royce is more expensive than a Fiat.

A Fiat **isn't as expensive as a Rolls Royce.**

I've never seen a taller man than Tom.

Tom is the *tallest man I've ever seen.*

1 Playing golf isn't as cheap as playing football.

Playing football is _____

2 None of the animals in the world is faster than a cheetah.

A cheetah is the _____

3 There is nothing better than a cold shower to wake you up in the mornings.

A cold shower is the _____

4 Tokyo is bigger than Paris.

Paris isn't _____

5 There is no footballer in the world more talented than Roberto.

Roberto is the _____

6 Listening to records isn't as exciting as hearing live music.

Hearing live music is _____

70 Adjectives and adverbs (Unit 130)

Complete the second sentence beginning with the words given, as in the examples.

Examples:

She's a very quick typist.

She types *very quickly.*

He looked at me suspiciously.
He gave me a *suspicious look*.

1 You're a very slow eater.

You eat _____

2 He drives rather recklessly.

He's a _____

3 She's a very hard worker.

She works _____

4 Harrison Ford acts very well.

Harrison Ford is a _____

5 She gave me an angry stare.

She stared at me _____

71 Adverb position (Units 131-136)

Put the words into the most usual order.

Example:

The car slowly out of the garage I drove.
/ drove the car slowly out of the garage.

- 1 My parents will be next week on holiday.
- 2 Confidently into the exam room I walked.
- 3 We saw on Saturday morning them in town.
- 4 Last week worked hard all the students.
- 5 The English like very much tea.
- 6 Last week my grandmother into hospital went.
- 7 My brother helps never with the house-work.
- 8 We start always school at 9.00.
- 9 My teacher never is late for class.
- 10 Robert plays no longer football.
- 11 I'll forget never the first time we met.
- 12 I every night sleep always 8 hours.
- 13 Carla hasn't finished probably yet working.
- 14 We for an hour already have been waiting and the bus hasn't still come.

72 Adverbs (Units 133-139)

Choose the correct answer. (Sometimes two answers are possible.)

- 1 They started building the road two years ago and they _____ haven't finished it.
A *still* B *yet* C *already*
- 2 You **don't** need to vacuum the carpet.
I've _____ done it.
A *still* B *yet* C *already*

3 I sent the letter two weeks ago and they haven't received it _____

A *still* B *yet* C *already*

4 Many rivers are _____ safe to swim in nowadays.

A *any more* B *any longer* C *no longer*

5 I used to smoke, but I **don't** _____

A *anymore* B *any longer* C *no longer*

6 It was really a _____ boring journey.

A *quite* B *fairly* C *rather*

7 We _____ liked the hotel we stayed at.

A *quite* B *fairly* C *pretty*

8 This summer is _____ hotter than last summer.

A *rather* B *quite* C *fairly*

9 I can't lift this box. It's _____

A *too much heavy* B *much too heavy*

C *heavy enough*

10 We can't all fit into my car. It isn't _____

A *too much big* B *enough big*

C *big enough*

11 _____ is supposed to be bad for you.

A *Too much salt* B *Too many salt*

C *Enough salt*

12 Annie feels ill. She's eaten _____.

A *too much chocolates*

B *too many chocolate*

C *too many chocolates*

13 Mike is a wonderful dancer. He dances

A *too well* B *very well* C *well enough*

14 Everyone likes Tina. She's _____

A *such a nice* B *so nice woman*

C *so nice*

15 It was _____ that we had breakfast outside in the garden.

A *such a warm morning*

B *such a warm*

C *so warm*

73 Comparison: adverbs (Unit 140)

Re-write the sentences beginning with the words given.

Example:

Peter is a better cook than Sally is.
Peter cooks *better than Sally does*.

1 I'm not as good at tennis as you are.
I don't play tennis _____.

- 2 **Your** writing is clearer than mine is.
You write _____
- 3 My brother is a more careless driver than I am.
My brother drives _____.
- 4 Annie is the best swimmer of all the students in her school.
Annie swims the _____
-

74 Negatives (Unit 141)

Correct the mistakes.

- 1 I no think politics is interesting.
2 It not is raining at the moment.
3 You no have got any brothers or sisters.
4 My sister works not in London.
5 Liz no would like to live in the country.
6 I did not worked yesterday.
7 Sue not will be here next weekend.
8 They not have been waiting for us.
-

75 Questions (Units 142–147)

Ask questions using the words in brackets, as in the examples.

Examples:

I'm cooking. (*What?*)
What are you cooking?

Judy likes pop music. (*Madonna?*)
Does she like Madonna?

I've got a brother. (*not/any sisters?*)
Haven't you got any sisters?

- 1 Sarah is going to Paris. (*by car?*)
2 I go swimming. (*How often?*)
3 We stayed at a hotel. (*Which hotel?*)
4 I'm thirsty. (*not/hungry?*)
5 We can stay until 8.00.
(*not/any longer?*)
6 I've eaten Chinese food.
(*Indian food?*)
7 Sue has been having piano lessons.
(*How long?*)
8 Mike wants to stay at home.
(*not/to come out with us?*)
9 I asked someone. (*Who?*)
10 Someone asked me. (*Who?*)
-

76 Question tags (Unit 147)

Add question tags to these sentences.

Example:

You haven't got a car, *have you?*

- 1 Sally went to the concert, _____
2 You aren't angry, _____
3 Our train leaves at 7.30, _____
4 Ken will be here tomorrow, _____
5 Let's play tennis, _____
6 You don't know my father, _____
7 Close the door, _____
8 You'd like a coffee, _____
-

77 Reply questions (Unit 148)

Answer these sentences using 'reply questions' eg *Is he?*, *Did you?* etc.

Example:

I can dance the tango.
Can you?

- 1 I haven't read that book.
2 My sister lives in New York.
3 We went skiing last winter.
4 I've found a new job.
5 Derek isn't feeling very well.
-

78 Indirect questions (Unit 149)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

- 1 Can you tell me where is the nearest bank?
2 What time you usually finish work?
3 Do you know whether Derek has got a car?
4 Can you remember where did you put my pen?
5 Have you decided what colour are you going to paint the flat?
6 Do you know if has the bridge been repaired yet?
7 When you started to study English?
-

79 Short answers (Units 150, 152)

Give short answers to the questions using the words in brackets.

Examples:

Do you like dancing? (*Yes*)

Yes. I do.

Will you be here tomorrow? (*No/think*)

No, I don't think so.

1 Did Peter have a holiday last summer? (*No*)

2 Is the car badly damaged? (*Yes/afraid*)

3 **Have** you been waiting long? (*Yes*)

4 Does Simon work at night? (*No/think*)

5 Will they finish the job today? (*Yes/hope*)

6 Are you going shopping today? (*Yes*)

80 *So/neither am I* etc (Unit 151)

Re-write the sentences using *so/neither*

Example:

I like tennis and you like tennis.

/ like tennis and so do you.

1 You **aren't** hungry and Jim isn't hungry.

2 Peter can drive and Sally can drive.

3 I'm in a hurry and you're in a hurry.

4 **I** haven't seen the film and you haven't seen the film.

5 You saw what happened and we saw what happened.

81 Relative clauses (Units 153–159)

(i) There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1 I've lost the key you gave me.

2 Have you seen the book which it was on my desk?

3 They are the couple my parents went on holiday with.

4 The girl which she answered the phone said you weren't at home.

5 Where's the newspaper who I bought it this morning?

6 Is that the man sold you the car?

7 She's the woman whose the briefcase was stolen.

8 Steven Spielberg's new film, who it cost more than \$100 million to make, will be showing in British cinemas soon.

9 Albert Davis, which is only 25 years old, is the new manager of Acme Export Ltd.

10 The people I work with are very funny.

11 **John's** father gave me the taxi fare, what was very nice of him.

(ii) Add the words in the box but only where necessary. (Sometimes two answers are possible.)

| | | | | | |
|------|------|-------|-------|-------|-----|
| who | that | which | whose | where | why |
| when | whom | | | | |

1 What was the name of the man_____ phoned yesterday?

2 Is that the suit_____you bought last week?

3 Who were those people_____were waiting outside just now?

4 Have you finished reading the book_____I gave you?

5 Kathy Cobuild is the woman_____husband was kidnapped.

6 The building_____I work isn't properly air-conditioned.

7 The office_____you work in is very modern.

8 Can you give me one good reason_____I should lend you the money?

9 Is there a good time_____I can phone you?

10 Mr Ross,_____I have known for a long time, has just become the president of a very large international company.

11 My wife,_____mother is Italian, knows Italy very well.

12 The restaurant was full,_____is why we had to go somewhere else for dinner.

82 Linking words (Units 160–164)

Choose the correct answer — A, B or C.

1 I'm not going to stop work now. I'll keep going_____I finish.

A *when* B *until* C *while*

2 _____we've finished lunch, we'll do the washing up.

A *When* B *Until* C *While*

3 _____I was walking around the supermarket, I saw a friend.

A *As soon as* B *As* C *Until*

4 _____I put my hat on, it blew off.

A *As soon as* B *While* C *Until*

5 I enjoy watching tennis on TV, _____ I prefer playing it.

A despite B because C although

6 _____ having a well-paid job, she never has any money.

A Despite B Because C Even though

7 Sarah is very slim _____ she eats so much.

A despite B in spite of

C despite the fact that

8 I was able to walk slowly _____ the pain in my leg.

A whereas B in spite of C despite of

9 My girlfriend likes the town _____ I like the country.

A whereas B in spite of C because of

10 We drove very slowly _____ the icy roads.

A because B because of C therefore

11 Mike borrowed the money and _____ he was able to go on holiday with his friends.

A because B because of C as a result

12 The sea was dangerous _____ we didn't go in for a swim.

A as B so C since

13 We were _____ tired that we fell asleep in front of the TV.

A so B such C therefore

14 Robert had _____ an awful holiday that he wanted to come home early.

A so B such C however

15 We went to a restaurant _____ celebrate my birthday.

A/or B to C for to

16 Peter has been to the supermarket _____ some shopping.

A for B for do C for doing

17 A telephone answering machine is used _____ recording telephone messages on.

A for to B for C so as to

18 These tests are given in the book _____ you can check your progress.

A in case B if C so that

19 We hurried _____ be late for our appointment.

A not to B in case C so as not to

20 I'll take my credit card with me _____ I decide to buy something when I'm out.

A so that B in case C if

83 Prepositions of place and movement (Units 165-168)

Complete the sentences by putting the words in brackets in the correct places.

1 I got _____ the crowded train and sat down _____ a young man.

(next to/onto)

2 The boys got _____ the garden by climbing _____ the fence.

(over/into)

3 I've got a poster of Madonna _____ my room, _____ the wall _____ my bed.

(above/in/on)

4 Maria drove _____ Madrid _____ Barcelona _____ her friend's car yesterday. She arrived _____ Barcelona at 8 o'clock.

(to/in/from)

5 My grandparents live _____ 42 London Road, _____ a flat _____ the top floor. A very nice Italian couple live _____ the floor _____ them.

(in/on/below/at)

6 We'd been driving _____ Harbour Street for a few minutes when the car _____ us stopped suddenly and we crashed _____ it.

(in front of/into/along)

7 The robbers ran _____ the bank and jumped _____ the motor bike waiting _____ Then they drove off _____ the corner.

(onto/outside/out of/round)

8 When I got back _____ my hotel bedroom, I locked the door _____ me, took _____ my dressing-gown and got _____ bed.

(behind/off/ into / inside)

9 Don't walk _____ that ladder. Something may fall _____ you.

(down/under/ on top of)

10 The coach drove _____ the factory, then it went _____ the tunnel and started to climb _____ the hill.

(past/up/through)

11 Sally got _____ the taxi and sat down _____ the driver _____ the back seat.

(behind/in/into)

12 London is _____ the River Thames, which flows _____ the city _____ west to east.

(from/on/through)

13 Mrs Woods **got** _____ the bus and walked _____ the street _____ the post office.

(*towards/off/across*)

14 My girlfriend and I often meet _____ the Espresso Cafe _____ East Street. Do you know the Espresso? **It's** _____ the bank and the school, _____ the Grand Hotel.

(*opposite/between/at/in*)

84 Prepositions of time (Units 169–174)

Correct the mistakes.

- 1 My interview is on 2 o'clock in Monday.
- 2 We've been waiting here from ten minutes.
- 3 Are you leaving at Saturday morning?
- 4 I worked in a bank during five years.
- 5 Ken and Kate are on holiday on August.
- 6 I always visit my parents in Christmas.
- 7 Mike usually plays football the weekend.
- 8 You've known me since ten years.
- 9 I was born in January 3rd at 1968.
- 10 Sarah was listening to the radio during she was taking a bath.
- 11 The doctors operated on the man just on time to save his life.
- 12 Are you doing anything in the end of next week?
- 13 I fell asleep in front of the TV in the football match.
- 14 The builders say they'll have finished the job until next weekend at the latest.
- 15 I found my new contact lenses strange at first, but I got used to them at the end.

85 Other prepositions (Units 175–177)

Complete the sentences using the words in the box. (Sometimes two answers are possible.)

| | | | | | | |
|----|----|------|----|------|----|-------|
| in | as | with | on | like | by | as if |
|----|----|------|----|------|----|-------|

- 1 She's a middle-aged woman _____ blue eyes and short blonde hair.
- 2 We **went to** Athens _____ my car.
- 3 Would you rather go home _____ taxi or _____ the bus?
- 4 Who's that man _____ the white hat?
- 5 Sue's brother is very handsome. He looks _____ Tom Cruise!

6 **I've** got a summer job in the Espresso Cafe working _____ a waiter.

7 Are you all right? You look _____ you haven't slept all night.

8 **I** don't want to change my flat. I like it just _____ it is.

86 Word and preposition combinations (Units 178–182)

Choose the correct preposition — A, B or C.

- 1 **I'm** feeling rather nervous _____ my interview tomorrow.
A of B to C about
- 2 **I** used to be quite good _____ dancing.
A in B at C on
- 3 Are you afraid _____ snakes?
A by B to C of
- 4 Pisa in Italy is famous _____ its 'Leaning Tower'.
A about B from C for
- 5 **I'm** not really interested _____ stamp collecting.
A in B on C by
- 6 There's no need _____ you to worry.
A to B for C of
- 7 Who's responsible _____ these children?
A of B for C in
- 8 There has been a rise _____ the number of homeless people.
A in B of C with
- 9 **I've** had some difficulty _____ my new computer.
A with B of C in
- 10 Sally met an old friend in town quite _____ chance yesterday.
A on B by C with
- 11 Ken and Kate will be _____ holiday soon.
A on B in C at
- 12 The film *The Birds* was made _____ Alfred Hitchcock.
A with B of C by
- 13 My brother is thinking _____ selling his car.
A to B of C on
- 14 **I** can't concentrate _____ anything at the moment.
A on B to C about
- 15 They apologized _____ losing my letter.
A to B in C for

16 When Robert was younger, he dreamt _____ being a famous footballer one day.

A to **B** of **C** in

17 **They're** taking very good care _____ your son in hospital.

A about **B** for **C** of

18 I congratulated them _____ getting engaged.

A on **B** of **C** in

19 I've warned you _____ taking my things without asking me.

A for **B** of **C** about

20 That smell always reminds me _____ hospitals.

A on **B** of **C** about

87 Indirect objects with or without *to* and *for* (Unit 184)

Re-write the sentences without *to* or *for*.

Example:

You've lent your camera to Frank.

You've lent Frank your camera.

1 The company has given the job to Kathy Co-build.

2 My sister made a cake for me on my last birthday.

3 **The** receptionist will order a taxi for us.

4 **I've** promised these concert tickets to someone.

88 Phrasal verbs (Units 185–186)

Replace the words in *italics* with one of the phrasal verbs in Units 185 and 186.

1 I *refused* their offer of a job.

2 We *continued* working through our lunch break.

3 Robert *stopped* playing football years ago.

4 People say that I *am like* my father.

5 What time did you *start* on your journey?

6 Unemployment has *increased* by 10% since last year.

7 Our flight was *delayed* by bad weather.

8 My grandfather never *broke* a promise.

9 Mr and Mrs James may never *recover from* the tragic death of their son.

10 The bank's computer has *stopped working* six times this week already!

Appendix: American English

[Приложение: Американский вариант английского языка]

Грамматические различия между British и American English невелики. Основные различия состоят в следующем:

- a** Американцы очень часто употребляют past simple для сообщения 'новостей' в тех случаях, когда британцы употребляют present perfect (см. 6с).
- | AMERICAN ENGLISH
АМЕРИКАНСКИЙ ВАРИАНТ АНГЛИЙСКОГО
ЯЗЫКА | BRITISH ENGLISH
БРИТАНСКИЙ ВАРИАНТ АНГЛИЙСКОГО
ЯЗЫКА |
|---|--|
| <i>Did you hear the news ? My sister had a baby!</i> | <i>Have you heard the news ? My sister has had a baby!</i> |
- Американцы часто употребляют past simple *c just, already* и *yet* в тех случаях, когда британцы употребляют present perfect (см. 8).
- | AMERICAN ENGLISH | BRITISH ENGLISH |
|---|---|
| <i>He just went out. I already had breakfast. Did you write the letter yet?</i> | <i>He's just gone out. I've already had breakfast. Have you written the letter yet?</i> |
- b** Американцы часто употребляют *have, c do и does* в отрицательных формах и вопросах в тех случаях, когда британцы употребляют *have got* (см. 33).
- | AMERICAN ENGLISH | BRITISH ENGLISH |
|---|--|
| <i>/ have a brother. He doesn't have a job. Do you have a pen ?</i> | <i>I've got a brother. He hasn't got a job. Have you got a pen ?</i> |
- c** Американский вариант английского языка имеет две формы past participle глагола *get*: *gotten* и *got*; Британский вариант английского языка имеет только одну: *got* (см. 190.2).
- | AMERICAN ENGLISH | BRITISH ENGLISH |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>I've gotten/got a ticket.</i> | <i>I've got a ticket.</i> |
- d** Американцы часто употребляют infinitive без *to* после глаголов *suggest, insist, recommend* и т.д. (см. 55.1).
- I suggested (that) he see the doctor.
They insisted (that) she take the money.*
- Эта конструкция также употребляется в британском варианте английского языка, особенно, в более официальном стиле.
- e** Существуют различия в употреблении некоторых предлогов. Например:
- | AMERICAN ENGLISH | BRITISH ENGLISH |
|--|--|
| <i>on the weekend Monday through/to Friday different from/than stay home/stay at home write somebody/write to somebody</i> | <i>at the weekend (CM. 169.1) Monday to Friday (CM. 173.2) different from/to (CM. 178) stay at home (CM. 168.10) write to somebody (CM. 181)</i> |
- f** В американском варианте английского языка, если слог не ударный -/ на конце слова обычно не удваивается (см. 188.6с).
- | AMERICAN ENGLISH | BRITISH ENGLISH |
|------------------|-------------------|
| <i>'traveled</i> | <i>'travelled</i> |
- g** Глаголы *burn, dream, lean, leap, learn, smell, spell, spill* и *spoil* обычно правильные в американском варианте английского языка, например, *burned, dreamed, leaned, leaped, learned* и т.д. (см. 190.2b).

Glossary (Глоссарий)

В глоссарии объясняются грамматические термины, употребляемые в пособии.

active/действительный залог: see **passive** /страдательный залог.

adjective/(имя) прилагательное - слово, как *red, old, beautiful*, используемое для описания существительного, например *a red car, an old man*, или местоимения, например: *It's red. He's old*.

adverb/наречие - слово, используемое для определения глагола, прилагательного, другого наречия или предложения и отвечающее на такие вопросы: how/как? **when/когда?** или **where/где?**, например: *She works slowly. He's very old. I'll see you tomorrow. Come here.*

affirmative/утверждение - противоположное к **negative/отрицание**, например: / *know* - утверждение, / *don't know* - отрицание.

agent/агента - в страдательном залоге агента - это лицо или предмет, которым выполняется действие, например: *The radio was invented by Marconi*.

apostrophe/апостроф - знак ('), например, *my friend's car*.

article/артикл: артикли - это *a/an* и *the*. См. также **definite article/определенный артикл** и **indefinite article/неопределенный артикл**.

auxiliary verb/вспомогательный глагол - глагол *be, have* и *do*, который используется для образования глагольных форм, страдательного залога (the passive) и т.д., например: *We are waiting, I have finished, You don't know. It was stolen*. См. также **modal auxiliary verb/модальный вспомогательный глагол**.

clause/придаточное предложение - группа слов, обычно с подлежащим и глаголом, например: / *went out and it stopped raining*. Предложение состоит из одного или более придаточных предложений, например: / *went out when it stopped raining*. See also **main clause/главное предложение**.

comparative/сравнительная степень, например, *older, slower, more intelligent* - сравнительная степень от *old, slow, intelligent*.

compound/составное существительное - слово, образованное из двух или более частей, например, *toothbrush (tooth + brush), something (some + thing)*.

conditional/условное предложение - предложение с **if** (или слово с подобным значением), например: *If I see Martin, I'll give him your message. If I knew the answer, I'd tell you*. Обратите внимание, что **conditional/условное предложение** также употребляется с конструкциями *would* (или *should* с / и *we*), например: *He would come. I would/should like some coffee*.

conjunction/союз - слово, используемое для соединения двух предложений, например, *and, but, when, if*.

consonant/согласная: see **vowel/гласная**.

continuous/длительная форма - глагольная форма с *be* + *-ing*, например: *I'm working* (present continuous/настоящее длительное время), / *was working* (past continuous/прошедшее длительное время), *I've been working* (present perfect continuous/настоящее совершенное длительное время). See also **simple/простая форма**.

contraction/стяжение - сокращенная форма, например: *I'm* (= I am), *They've* (= They have), *don't* (= do not).

countable noun/исчисляемые существительные - *book, egg* и *girl* - примеры исчисляемых существительных. Исчисляемые существительные - это названия отдельных предметов, людей и т.д., которых можно сосчитать; они имеют формы единственного и множественного числа и могут употребляться с артиклем *a/an* и числительными, например, *a book, two books; an egg, six eggs; one girl, three girls*. См. также **uncountable noun/неисчисляемое существительное**.

defining relative clauses/определяющие относительные придаточные предложения - придаточные предложения, в которых идет речь о том, какое лицо или какой предмет говорящий имеет в виду, например: *I spoke to the man who works in the post office*. (*Who works in the post office* - определяет, какой человек.) См. также **non-defining relative clauses/не определяющие относительные придаточные предложения**.

definite article/определенный артикл *the*.

demonstrative adjective or pronoun/указательное прилагательное или местоимение К указательным прилагательным или местоимениям относятся *this, that, these, those*.

direct object/прямое дополнение. В предложении / *gave John the book* прямое дополнение - *the book*, а **indirect object/косвенное дополнение** - *John*.

direct speech/прямая речь: см. **reported speech/косвенная речь.**

exclamation/восклицание - слово или слова, выражающие неожиданное сильное чувство, например: *Stop! How incredible!*

exclamation mark/восклицательный знак - знак (!), который ставится в конце восклицания.

expression/выражение - группа слов, используемых вместе, например, *have a bath* [принимать ванну].

first person (1st person)/первое лицо: см. **person/лицо.**

formal/официальный стиль - язык официального стиля используется, когда необходимо показать уважение, например, в деловой переписке или в вежливой беседе с незнакомыми людьми. **Informal/неофициальный стиль** - язык неофициального стиля используется в дружеской, повседневной речи в и письмах к друзьям.

full verb/смысловый глагол — обычный глагол (например, *work, look, run*), в отличие от вспомогательных глаголов (*be, have, do*) или модальных глаголов (*can, must, may* и т.д.).

genitive/родительный падеж: см. **possessive V притяжательный падеж с Ч.**

gerund/герундий - глагол с формой **-ing**, употребляемый как существительное, например: *Walking is good for you.*

gradable adjective/градуированное прилагательное *good* и *large* — градуированные прилагательные: предметы могут быть лучше или хуже, меньше или больше. *Dead* - неградуированное прилагательное/**a non-gradable adjective:** обычно не говорят, что что-то более или менее мертвое (может быть мертвое или не мертвое).

hyphen/дефис - короткая линия (-), соединяющая слова, например, *tin-opener*.

imperative/ повелительное наклонение - повелительное наклонение имеет точно такую же форму, как и инфинитив без *to*, например, *wait, be, have*. Повелительное наклонение употребляется для выражения приказа, предложения и т.д., например: *Wait here. Be quiet. Have some more tea.*

indefinite article/неопределенный артикль a/an.

indefinite pronoun/неопределенное местоимение, например, *something, anyone*.

indirect object/косвенное дополнение: см. **direct object/ прямое дополнение.**

indirect question/косвенный вопрос - вопрос, начинающийся с фраз: *Do you know ... ?* или *Could you tell me ... ?*, например: *Do you know where Ken is?*

infinitive/инфинитив. В выражениях / *can drive u You must come*, формы *drive* и *come* - инфинитивы без *to*. В выражениях *I'd like to drive* и *you have to come* формы *to drive* и *to come* - инфинитивы с *to*.

informal/неофициальный: см. **formal/официальный.**

-ing form/форма - форма глагола, оканчивающаяся на **-ing**, например, *working, running*. См. также **gerund/герундий** и **present participle/причастие настоящего времени.**

intonation/интонация - восходящий голос говорящего (восходящая интонация) и нисходящий голос говорящего (нисходящая интонация).

irregular/неправильный: см. **regular/правильный.**

main clause/главное предложение. В предложении *I phoned Maria when I got home* **главное предложение** - *I phoned Maria*; другое предложение *when I got home* - **придаточное.** Главное предложение может выступать самостоятельно как предложение, в отличие от придаточного предложения, которое не может быть самостоятельным.

modal auxiliary verb/модальный вспомогательный глагол (или **modal verb/модальный глагол**). Модальными вспомогательными глаголами являются *can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should, ought (to), must, need* и *dare*.

modify/ определять - изменять значение чего-то.

negative/отрицание: см. **affirmative/утверждение.**

non-defining relative clause/ не определяющие относительные придаточные предложения - придаточные предложения, в которых не идет речь о том, какое лицо или какой предмет говорящий имеет в виду, но которое дает дополнительную информацию об уже определенном лице или предмете, например: *Mrs Higgins, who is 48, has just had a baby.* (*who is 48* не уточняет, какое лицо; мы уже знаем, что это *Mrs Higgins*.) См. также **defining relative clause/определяющие относительные придаточные предложения.**

noun/(имя) существительное - слово, которое называет лицо, предмет и т.д., например, *student, girl, car, bedroom*.

object/дополнение: см. **direct object/прямое дополнение** и **subject/подлежащее**.

participle/причастие: см. **present participle/причастие настоящего времени** и **past participle/причастие прошедшего времени**.

passive/страдательный залог. В выражении / *told Peter* глагол *told* - действительный залог. В выражении *Peter was told* глагол *was told* - страдательный залог.

past participle/причастие прошедшего времени — глагольная форма *broken, seen, cleaned*, которая используется для образования совершенных времен (perfect tenses), например: *I've cleaned my room* (present perfect - настоящее совершенное), страдательный залог (the passive), например: *The room has been cleaned*. Причастие прошедшего времени правильных глаголов имеет окончание **-ed**, например, *cleaned, worked*. Неправильные глаголы имеют различные формы причастия прошедшего времени, например, *break* → *broken, see* → *seen* (см. 190).

perfect/совершенное время — глагольная форма, образованная с помощью *have* + past participle, например: / *have worked* (present perfect simple/настоящее совершенное простое время), *I had worked* (past perfect simple/прошедшее совершенное простое время).

person - способ представления говорящего (1st **person/первое лицо**) - лицо, к которому обращаются (2nd **person/второе лицо**), и люди или предметы, о которых говорят (3rd **person/третье лицо**), например, 1st person = /, *we*, 2nd person = *you*, 3rd person = *he, she, it, they*.

phrasal verb/фразовый глагол - глагол + частица (наречие или предлог), например, *get up, switch on, throw away*, или глагол + частица + предлог, например, *look forward to, go back on*

phrase/фраза, словосочетание - группа слов, которые употребляются вместе, например, a red car (именное словосочетание), *would have been* (глагольное словосочетание).

plural/множественное число - форма, используемая для более чем одного. *Car* и *he/she* - единственное число, *cars* и *they* - множественное.

possessive adjective/притяжательное прилагательное *My, your, his, her, its, our, their* - притяжательные прилагательные.

possessive pronoun - *Mine, yours, his, hers, ours, theirs* — притяжательные местоимения.

possessive 's/притяжательный падеж с 's (genitive/родительный падеж) - форма существительного с окончанием 's или 's', например: *John's, my parents'*.

preposition/предлог, например, *in, on, of, at, for*

present participle/причастие настоящего времени - такая глагольная форма, как *working, worrying, playing*, которая употребляется для образования длительных времен (continuous tenses), например: / *was working* (past continuous/прошедшее длительное время) или прилагательных (adjective), например, *a worrying problem*, или наречий / *hurt my leg playing tennis*.

progressive/прогрессирующее время: см.

continuous pronoun/местоимение - это такие слова, как *she, they, them, mine*, которые употребляются вместо существительных или именных фраз.

question tag/краткий общий вопрос - выражение типа *isn't it?* или *have you?*, которое ставится в конце предложения, например: *It's cold, isn't it?*

question word/вопросительное слово - К вопросительным словам относятся *what, where, who, whose, when, why, which, how*.

quotation mark/ кавычки Когда речь цитируется, можно употреблять одинарные кавычки (' '), или двойные кавычки (""), например: *"Goodbye," he said. /'Goodbye, ' he said.*

reflexive pronoun/возвратные местоимения - К возвратным местоимениям относятся *myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves*.

regular/правильный - **правильная форма** - это форма, для которой соблюдаются те же правила, что и для большинства других форм; на неправильные формы (irregular form) это положение не распространяется, например, *cars, books, rooms* — это правильная форма образования множественного числа (окончание -s), а *men, children* - неправильная форма образования множественного числа.

relative clause/относительное придаточное предложение: см. **defining relative clause/определяющие относительные придаточные предложения**, **non-defining relative clause/не определяющие относительные придаточные предложения** и **relative pronoun/относительное местоимение**.

relative pronoun/ относительное местоимение.

В предложении *I spoke to the man who works in the post office*: слово *who* - относительное местоимение. Местоимения *who, that, which, whose, whom, what* могут употребляться как относительные местоимения.

reply question/ответный вопрос - краткие вопросы, которые используются для ответа на утверждения, например: *'I'm leaving now.'* **'Are you?'**

reported speech/косвенная речь. В предложении *He said, I'm cold* часть предложения *I'm cold* - **прямая речь.** В предложении *He said he was cold* часть предложения *he was cold* - **косвенная речь.**

second person (2nd person)/второе лицо: см. **person/лицо.**

sentence - предложение группа слов, образуемых утверждение, вопрос, приказ или восклицание. Предложения могут быть сложноподчиненные и сложносочиненные. На письме предложение начинается с заглавной буквы (например, *A, F, Y*) и оканчивается точкой (*.*), вопросительным (*?*), или восклицательным (*!*) знаком.

short answer/краткий ответ - ответ, состоящий из подлежащего и вспомогательного глагола, например: *Yes, I am. No, she hasn't.*

simple/ простая форма - глагольная форма, не являющаяся формой длительного времени, например, *I work* (настоящее простое время), *I worked* (прошедшее простое), *I've worked* (настоящее совершенное простое время). См. также **continuous/длительная.**

singular/единственное число: см. **plural/множественное число.**

statement/утверждение - предложение, в котором содержится информация, например: *I'm a student. They went to the cinema.*

stress/ударение - способ произнесения слова или части слов с большей силой, чем другие. В слове *forget* ударение падает на второй слог *forget*.

Subject/подлежащее - существительное или местоимение, стоящее перед глаголом в утвердительном предложении, например: *John went to London.*

superlative/превосходная степень, например, *oldest, slowest, most intelligent* - превосходная степень от *old, slow, intelligent.*

syllable/слог - например, слово *remember* имеет три слога re-mem-ber.

tag: см. **question tag/ краткий общий вопрос**

tense/время - глагольная форма, которая указывает на время действия или состояния, например, *is working* (настоящее время), *worked* (прошедшее время).

third person (3rd person)/третье лицо: см. **person/лицо.**

to infinitive/to инфинитив (с частицей *to*): см. **infinitive/инфинитив.**

uncountable noun/ неисчисляемое существительное: см. **countable noun/исчисляемое существительное.**

verb/глагол - слова *work, play, go, be.* См. также **full verb/смысловый глагол, вспомогательный глагол** и **modal auxiliary verb/ модальный вспомогательный глагол.**

voiced sound/звонкие согласные При произношении звонких согласных */d/, /b/, /n/* чувствуется колебание голоса. При произношении глухих согласных, например */p/, /k/, /t/*, колебание голоса не чувствуется.

vowel/гласные: Буквы *a, e, i, o, u* - гласные. Остальные буквы, например *b, c, d, f, g, h,* - согласные.

wh- question/вопрос, начинающийся с wh- - это вопрос, который начинается с вопросительного слова, например: *What are you doing? Where did she go? When can we start?*

yes/no question/вопрос Да/Нет - это вопрос, который требует ответа *Yes/Да* или *No/Нет.* Например: *Are you working? Did she go out? Can we start now?*

Index/Алфавитный указатель

В Алфавитном указателе цифры указывают на разделы, а не на страницы.

- a/an** 108–109, 113
a or an 108.1, 113
a/an or the 108, 113
ability 36
able (*be able to*) 35.2d, 36
above 167.1
accident (*by accident*) 180
accommodation (uncountable) 107.3
accuse (someone *of*) 182, 183
ache 27
acknowledged (*it is acknowledged that she/she is acknowledged to*) 64
across 169.4–5, 183
active and passive 59, 60
adjectives 126–130
adjective + *should* 55.2
adjective + *to* infinitive 96.2
adjectives ending in *-ing* and *-ed* 99
the + adjective (*the young*, etc) 110.2, 113
possessive adjectives 121, 123
form of adjectives 126.1
position of adjectives 126.2
order of adjectives 126.3
comparative and superlative adjectives 127, 129
as + adjective + *as* 128, 129
adjectives and adverbs of manner 130
adjective + preposition 178, 183
admit (+ *-ing* form) 83
adverbs 130–140
adverbs and adjectives 130
adverbs of manner, place and time 131
adverb position with verbs 132
still, *yet*, *already* 133
any more/longer, *no longer* 134
adverbs of frequency (*always*, *often*, etc) 135
adverbs of probability (*probably*, *perhaps*, etc) 136
fairly, **quite**, *rather*, *pretty* 137
too, *enough* 138
so, *such* 139
comparative and superlative adverbs 140
as + adverb + *as* 140.2
advice (uncountable) 107.3
advice 42 -
reporting advice 79
advise
advise + object + *to* infinitive 79, 86.3, 98
advise + *-ing* form 86.3
afford (+*to* infinitive) 84
afraid
I'm afraid so/not, etc 152
afraid 0/178
after
after (conjunction) 22, 160.2
after (preposition) 173.3
ago 174.3–5
ago and for 174.4
ago and before 174.5
agree (+*to* infinitive) 84
all (*of*) 114, 118
all and every 118.1
all, everybody, everything 118.2
all and whole 118.3
all day, every day etc 118.4
alleged (*it is alleged that he/she is alleged to*) 64
along 168.4, 183
allow 86.3
allowed (*be allowed to*) 35.2d, 37, 40
already 8, 133.3
although 161.1
always 135
always with the continuous forms 26
am (*am, are, is*) 31
amazed (*at/by*) 178
American English (*and British English*)
Appendix
an: **see a**
and (in conditional sentences) 73.3a
angry (*about/with/for*) 178, 183
annoyed (*about/with/for*) 178
answer (*to*) 179
any (*of*) 114, 115
any and some 115
anybody, anyone, anything, anywhere 125
any more, any longer 134.1
apologize (*to someone/for*) 181
appear (+*to* infinitive) 84
apply (*for*) 181
are (*are, am, is*) 31
around 168.7
arrange (+ *to* infinitive) 84, 98
arrangements 19, 20, 29
arrive (*at/in*) 168.9, 183
articles (*a/an and the*) 108–113
as
as soon as 22, 160.2
as/so long as 22, 73.2
as + adjective + *as* 128, 129
as + adverb + *as* 140.2e
as (time) 160
as (reason) 162.1
as a result 162.2
as and like 176.1
as if 176.2
ashamed (*of*) 178
ask
ask+to infinitive 84
ask + object + *to* infinitive 79, 80, 86.2
astonished (*at/by*) 178
at
at (place) 165, 183
at (time) 169, 183
at the end and in the end 171
athletics (singular) 102.8
attempt (+*to* infinitive) 84
attitude (*to/towards*) 179
avoid (+ *-ing* form) 83, 98
aware (*of*) 178
bad (*at*) 178
be 31
be no continuous form 27
be able to 35.2d, 36
be allowed to 35.2d, 37, 40
be supposed to (obligation) 42.3
be supposed to (= 'be said to') 64.2
be used to 89
bear (*can't bear* + *-ing* form or *to* infinitive) 87
because/because of 162.1
bed (*and the bed*) 111.1, 113
been (*and gone*) 7
before
before (conjunction) 6.2b, 22, 160
before (preposition) 173.3
before, ago, for, since 174
begin (+ *-ing* form or *to* infinitive) 87, 98
behind 168.1, 183
believe
believe no continuous form 27
believe in 181
believed (*it is believed that he/she is believed to*, etc) 64
belong
belong no continuous form 27
belong to 181
below 167.1
beside 168.3
better (*had better*) 42.2
between 168.2, 183
billiards (singular) 102.8
blame (*for/on*) 182
bored (*with*) 178
borrow (*from*) 182

- both (of)** 114, 119
both ... and ... 119.3
bread (uncountable) 107.3
 British English (and American English) Appendix
business (on business) 180
by
 by+ agent in the passive 63
 by car/bus/train etc 111.2, 113, 175
 by myself, by yourself, by himself etc 122, 123
 by (place) 168.3
 by (time) 173.1
by and until 173.1
 by accident/chance/mistake 180
 a *book/film* etc *by* someone 180
 by cheque/credit card and *(in) cash* 180
- can 35
 can with *see, hear, understand*, etc 27.3
 can (ability) 36
 can (permission) 37, 40
 can (theoretical possibility) 44
 can (deduction) 46.1d
 can (requests) 48
 can (offers) 49.3
 can (suggestions) 50.3
can't
 can't (deduction) 46, 47
 can't help + *-ing* form 83
 can't stand + *-ing* form 83, 98
capable (of) 178
care (care about/care for/take care of) 181
careless (of someone + to infinitive) 96.2b
cattle (plural) 102.3
cause (of) 179
certainly 136
certainty 46, 47, 136
cheque (by cheque) 180
church (and the church) 111.1
class (singular or plural) 102.2
claimed (*it is claimed that she/she is claimed to*) 64
clever
 clever of someone + to infinitive) 96.2b
 clever at 178
college (and the college) 111.1
come (+ing) 83.3, 98
common (for+object+to infinitive) 96.2c
company (singular or plural) 102.2
 comparative adjectives 127, 129
 comparative adverbs 140
 comparison
 comparison with adjectives 127-129
 comparison with adverbs 140
- complain (to/about)* 181
 compound nouns 103
concentrate (on) 181
 conditional sentences (if sentences) 67-74
 conditionals introduction 67
 open present or future conditionals ('first conditional') 68
 unreal present or future conditionals ('second conditional') 69
 open and unreal present or future conditionals 70
 unreal past conditionals ('third conditional') 71
 general conditionals 72
 conditionals without *if* 13
congratulate (on) 182
conscious (of) 178
consider (+ *-ing* form) 83
considered (it is considered that he/he is considered to) 64
contain (no continuous form) 27
continually (with continuous forms) 26
continue (+ *-ing* form or *to infinitive*) 87
 contractions (*I'm, they've, doesn't*, etc) 188
 contrast 161
cost (no continuous form) 27
could 35
 could with *see, hear, understand*, etc 27.3, 36.2c
 could (ability) 36
 could (permission) 37
 could (possibility) 43, 47
 could (theoretical possibility) 44
 could (requests) 48
 could (offers) 49.3
 could (suggestions) 50.3
 could in if sentences 69.3b. 71.3
couldn't (deduction) 46, 47
 countable and uncountable nouns 107
crash (crash into, drive into, etc) 181
credit card (by credit card) 180
crowd (singular or plural) 102.2
- dally** 135.4
dare 35
decide (+ *to infinitive*) 84, 98
 decrease (**in**) 179
 deduction 46, 47
 defining relative clauses 153-156, 158
definitely 136
delay (+-ing form) 83
demand (for) 179
deny (+-ing form) 83
depend (on) 181, 183
deserve (no continuous form) 27
despite 161.2-3
did (in past simple negatives and questions) 4, 144
- die (of)** 181
difference (between) 179, 183
different (from/to) 178, 183
difficulty (in/with) 179, 183
 direct speech and reported speech (indirect speech) 75-80
disappointed
 disappointed + to infinitive 96.2a
 disappointed with 178
dislike
 dislike no continuous form 27
 dislike + -ing form 83
do/does (in present simple negatives and questions) 2, 144
do (the/some etc + -ing form) 83.2
down 168.6, 183
dream (about/of) 181, 183
during 172, 183
- each (of)** 114, 118 Note
 each and every 118 Note
 each other 122.7
easy (+ to infinitive) 96.2
economics (singular) 102.8
either (of) 114, 119
 either and neither 119.2
 either ... or ... 119.3
 either (not ... either) 151.3
encourage (+ *-ing* form or object + *to infinitive*) 86.3
end (in the end, at the end) 171
 endings of words (*-(e)s, -ed, -ly*, etc)
 pronunciation of endings 187
 spelling of endings 188
engaged (to) 178
enjoy (+ *-ing* form) 83
enough 138
envious (of) 178
equipment (uncountable) 107.3
essential (for + object + to infinitive) %
even (even though) 161.1
ever 6.2b, 12.2, 135
every 114, 118
 every day and all day 118.4
 every and each 118 Note
everybody, everyone, everything, everywhere 125
everybody (and all) 118.2a
everything (and all) 118.2b
example (of) 179
excited (about) 178
expect
 expect + to infinitive 84
 expect + object + to infinitive 86, 98
 /*expect so/not, etc* 152
expected (it is expected that he/he is expected to) 64
explain (to) 182

- fall* (+ to infinitive) 84
fairly 137
fall (in) 179
family (singular or plural) 102.2
famous (for) 178
fancy (+-ing form) 83
feel
 feel no continuous form 27
 feel like + -ing form 83, 98
few (of) 114, **116**
 (a) few and (a) little **116.1, 116.3**
fond (of) 178
for **172, 173-174, 183**
 for with the present perfect **11, 183**
 for (purpose) 163.2
 for, during and *while* 172.2, **183**
 for, since, ago and *before* 174, 183
 for and verbs with two objects (*buy a present for him, etc*) 184
 go/come/or a **drink/meal** etc 180, 183
 have something/or **breakfast/lunch** etc **180**
 for example 180
force (+ object + to infinitive) **86.1**
forever (with continuous forms) 26
forget
 forget no continuous form 27
 forget + -ing form or to infinitive **88.1, 98**
 frequency (adverbs) 135
frequently 135
friendly (of/to) 178
frightened (of) 178
from
 from (place) 168.8
 from (time) 173.2, 183
front (in front of) 168.1, 183
full (of) 178
furious (about/with/for) 178
furniture (uncountable) 107.3
 future **16-24, 29**
 will 16, 29
 going to 17, 29
 will and *going to* 18, 29
 present continuous for the future 19, 29
 present continuous for the future and *going to* 20, 29
 present simple for the future **21, 29**
 present simple for the future after *when, if, etc* 22, 29
 future continuous: *will be + -ing* 23, 29
 future perfect: *will have* + past participle 24, 29
 future in the past: *was/were going to* 25
generous (of someone + to infinitive) 96.2b, 98
 genitive: see **possessive's**
 gerund: see -ing form
get
 get instead of *be* in the passive **61**
 get + object + to infinitive **86.1**
 get used to 89
 get in (to) /out of a car, get on (to) /off a bus, etc **166.4**
 get to and *arrive at/in* 168.9
 give up (+ -ing form) 83
 glass (countable or uncountable) 107.2
go
 go+-ing 83.3
 go on + -ing form or to infinitive 88.4
 going to (future) 17, 29
 going to and *will* 18, 29
 going to and present continuous for the future 20, 29
 going to in the passive **60.1**
 gone (and *been*) 1
 good
 good of someone + to infinitive 96.2b, 98
 good at 178, 183
 good of to 178
 got (*have got*) 33
 government (singular or plural) **102.2**
 group
 group (singular or plural) 102.2
 a group of plural 102.4
 habits 2, 28, 51
 had better 42.2
 hair (countable or uncountable) 107.2
 half (of) **114**
 happy (with) 178
 hardly
 hardly any **115.3**
 hardly ever 135
 hate
 hate no continuous form 27
 hate + -ing form or to infinitive 87, 98
 have 33
 have no continuous form 27
 have and *have got* 33
 have for actions (*have dinner/a drink* etc) 34
 have + object + past participle (*have the house painted, etc*) 65
 have to (obligation and necessity) 35.2d, **38, 40**
 don't have to, mustn't, etc **39, 40**
 have to in the passive **60.1**
 have got to (obligation and necessity) 38.2
 haven't got to, mustn't, etc 39, 40
 have something done 65
 having + past participle (*having finished, etc*) 100.3
he **120, 123**
hear
 hear no continuous form 27
 hear and *listen to* **27A**
 hear about/from/of **181, 183**
help
 help + (to) infinitive 84, 98
 help + object + (to) infinitive 86.2
 can't help +-ing form 83
her 120, 121, 123
hers 121, 123
herself **122, 123**
him 120, 123
himself \22, 123
his 121, 123
home **111.1b, 168.10**
hope
 hope + to infinitive 84, 98
 / *hope so/not, etc* **152**
hopeless (at) 178
hospital (and *the hospital*) **111.1, 113**
how 145.3d
how/what about? (suggestions) **50.2c**
however **161.5**
hurt 27
 hyphen (-) in compound nouns (*tin-opener, etc*) **103.1b**
I 120, 123
If
 if with the present simple for the future **22, 68**
 if and when 66
 if sentences (conditional sentences) 67-74
 if+ present simple + *will* 68, 70, 74
 if+past simple + *would* 69, 70, 74
 if+ past perfect + *would have* **71, 74**
 if + present simple + present simple **72, 74**
 if (=whenever) 72, 74
 if in reported questions 78.3, 80
 if with any/some **115.4**
 if in indirect (embedded) questions 149.3
 if and *in case* 164.2
 as if 176.2
 if only (and *wish*) 56
 if only+past 56.1
 if only + *would* 56.2
 if only + past perfect 56.3
 imagine
 imagine no continuous form 27
 imagine + -ing form 83
 / *imagine so/not, etc* **152**
 imperative 30.1
 imperative in *if* sentences **68.3c**
 important (for + object + to infinitive) 96.2c

- impossible* (+ *to* infinitive) 96.2a
- in**
- in* (place) 165, 166, 183
 - in* (time) 169, 172, 183
 - in the end* and *at the end* 171, 183
 - in time* and *on time* 170, 183
 - in my car, by car*, etc 175
 - in* (= wearing) 177.2
 - be/fall in love with** 180
 - in someone's opinion* 180
- in front of* 168.1, 183
- in case* 164
- in case* and *if* 164.2
- in order to* 95, 163.1
- in spite of* 161.2–3
- include* (no continuous form) 27
- increase* (*in*) 179, 183
- indefinite pronouns (*anybody, something*, etc) 125
- indirect objects (with or without *to* and *for*) 184
- indirect questions (*Do you know where he is?* etc) 149
- indirect speech (reported speech) 75–80
- infinitive
- passive infinitive (*be told*, etc) 60.1
 - passive perfect infinitive (*have been told*, etc) 60.2
 - infinitive in reported speech 79, 80
 - verb + *to* infinitive 84, 98
 - verb + question word + *to* infinitive 85, 98
 - verb + object + *to* infinitive 86, 98
 - verb + *to* infinitive or *-ing* form 87–90, 98
 - used to* + infinitive 89, 51
 - infinitive without *to* 91, 98
 - to* infinitive as subject 94
 - to* infinitive in reported speech 79, 80
 - to* infinitive of purpose 95, 98
 - noun/pronoun** + *to* infinitive 96.1, 98
 - adjective + *to* infinitive 96.2, 98
- information* (uncountable) 107.3
- ing form**
- passive *-ing* form (*being told*, etc) 60.1
 - participle or gerund 81
 - verb + *-ing* form 83, 87–90, 98
 - verb + *-ing* form or *to* infinitive 87–90, 98
 - verb + *-ing* form or object + *to* infinitive 86.3, 98
 - be used to* + *-ing* form 89
 - preposition + *-ing* form 92, 98
 - person + *-ing* form 93
 - ing* as subject 94, 98
 - adjectives ending in *-ing* and *-ed* 99
 - ing* (participle) clauses 100
- inside* 166.3, 183
- interested*
- interested, interesting*, etc 99
 - interested in* 178, 183
- intentions 16.2b, 17.2b, 18.2, 25, 29
- interrogatives:** see questions
- into 166.1, 183
- invitation* (*to*) 179
- invitations 49
- reporting invitations 79
- invite*
- invite* (*to*) 182
 - invite* (**+object+** *to* infinitive) 79, 86.1
- involve* (+ *-ing* form) 83
- iron (countable or uncountable) 107.2
- irregular plurals 101.2
- irregular verbs 190
- is* (*is, am, are*) 31
- it* 120, 123
- it* preparatory subject (*it is useful to know*, etc) 94.2
- it is/they are* and *there is/are* 32.3
- it's time* 58
- its* 121, 123
- itself* 122, 123
- jealous* (*of*) 178
- just* (with the present perfect) 8
- keen* (*on*) 178
- keep* (*on* + *-ing* form) 83
- kind*
- kind of someone* + *to* infinitive 96.2b
 - kind of/to* 178
- know* (no continuous form) 27
- known* (*it is known that he/he is known to*) 64
- laugh* (laugh at, smile at) 181
- learn* (+ *to* infinitive) 84
- let*
- let's** 30, 50.2a
 - let* + object + infinitive 91.3
- like*
- like* no continuous form 27
 - like* + *-ing* form or *to* infinitive 87, 98
 - like* and *would like* 87, 98
- like** (and *as*) 176.1
- likes and dislikes 87.2, 98
- linking words 160–164
- listen* (*to*) 181
- listen to* and *hear* 27.4
- little*
- (*a*) *little* (*of*) 114
 - (*a*) *little* and (*a*) *few* 116.1, 116.3
- look*
- look, watch* and *see* 27A
 - look at/for/after* 181, 183
- lot*
- a lot* (*of*) 114
- a lot* (*of*), *much*, *many* 116.1–2
- lots* (*of*) 116.1–2
- love*
- love* no continuous form 27
 - love* + *-ing* form or *to* infinitive 87
 - be/fall in love with* 180
- luggage* (uncountable) 107.3
- make* (**+object+** *to* infinitive) 91.3, 98
- manage* (+ *to* infinitive) 84
- managed to* 36.2b
- many*
- many* (*of*) 114, 116
 - many, much, a lot* (*of*) 116.1–2
- married* (*to*) 178
- mathematics* (singular) 102.8
- may* 35
- may* (permission) 37
 - may* (possibility) 43, 47
 - may* (requests) 48
- may/might as well* 54
- maybe* 136.3
- me* 120
- meals 111.3
- mean*
- mean* no continuous form 27
 - mean* + *to* infinitive 84
- mean* (*of* someone + *to* infinitive) 96.2b
- mean* (+ object + *to* infinitive) 86.2
- might* 35
- might* (permission) 37
 - might* (possibility) 43, 47
 - might* in *if* sentences 69.3b, 71.3
- might/may as well* 54
- mind* (+ *-ing* form) 83, 98
- mine* 121, 123
- miss* (+ *-ing* form) 83
- modal verbs (*can, may, must*, etc) 35
- modal verbs in the passive 60
 - modal verbs in *if* sentences 68.3a, 69.3b, 71.3
- money* (uncountable) 107.3
- monthly* 135.4
- more* 114
- most* 114
- much* (*of*) 114, 116
- much, many, a lot* (*of*) 116.1–2
- must* 35
- must* (obligation and necessity) 38–40
 - must* and *have to* 38.1
 - mustn't, don't have to, needn't*, etc 39, 40
 - must* (deduction) 46, 47
- my* 121, 123
- myself* 122, 123
- near* 168.3, 183
- necessary* (*for* + object + *to* infinitive) 96.2c

- necessity **38–41, 90, 98**
need 35
need no continuous form 27
needn't, mustn't, etc **39, 40**
needn't have and **didn't** need to 41
need + *-ing* form and **to** infinitive 90, 98
need for **179**
negative **statements 141**
negative questions 146
neither (of) **114, 119**
neither and *either* \ **19.2**
neither ... nor ... 119.3
neither am I, neither do I, etc **151**
nervous (about) 178
never 135
never with the present perfect 6.2b, 12.2
never with *any* **115.3**
news 102.8, 107.3
next to 168.3, 183
nice
nice of someone + *to* infinitive 96.2b
nice of/to 178
no 114, 117
no and *none 117*
no and *not a/any 117.1*
no longer 134.2
nobody (*nobody, no-one, nothing, nowhere 125*)
non-defining relative clauses **156–159**
none (of) **114, 117**
none and *no 117*
nor
nor am I, nor do I, etc **151.2–3**
normal (for + object + *to* infinitive) 96.2c
normally 136
not
not a/any and *no 117.1*
not as/so + adjective + *as 128.2, 129*
no/as/so + adverb + *as 140.2e*
nor in negative statements 141
not in negative questions 146
not ... either 151.3
nouns
noun/pronoun + *to* infinitive 96.1, 98
singular and plural nouns 101–102
compound nouns (*toothbrush, shoe shop*, etc) 103
countable and uncountable nouns 107
a/an and *the* with nouns **108–113**
noun + **preposition 179, 183**
preposition + noun **180, 183**
number (*a number of*: plural) 102.4
object questions (and subject questions) 144
obligation **38–42**
obviously 136
occasionally 135
of
... **of ...** or possessive 's 105
double possessive (*a friend of Simon's, etc*) 106
o/in phrases of quantity (*a litre of wine*, etc) 107.4
some of, none of, both of, etc 114
of my own, of your own, of his own, etc 121
off 166.2, 183
offer (+ *to* infinitive) 79, 84
offers **30.1, 49**
reporting offers 79
often 135
on
on my own, on your own, on his own, etc 121, 123
on (place) 165–166, 183
on (time) **169, 183**
on time and *in time 170, 183*
on top of 167.3
on the bus, by bus, etc **175**
on holiday/business etc **180, 183**
on TV/the radio 180
one
one of my/his/her etc 102.5
one another 122.7
one (s) 124
onto 166.2, 183
opinion (in someone's *opinion*) 180, **183**
opposite 168.2, 183
or (*else*) (in conditional sentences) **73.3b**
order (+object + *to* infinitive) **86.1**
orders **30.1**
reporting orders 79, 80
ought to 35
ought to (obligation and advice) **42.1**
ought to (probability) **45, 47**
our 121, 123
ours 121, 123
ourselves 122, 123
ourselves/themselves and *each other 122.7*
out of 166.1, 183
outside 166.3, 183
over
over, above, etc 167
over and *across 168.5*
owe (no continuous form) 27
own
own no continuous form 27
my own, your own, etc **121.4, 123**
paper (countable or uncountable) 107.3
participle adjectives (*interesting, interested*, etc) 99
participle or gerund **81**
participle (**-ing**) clauses 100
passive **59–64**
passive of present and past tenses 59
passive infinitive and *-ing* forms 60
get instead of **be** in the passive 61
verbs with two objects in the passive 62
passive with *by* and *with 63*
it is said that he/he is said to, etc 64
past 168.7, 183
past simple 4, 28
past simple and past continuous 5.2, 28
past simple and present perfect 12, 28
past simple and past perfect 14.2c. 28
past simple of *be*: *was, were 31*
past simple passive 59
past simple in **if clauses 69–70, 74**
past continuous (past progressive) 5, 28
past continuous and past simple 5.2, 28
past continuous passive 59
past perfect **14–15, 28**
past perfect simple 14, 28
past perfect continuous (past perfect progressive) 15, 28
past perfect simple passive 59
past perfect in **if clauses 71, 74**
people (plural) **101.2f, 102.3**
perhaps 136.3
permission **37, 40**
permit (+ *-ing* form or object + *to* infinitive) 86.3
person + *-ing* form (*do you mind me/my going*, etc) 93
personal pronouns **120, 123**
persuade (+ object + *to* infinitive) **86.1**
photograph (*a photograph of* someone) 179
phrasal verbs (*get up, take after*, etc) 185–186
physics (singular) 102.8
picture (*a picture of* someone) 179
place and movement (prepositions) **165–168**
plans 17–21, **23, 25, 29**
pleased
pleased+ *to* infinitive 96.2a
pleased with 178
plenty (of) **116.1–2**
plural and singular 101–102
plural of compound nouns (*toothbrushes*, etc) 103.2
police (**plural**) 102.3
polite
polite of someone + *to* infinitive 96.2b
polite of/to 178
politics (singular) 102.8
possession 33, **104–106, 121, 123**

- possessive 's (genitive) **104–106**
possibility **43–44, 47**
postpone (+ *-ing* form) 83
potato (countable or uncountable) 107.2
practise (+ *-ing* form) 83
prediction 16.2a, 17.2a, 18.1, 29
prefer
prefer no continuous form 27
prefer + *-ing* form or *to* infinitive 87, 98
preferences 57, **87, 98**
prepare (+ *to* infinitive) 84
prepositions **165–184**
preposition + *-ing* form 92.98
at, in, on (place) 165, 183
in (to) out of, on (to), off, in (side), outside **166, 183**
above, below, over, under (math), on top of **167, 183**
in front of, behind, opposite, between, near, next to, by, beside, along, across, through, over, up, down, past, (a)round from, to, towards, get to, arrive at/in 168, 183
at, in, on (time) 169, 183
on time and in time **170, 183**
at the end and in the end 171, 183
in, during, for, while **172, 183**
by, until, from, to, before, after 173, 183
for, since, ago, before 174, **183**
by car/bus etc 175
like, as and as if **176**
with (= having) **177.1, 183**
in (= wearing) 177.2
adjective + preposition **178, 183**
noun + preposition **179, 183**
preposition + noun **180, 183**
verb + preposition **181, 183**
verb + object + preposition **182, 183**
indirect objects with or without *to* and *for* (give the money to **him/give him the money, etc**) **184**
present continuous (present progressive) 1, 28
present continuous and present simple 3, 28
present tense and present perfect **13, 28**
present continuous for the future 19, 29
present continuous for the future and *going to* **20, 29**
present continuous passive 59
present continuous in **if clauses** 68.3d
present participle or gerund (*-ing*) 81
present participle (*-ing*) clauses (*the boy sitting in the corner, etc*) **100**
present perfect **6–13, 28**
present perfect simple **6–8, 28**
present perfect *with just, yet* and *already* 8
present perfect continuous (present perfect progressive) 9, 28
present perfect simple and present perfect continuous **10, 28**
present perfect **with for** and *since* **11**
present perfect and past simple **12, 28**
present perfect and present tense 13, 28
present perfect passive 59
present perfect in **if clauses** 68.3d
present simple 2, 28
present simple and present continuous **3, 28**
present tense and present perfect **13, 28**
present simple for the future **21, 29**
present simple for the future after *when, if, etc* 22, 29
present simple of *be: am, are, is* **31**
present simple and *used to* habits **51.1**
present simple passive 59
present simple in **if clauses** 68, 70, 72, 74
pretend (+ *to* infinitive) 84
pretty 137
prison (and *the prison*) **111.1**
probability **45, 47, 136**
probably 136
promise (+ *to* infinitive) 10, 79, 84
promises 53
reporting promises 79, 80
pronouns **120–125**
pronunciation of endings *-(e)s* and *-ed* 187
proud (*of*) 178.183
provided/providing (*that*) 22, 73.2
purpose **95, 98, 163–164**
put **off** (*+ -ing* form) 83
quantity **114–119**
questions 142–149
reported questions 78
yes/no questions 142
wh-questions 143
subject and object questions 144
question words 145
negative questions 146
question tags 147
reply questions 148
indirect (embedded) questions 149
question tags 147
question words (*what, when, why* etc) 145
quite 137
rabies (singular) 102.8
rare (*for* + object + *to* infinitive) **96.2c**
rarely 135
rarely with *any* **115.3**
rather **137**
rather (*would rather*) 57
reaction (*to*) 179
realize (no continuous form) 27
reason (*for*) 179
reason 162.1
reason (*why/that*) **155.2**
recently (with the present, perfect) 12.2
recognize (no continuous form) 27
recommend (+ *-ing* form or object + *to* infinitive) **86.3, 98**
reflexive pronouns 122, 123
refuse (**+to** infinitive) 84
refusals 52
regret (*+ -ing* form or *to* infinitive) 88.5, 98
regrets **56.1, 56.3**
regular plurals **101.1**
relationship (**between/with**) 179, **183**
relative clauses 153–159
defining relative clauses with *who, that* and *which* 153
leaving out who, that and *which* in defining relative clauses 154
defining relative clauses *with whose, where, when* and *why/that* 155
defining and non-defining relative clauses 156
non-defining relative clauses with *whose, whom, where* and *when* **157**
relative clauses with prepositions + *which* and *whom* 158
which referring to a whole clause **159**
rely (*on*) 181
remember
remember no continuous form 27
remember + *-ing* form or *to* infinitive **88.1, 98**
remind
remind + object + *to* infinitive **86.1**
remind **about/of** **182**
reply (*to*) 179
reply questions 148
reported (*it is reported that she/she is reported to*) 64
reported speech 75–80
reported statements 77
reported questions 78
to infinitive in reported speech 79, 80
requests **30.1, 48**
reporting requests 79, 80
responsible (*for*) 178
result 162.2
rise (*in*) 179
risk (+ *-ing* form) 83
round (and *around*) 168.7, 183

- rude (of/to)* 178
 's possessive 104–106
-s/-es (plural) 101.1
said (it is said that she/she is said to) 64
say (and tell) 76
scared (of) 178
scenery (uncountable) 107.3
school (and the school) 111.1, 113
search (for) 181
see
 see no continuous form 27
 see, look and watch 27.4
see (someone doing/someone do) 97, 98
seem
 seem no continuous form 27
 seem + to infinitive 84, 98
seldom 135
 seldom with any 115.3
shall 35
 shall and will (future) 16.1b, 23.1b, 24.1b, 68.3b
 shall I? asking for advice/information 42.4
 shall I? offers 49.2
 shall we? suggestions 50.1
she 120, 123
shocked (at/by) 178
short (of) 178
short answers 150
short forms (contractions) 188
should 35
 should (obligation and advice) 42.1
 should (probability) 45, 47
 verb+should 55
 adjective + should 55
 should in if clauses 68.3e, 73.4
shout (at) 181
silly (of someone + to infinitive) 96.2b
similar (to) 178, 183
since
 since with the present perfect 11, 174.2
 since (reason) 162.1
singular and plural 101–102
smell (no continuous form) 27
smile (smile at, laugh at) 181
so 139
 so/as long as 22
 not so/as + adjective + as 128, 129
 not so/as + adverb + as 140
 so am I, so do I, etc 151
 so (result) 162.2
 so that 163.3
 so/such ... (that) 162.2
 so as to (purpose) 95, 163.1
solution (to) 179
some (of) 114, 115
 some and any 115
 somebody, someone, something, somewhere 125
 sometimes 135
 sound (no continuous form) 27
 speak (speak to, talk to) 181
 spelling of endings -(-e)s, -ing, -ed, -er, -est, -ly 188
 stand (can't stand + -ing form) 83, 98
 start (+ -ing form or to infinitive) 87, 98
still 133.1
 stop (+ -ing form or to infinitive) 88.3, 98
 stupid (of) 178
 stupid of someone + to infinitive 96.2b
 subject questions (and object questions) 144
 succeeded (in + -ing) 36.2b
such 139
suffer (from) 181, 183
suggest (+ -ing form) 83
suggestions 30.1, 30.2, 50
superlative adjectives 127, 129
superlative adverbs 140
suppose
 suppose no continuous form 27
 / *suppose so/not, etc* 152
 suppose/supposing (in conditional sentences) 73.5
 supposed
 be supposed to (obligation) 42.3
 be supposed to (= 'be said to') 64.2
 surprised
 surprised + to infinitive 96.2a
 surprised at/by 178
 suspicious (of) 178

taste (no continuous form) 27
teach (+object + to infinitive) 86.1
team (singular or plural) 102.2
tell
 tell and say 76
 tell + object + to infinitive 79, 80, 86.1, 98
 tell someone about something 182
than (in comparatives) 127, 129, 140
that
 that in reported speech 77.3
 that in relative clauses 153, 154, 155.2
the 108–113
 a, an and the 108, 113
 shoes, the shoes, etc 109.1, 113
 the dolphin, the orchid, etc 110, 113
 hospital, the hospital, etc 111, 113
 place names with and without the 112, 113
 the + comparative, the+ comparative 127.2c, 140.2
 the with superlatives 127, 129, 140.2
their 121, 123

theirs 121, 123
them 120, 123
themselves 122, 123
 themselves/ourselves and each other 122.7
there is, there are, etc 32
therefore 162.2
they 120
 they are/it is and there is/are 32.3
 think (no continuous form) 27
 I think so, I don't think so, etc 152
 think about/of 181, 183
though 161.1
thought (it is thought that she/she is thought to, etc) 64
threaten (+to infinitive) 79, 84
threats 53
 reporting threats 79
through 168.4
till (until) 22, 160.4
time (see also verbs 1–29), 131, 133–135, 169–174, 183
time (it's time) 58
tired (of) 178
to infinitive: see infinitive
to
 to+ -ing form 92.2
 to (movement) 168.8
 to (time) 173.2
 to and verbs with two objects (give the money to him, etc) 184
too 138
 too and very 138.7
top (on top of) 167.3
towards 168.8, 183
traffic (uncountable) 107.3
travel (uncountable) 107.3
try (+ -ing form or to infinitive) 88.2, 98

uncountable nouns 107
under 167, 183
underneath 167.2
understand (no continuous form) 27
understood (it is understood that he/he is understood to, etc) 64
university (and the university) 111.1
unless 22, 73.1
 unless and if 73.1
until 22, 160.4
 until and by 173.1
up 168.6, 183
us 120.123
used to (past habits) 51
 used to and would 51.3
 used to (be used to + -ing form) 89
usual (for someone + to infinitive) 96.2c, 98
usually 135

- verbs** (see also verbs 1-29)
 verbs not used in the continuous forms
27, 29
 verb + preposition **181, 183**
 verb + object + preposition **182, 183**
 phrasal verbs 185-186
 irregular verbs **190**
very (and *too*) 138.7
- wait (for)** **181**
want
 want no continuous form 27
want to in the passive **60.1**
want + to infinitive 84
want + object + to infinitive 86.2
- warn**
warn + object + to infinitive 79, 80, 86.1
warn someone *about* something 182
- warnings **30.1**
 reporting warnings 79, 80
- was, were* **31**
was/were going to 25
watch (*watch*, *loot* and *see*) **27.4**
- we* **120, 123**
weekly 135.4
weigh (no continuous form) 27
- well-known** (*for*) 178
were, was **31**
were instead of *was* after *I/he/she/it*
 69.3a
were/was going to 25
- wh-questions** 143
what (in questions) **145.1a**
what/how *about?* (suggestions) 50.2c
when **22, 160**
 when and *if* **66**
 when in questions 145.2b
 when in relative clauses 155.2, 157
- where*
 where in questions 145.3a
 where in relative clauses 155.2, 157
whereas 161.4
- whether**
whether in reported questions 78.3
whether in indirect (embedded)
 questions 149.3
- which**
which in questions **145.1c**
which in relative clauses **153.3-4, 154,**
 158, 159
- while**
white (time) 22, 160
while (contrast) **161.4**
while, for, during 172.2
- who**
who in questions **145-1b-c**
who in relative clauses **153-154, 156,**
 158.2
- whole (and all)** **118.3-4**
whom (in relative clauses) 157-158
- whose**
whose in questions 145.2
whose in relative clauses 155.1, 157
- why**
why in questions 145.3c
why in relative clauses 155.2
why don't we? (suggestions) 50.2b
- will** **35**
will (future) 16, 29
will and *going to* **18, 29**
will and the present simple for the
 future 22, 29
will be + -ing (future continuous) 23, 29
will have + past participle (future
 perfect) 24, 29
will (requests) 48.3b
will (offers) 49.1
will (habits) **51.2**
will (promises and threats) 53
will in the passive **60.1**
will in *when* sentences 66
will in *if* sentences 66, 68, 70, 74
 willingness 49.1
wish (and *if only*) 56
wish no continuous form 27
- wish**
wish
wish + past 56.1
wish + would 56.2
wish + past perfect 56.3
wish + to infinitive 84
- with**
with + instrument/material in the
 passive 63.2-3
with (=having) 177.1, 183
without (with *any*) 115.3
- won't** (refusals) 52
won't (uncountable) 107.3, 113
work (without an article) 111.1b
worried (about) 178
would 35
would (requests) 48.3b
would (habits) 51.2-3
would and *used to* 51.3
would in *if* sentences 69, 70, 71, 74
wouldn't (refusals) 52
would you mind? (requests) **48.3c**
would like
would like (requests) 48.3d
would you like/prefer/rather? (offers)
 49.4
would like to in the passive **60.1**
would like and *like* 87.2
would like/love/hate/prefere+ *to*
 infinitive) 87
would rather 57
write (to) 181
wrong (of someone + to infinitive) 96.2b
- yearly* 135.4
yes/no questions 142
yet **8.133.2**
you 120, 123
your 121, 123
yours 121, 123
yourself **122.123**
yourselves 122, 123

Key to exercises

For Information about using contractions eg I'm, she's, they've, see 189.

1A (Possible answers)

- 1 He's reading a newspaper.
- 2 She's **taking** a **photograph**.
- 3 They're watching TV.
- 4 They're playing cards.
- 5 He's doing the washing up.

1B

- 1 Is Sally having, 's (is) washing
- 2 aren't watching
- 3 Are you enjoying, 'm (am) having
- 4 Is Maria doing, 's (is) studying
- 5 're (are) staying
- 6 are rising, is **getting**

2A

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| 1 make | 5 don't come, come |
| 2 don't live, live | 6 works, doesn't work |
| 3 covers | 7 don't go, goes , walks |
| 4 gives | 8 don't write, writes |

2B

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1 Do you listen | 5 Do they watch |
| 2 Does he live | 6 Does she play |
| 3 does she finish | 7 do you earn |
| 4 do you go | 8 Does it snow |

3A

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1 It snows | 5 she's going |
| 2 I'm going | 6 flows |
| 3 I go | 7 she's working |
| 4 He's cooking | |

4A

- | | | |
|------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 grew up | 5 acted | 9 starred |
| 2 studied | 6 saw | 10 became |
| 3 started | 7 liked | 11 caused |
| 4 appeared | 8 offered | |

4B

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1 Did you play | 5 did you watch |
| 2 Did he win | 6 Did you meet |
| 3 did you do | 7 Did you buy |
| 4 Did you stay | 8 did they cost |

4C

- 1 He didn't invent the telephone.
He **invented** the radio.
- 2 He didn't build the Statue of Liberty.
He **built** the Eiffel Tower.
- 3 **She didn't** die in 1990
She **died** in 1962
- 4 They didn't discover **penicillin**.
They **discovered** radium.
- 5 He didn't kill Martin Luther King.
He **killed** John F Kennedy
- 6 She didn't write children's stories.
She **wrote** detective stories.

5A

- 1 I **dropped** my bag when I was running for a bus.
- 2 I **cut** myself when I was shaving.
- 3 My car **broke** down when I was driving to work.
- 4 I **saw** a shark when I was swimming in the sea.
- 5 My clothes got dirty when I was cleaning the attic.
- 6 I **broke** a tooth when I was eating a sandwich.

SB

- 1 were going, stopped
- 2 Were they having, called
- 3 rang, got up, answered
- 4 opened, was standing
- 5 arrived, did you do, reported

5C

- | | | |
|----------------------|--|-----------------|
| 1 | | |
| (i) | | (ii) |
| 1 was getting | | 1 was beginning |
| 2 was turning | | 2 was standing |
| 3 rushed | | 3 opened |
| 4 turned | | 4 turned |
| 5 asked | | 5 asked |

(Hi)

- | | | |
|---------------|--------|-------|
| 1 was sitting | 3 went | 5 put |
| 2 was cutting | 4 went | |

2

- (0) a horror story
(Y) a love story
(iii) a western

6A

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1 've (have) had | 4 's (has) lived |
| 2 've (have) lived | S 's (has) had |
| 3 've (have) known | |

6B

- 1 's (has) never slept
- 2 've (have) **ever stayed**
- 3 **Have you been**
- 4 haven't been
- 5 **has been**
- 6 has changed
- 7 've (have) never seen
- 8 've (have) heard
- 9 Have you **ever** eaten
- 10 haven't tried

6C

- 1 They've done the washing up.
- 2 Sally hasn't cleaned the cooker yet.
- 3 Simon hasn't emptied the rubbish bin yet.
- 4 They've cleaned **the** windows.
- 5 **Sally** has defrosted the fridge.
- 6 Simon hasn't cleaned the floor yet.

7A

- | | | |
|--------|--------|----------------------|
| 1 been | 3 been | 5 been , been |
| 2 gone | 4 gone | |

8A

- 1 Have you **done** your homework yet?
- 2 I haven't worn my new coat **yet**.
- 3 'Is Sally here?' 'No, she's just gone **out**.'
- 4 Have you just spoken to **your** parents?
- 5 It's quite early. Has Jack already gone to **bed**?
Has **jack** gone to bed already?
- 6 I've already cleaned the **windows**. / I've cleaned the windows already.

9A

- 1 've (have) been working
- 2 's (has) been studying

- 3 Have, been waiting
- 4 haven't been living
- 5 has, been driving
- 6 haven't been feeling

9B

- 1 She's been repairing the car.
- 2 They've been playing in the garden.
- 3 He's been putting up some **shelves**.
- 4 They've been painting the kitchen.
- 5 He's been lying on **the** beach.
- 6 She's been chopping onions,

10A

- 1 They've been repairing
- 2 I've broken
- 3 has saved
- 4 Have you lost
- 5 I've **always** worked
- 6 has **been** eating

11A

- | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|
| 1 for | 3 for | 5 for |
| 2 since | 4 since | 6 since |

12A

- | | | |
|---------------|------------|----------|
| 1 I've worked | 4 I moved | 7 I sold |
| 2 I worked | 5 I've had | 8 I came |
| 3 were you | 6 I had | |

12B

- 1 have you **known**, did you first meet
- 2 Has your husband ever had, 's (has) had, had, was
- 3 Have you seen, saw, arrived, went
- 4 didn't have, haven't had

13A

- 1 I 've been cleaning
- 2 He's sitting
- 3 have you been
- 4 Have you known
- 5 I've been learning
- 6 They **live**, They've been

14A

- 1 When he arrived at the station, his train had already left.
- 2 When he arrived at the theatre, the play had already started.
- 3 When he arrived at the post office, it had already closed.
- 4 When he arrived at the furniture **shop**, they had sold the table he wanted.
- 5 When he arrived at his friend's house, his friend had gone out.
- 6 When he arrived at the football stadium, the game had nearly finished.

14B

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 1 rang | 3 had started |
| 2 had disappeared | 4 started |

14C

- 1 had done, found
- 2 didn't laugh, 'd (had) heard
- 3 left, 'd (had) had
- 4 discovered, had taken

15A

- 1 had been studying
- 2 hadn't been waiting
- 3 'd (had) just been talking
- 4 had he been living

15B

- 1 I felt very cold because I had been standing outside **for over** two hours.
- 2 I had been playing tennis so I was feeling hot and sticky.
- 3 The children's hair was wet because they had been swimming in the sea.
- 4 I hadn't been feeling well **for** weeks before I finally went to see the doctor.
- 5 They had been travelling all day so they were very tired.
- 6 They had been driving for about **half an** hour d when they realized they were lost.

16A

- 1 I hope I'll have a job in **10 years'** time.
- 2 Perhaps I'll have a good job.
- 3 I probably won't be very rich.
- 4 I won't look the same as I do now.
- 5 I think I'll be **married**.
- 6 I'll probably have children.

16B

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| 1 I'll lend | 3 I'll put on |
| 2 I'll answer | 4 I won't have |
| | 5 I won't go, I'll wait |

16C

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------|
| 1 'll finish | 6 won't finish |
| 2 won't be | 7 will you be |
| 3 Will you be | 8 MI be |
| 4 'll be | 9 'll meet |
| 5 the meeting will end | 10 MI see |

17A (Possible answers)

- 1 He's going **to** do the washing up.
- 2 They're going to get on the bus.
- 3 She's going to watch TV.
- 4 It's going to land.
- 5 They're going to clean the car.
- 6 He's going to fall off the bicycle.

17B

- 1 are you going to **wear**, Are you going to wear
- 2 are you going to do, 'm (am) going to **decorate**
- 3 isn't going to leave, 's (is) going to stay
- 4 'm (am) going to buy, are you going **to** pay, 'm (am) going to ask

18A

- 1 'm (am) going to live
- 2 MI (**will**) come
- 3 'm (am) going to faint
- 4 MI (will) get
- 5 're (are) going to crash
- 6 I'll (I will) pay

19A

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 'm (am) working- | 5 'm (am) going |
| 2 'm (am) not doing | 6 're (are) meeting |
| 3 'm (am) meeting | 7 are you doing |
| 4 'm (am) seeing | 8 Are you doing |

20A

- 1 It's going to snow later tonight.
- 2 She's going to meet them tomorrow **morning**./ She's meeting them tomorrow morning.

3 **What are** you going to do this afternoon? / What are you doing this afternoon?

- 4 **Be careful!** You're going to break that glass.
- 5 He isn't going to come next **Saturday**./He isn't coming on Saturday.
- 6 Look out! You're going to hurt yourself with **that** knife.
- 7 Are they going to drive to Scotland next **weekend**?/ Are they driving **to** Scotland next weekend?

21A

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 starts , finishes | 3 begins , doesn't end |
| 2 doesn't take off | 4 does the next train leave |

22A

- 1 **see**, MI (will) give
- 2 MI (will) buy, have
- 3 's (**is**), MI (will) go
- 4 MI (will) look after, 're (are)
- 5 won't do, hears
- 6 won't open, push
- 7 MI (will) play, **doesn't rain**
- 8 MI (will) tend, pay

23A

- 1 At **11.00** tomorrow **she'll** be visiting the ABC travel company.
- 2 At 13.30 tomorrow she'll be having lunch with Mary and Ron King.
- 3 At 15.30 tomorrow she'll be visiting Derek **Hall**.
- 4 At **16.30** tomorrow she'll be taking a taxi to the airport.
- 5 At **17.30** tomorrow she'll be flying back to London.

23B

- 1 I'll be going past **the post** office. Shall I post your letter?
- 2 **Will** you be **speaking** to Robert? Can you give him a message?
- 3 I won't be using my car tonight. Would you like to borrow it?
- 4 We'll be getting some concert tickets. Shall we get one for you?
- 5 When will you be visiting Sue again? Can you give her something?
- 6 Will you be driving into town today? Could I have a lift?

24A

- 1 will have become
- 2 will have taken over
- 3 will have run out
- 4 **Will scientists** have found
- 5 will, have changed
- 6 Will we have found

25A

- 1 I was going to take a taxi home last **night**, but I didn't have enough money, so I had to walk.
- 2 We were going to write to them when we were on holiday, but we changed our minds and phoned them **instead**.
- 3 She was going to drive to Scotland last weekend, but her car broke down, so she went by train.
- 4 We **were** going to play tennis yesterday afternoon, but it rained all afternoon, so we stayed at home.
- 5 She was going to watch the film on TV **last** night, but she had seen it before, so she went to bed early.
- 6 I was going to change my job last year, but my boss offered me more money, so I decided to stay.

26A

- 1 's (is) always leaving
- 2 was always **hitting**
- 3 's (is) always borrowing
- 4 'm (am) always forgetting
- 5 was always breaking down
- 6 're (are) always winning

27A

- 1 are you thinking
- 2 do you think
- 3 has Simon known
- 4 does this **word** mean
- 5 **Did** you hear
- 6 You **aren't** watching
- 7 I didn't remember
- 8 Do you like
- 9 She has always wanted
- 10 I had never seen

28A

- (0)
- | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 1 works | 3 is studying | 5 arrived |
| 2 has been | 4 has been | 6 has been |

(ii)

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1 heard | 7 ran |
| 2 got | 8 escaped |
| 3 was still sleeping | 9 had |
| 4 went | 10 heard |
| 5 were trying | 11 had seen |
| 6 switched on | 12 had phoned |

28B

(i)

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1 are you cooking | 5 It met |
| 2 I'm making | 6 we went |
| 3 I've just had | 7 It looks |
| 4 did you have | 8 I've ever tasted |

(ii)

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1 Do you like | 4 I bought |
| 2 have you had | 5 did it cost |
| 3 I've only had | 6 I'd been saving |

(iii)

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 It's been hurting | 4 Do you think |
| 2 I fell | 5 I've broken |
| 3 I was cleaning | 6 haven't broken |

29A

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 It's going to rain | 6 is |
| 2 Are you doing | 7 I'm going to repair |
| 3 I arrive | 8 I'll bring |
| 4 I'm going to be | 9 we'll be lying |
| 5 I'll have | 10 They'll have visited |

30A

- 1 Don't touch that! It's hot.
- 2 Please take a seal, Mr Woods.
- 3 Put this in the fridge, could you?
- 4 Pass me the spanner.
- 5 Do **turn** that music down. Andrew!

30B

- 1 Let's go to the cinema.
- 2 Let's take a taxi.
- 3 Let's light a fire.
- 4 Let's buy her a present.
- 5 Let's stay in this evening.

31A

- (i)
 1 'm (am) 4 's (is) 7 Is
 2 are 5 's (is) 8 isn't
 3 'm (am) not 6 's (is)

- (ii)
 1 Am 4 's (is) 7 'm (am) not
 2 are 5 am 8 'm (am)
 3 's (is) 6 Are

- (Hi)
 1 are 5 Is 9 Is
 2 're (are) 6 's (is) 10 isn't
 3 Are 7 Are
 4 are 8 are

31B

- 1 was 6 were 11 was
 2 were 7 were 12 was
 3 was 8 were 13 was
 4 Were 9 Were
 5 were 10 was

32A

- 1 There's (There is)
 2 were there
 3 **there'll** be (there will be)
 4 Is there
 5 There were, there are
 6 There's been (There has been)

32B

- 1 There's (There is), It's (It is)
 2 There are. They're (They are)
 3 Is there, it's (it is)
 4 There's (There is), is it. It's (It is)
 5 There's (There is), There's (There is)

33A

- 1 Have we got, haven't, 've (have) got
 2 has got, had
 3 Have you got
 4 Have we got. Have you got, has got
 5 Has your sister got, has
 6 didn't have

34A

- 1 haven't had a cigarette
 2 have a took
 3 had a game of tennis
 4 has a swim
 5 Did you have a good time?
 6 has just had a baby
 7 have a rest
 8 have a shave

36A

- 1 could 3 could 5 can
 2 can 4 been able to 6 be able to

36B

- 1 were able to
 2 **could/was** able to
 3 was able to
 4 **Could/Were** you able to, **couldn't/wasn't** able to
 5 **could/was** able to

36C

- 1 Robert could have gone
 2 He could have passed
 3 he could have been
 4 He could have started
 5 He could have emigrated

37A

- 1 May I sit here?
 2 Can I **borrow** your bike for half an **hour**?
 3 Can I try **this** on?
 4 Do you think I could close the window?
 5 May I come in?

37B

- 1 You can't feed the **animals**./You aren't allowed to feed the animals.
 2 You can't smoke in this **room**./You aren't allowed to smoke in this **room**.
 3 You can **park** in this **street**./You're allowed to park in this street.
 4 You can't walk on the **grass**./You aren't allowed to walk on the grass.
 5 You can't turn **left**./You aren't allowed to turn left.

37C

- 1 was allowed to
 2 **could/were** allowed to
 3 were allowed to
 4 **could/was** allowed to

38A

- (i)
 1 must stay 3 must take
 2 must drink 4 must continue

(ii)

- 1 have to take 3 have to stay
 2 have to continue 4 have to drink

38B

- 1 **must/have** to 4 had to
 2 have to 5 has had to
 3 **must/have** to 6 having to

39A

- 1 mustn't 4 needn't
 2 **don't** have to 5 don't need to
 3 mustn't 6 haven't got to

40A

- 1 must 4 needn't
 2 **can't/mustn't** 5 must
 3 can 6 needn't

40B

- 1 You have to be quiet.
 2 You aren't allowed to overtake.
 3 You don't have to be a member to get in.
 4 You are allowed to park here.
 5 You aren't allowed to swim here.
 6 You aren't allowed to walk here.

41A

- 1 didn't need to get up 4 needn't have paid
 2 didn't need to wear 5 didn't need to pay
 3 needn't **have** worried 6 needn't have bought

42A

- 1 You **should/ought** to report it to the credit **card** company immediately.
 2 Perhaps you **should/ought** to buy a new alarm clock!
 3 Perhaps you **should/ought** to look for another job.
 4 Perhaps you **should/ought** to take some aspirin.
 5 Don't you think you **should/ought** to apologize to them?
 6 I think you **should/ought** to sell it.

42B

- 1 You **shouldn't/oughtn't** to work so hard. You **should/ought** to relax more.
 2 You **should/ought** to have **bought/buy** an alarm clock.
 3 She **shouldn't/oughtn't** to have gone to work yesterday. She **should/ought** to have stayed in bed.
 4 He **shouldn't/oughtn't** to have walked into the **road** without looking. He **should/ought** to have looked first.

42C

- 1 'd (had) better be
 2 'd (had) better park
 3 'd (had) **better** slay
 4 'd (had) better hurry
 5 'd (had) better not leave
 6 'd (had) better put out

42D

- 1 **aren't/ 're** not (are not) supposed to **open**
 2 was supposed to go
 3 **aren't/ 're** not (are not) supposed to park
 4 were supposed to arrive
 5 is supposed to have

42E

- 1 shall I invite 3 Shall I tell
 2 shall I put 4 shall I paint

43A

- 1 You could be right.
 2 She might win the race.
 3 She may have forgotten about the meeting.
 4 They **might** have been asleep.
 5 He may not know the address.
 6 They could have left early.
 7 He might not be coming.
 8 I may see you tomorrow.
 9 They could be going on holiday.
 10 She may not have caught the bus.

44A

- 1 can live 3 could cross 5 could grow
 2 can reach 4 can survive 6 can make

45A

- 1 should receive/ought to receive
 2 should have **won/ought** to have won
 3 should sell/ought to sell
 4 should have **passed/ought** to have passed
 5 shouldn't **take/oughtn't** to take
 6 should have **arrived/ought** to have arrived

46A

- 1 They can't be Greek. They're speaking Italian.
 2 He must be ill. He's got a high temperature.
 3 The heating can't be on. It's very cold in here.
 4 They must be asleep. Their bedroom lights are off.
 5 She must be happy. She's just passed her driving test.
 6 He can't be a doctor. He's too young.

46C

- 1 Palmer **can't/couldn't** have stayed in bed all morning yesterday. Someone saw him in town at 10.00 yesterday morning.
 2 He **can't/couldn't** have had lunch at Luigi's restaurant. Luigi's restaurant was closed all day yesterday.

- 3 He **can't/couldn't** have gone **for** a drive in his **car** yesterday afternoon. His car was outside his flat all yesterday afternoon.
 4 He **can't/couldn't** have stayed at home last night. Someone phoned his flat at 9.00 last night and there was no reply.
 5 He must have been inside the Central **Art** Gallery. His fingerprints were found in the gallery.

47A

| | | |
|-----|----------------|-------------------|
| YES | definitely | must |
| ↓ | probably | should; ought to |
| | possibly | may; might; could |
| NO | definitely not | can't |

47B

- 1 She might phone later.
- 2 I should be at home by 6 o'clock.
- 3 They could have gone home.
- 4 He can't be telling the truth.
- 5 You must have heard the news.
- 6 I may not go out this evening.
- 7 She can't have seen us.
- 8 The bus must have left.
- 9 He might not have applied for the job.
- 10 She ought to be here soon.

48A

- 1 Could you tell me where the hospital is, please?
- 2 May I have the menu, please?
- 3 **Will** you switch on the TV for me, please?
- 4 Would you answer the phone, please?
- 5 Would you mind changing places with me?
- 6 Can you pass me the cloth, please.

49A

- 1 I'll help you do the washing up.
- 2 Could I carry some bags for you?
- 3 **Shall** I switch **off** the light?
- 4 I can lend you an umbrella if you like.
- 5 Can I take your coat?
- 6 Would you like me to phone for the doctor?

50A

- | | | |
|-------------|----------------|---------|
| 1 How about | 3 shall we | 5 could |
| 2 Let's | 4 Why don't we | 6 Let's |

51A

- 1 used to be, **isn't/vis** not
- 2 never goes, used to go
- 3 used to be, is
- 4 used to have, doesn't have
- 5 is, used to be
- 6 Did you use to like, **find**

51B

- 1 'll (will) always lend
- 2 'd (would) never throw
- 3 'll (will) carry on
- 4 'd (would) often spend
- 5 'will go

51C

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 used to/would | 4 used to/Would |
| 2 used to | 5 used to |
| 3 used to/would | 6 used to |

52A

- 1 the window wouldn't open
- 2 she won't marry
- 3 it wouldn't work
- 4 she **won't** listen
- 5 he won't help
- 6 my parents wouldn't let

53A

- 1 'll (will) pay, a promise
- 2 'll (will) leave, a threat
- 3 **won't** tell, a promise
- 4 won't do, a promise
- 5 'll (will) throw, a threat
- 6 won't speak, a threat

54A

- 1 We may as well walk to the station.
- 2 You might as **well** cancel the hotel bookings.
- 3 We might as **well** stay at home today.
- 4 **I** might as well clear the table.
- 5 **i** might as well apply for the job.

55A

- 1 She suggested (that) I should apply for the job.
- 2 The doctor recommended (that) he should stay in bed for a few days.
- 3 He insisted (that) I should help him.
- 4 They suggested (that) we should go to the cinema.
- 5 I agreed (that) I should pay for the damage.
- 6 My friend recommended (that) we should try the new Greek restaurant.

55B

- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1 should give up | 3 should come |
| 2 should pass | 4 should feel |

56A

- 1 I didn't get embarrassed so quickly
- 2 **I weren't/wasn't** so serious
- 3 I didn't find it so difficult to make friends
- 4 I were/was good-looking
- 5 my ears weren't so big

56B

- 1 would do their homework on time
- 2 would clean the bath after they've used it
- 3 wouldn't pick the flowers
- 4 would take their litter home
- 5 would keep together on a tour

56C

- 1 She wishes she hadn't stayed **in** the sun so long.
- 2 He wishes he'd (he had) eaten less.
- 3 He wishes he'd (he had) driven more carefully.
- 4 She wishes she hadn't tried to lift a heavy table on **her own**.

57A

- 1 'd (would) rather stay
- 2 would you rather go
- 3 'd (would) rather listen
- 4 would you rather do
- 5 'd (would) rather not play

57B

- 1 I'd rather you didn't open
- 2 I'd rather you phoned
- 3 I'd rather you didn't turn on
- 4 I'd rather you came

58A (Possible answers)

- 1 it's time you paid it?
- 2 It's time I started studying for the exam.
- 3 it's time you phoned Mike?
- 4 It's time I took my car to the garage.

59A

- 1 The road is being repaired.
- 2 The fence is being painted.

- 3 The cows are being milked.
- 4 The windows **are** being cleaned.
- 5 The cats are being fed.
- 6 The money is being counted.

59B

- 1 The windows has been repaired.
- 2 The carpet has been cleaned.
- 3 The walls have been **painted/repaired**.
- 4 The light has been repaired.
- 5 Some posters have been put up.
- 6 The old fireplace has been taken out.

59C

(0)

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1 is played | 4 are spoken |
| 2 are exported | 5 are destroyed |
| 3 is used | |

(ii)

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1 was played | 4 was discovered |
| 2 was, invented | 5 was painted |
| 3 were built | |

(iii)

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 had been stolen | 4 hadn't been invited |
| 2 was being repaired | 5 was being interviewed |
| 3 had been sold | |

59D

- 1 created
- 2 was discussed
- 3 won, was assassinated
- 4 arrived, was interviewed
- 5 have been given, was announced

60A

- 1 The room will be cleaned.
- 2 The tree had to be cut down.
- 3 Sally should be **told** what happened.
- 4 A new hospital is going to be built.
- 5 The problem can be solved.
- 6 The job has to be finished.
- 7 The man may be sent to prison.
- 8 Something must be done now.

60B

- 1 have been delayed
- 2 have been thrown away
- 3 have been sold
- 4 have been killed
- 5 have been stolen

60C

- 1 I don't like being stared at.
- 2 I can't stand being told what to do.
- 3 I don't like being interrupted.
- 4 I dislike being joked about.
- 5 I enjoy being praised.

61A

- | | |
|--------------|---------------------|
| 1 got stuck | 4 didn't get caught |
| 2 got bitten | 5 got arrested |
| 3 got hit | 6 got sentenced |

62A

- 1 Sarah was shown the photographs.
- 2 Normally, I am paid my salary every month.
- 3 I think that we have been sent the wrong tickets.
- 4 I hope that Sally **will** be given the message.
- 5 I wasn't asked for my address.
- 6 I thought that you had been told about the meeting.

63A

- 1 was discovered by
- 2 was directed by
- 3 was composed and sung by
- 4 was invented by
- 5 was painted by

63B

- | | | |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1 with | 4 by | 7 by |
| 2 by | 5 with | 8 with |
| 3 with | 6 by | |

64A

- 1 It is said that the monument is over 2000 years old.
The monument is said to be over 2000 years old.
- 2 It is expected that the president will resign.
The president is expected to resign.
- 3 It is thought that the **fire started** at about 8 o'clock.
The **fire** is thought to have started at about 8 o'clock.
- 4 It was reported that seven people had been injured in the fire.
Seven people were reported to have been injured in the **fire**.

64B

- 1 The new **film** is supposed to be very violent.
- 2 Those cars are supposed to be rather unreliable.
- 3 He is supposed to have moved to New York last year.
- 4 The new restaurant is supposed to be very expensive.
- 5 The concert is supposed to have been very good.

65A

- 1 They're having their flat decorated.
- 2 He's having a suit made.
- 3 She's having her hair done.
- 4 He's having a tooth taken out.
- 5 **She's** having her windows cleaned.
- 6 They're having a photograph taken.

65B

- 1 have these shoes repaired
- 2 having an extension built
- 3 have my glasses mended
- 4 have your hair done
- 5 had four new tyres fitted
- 6 had my suit dry-cleaned

65C

- 1 had his flat burgled
- 2 had the roof of their house damaged
- 3 had the radio stolen
- 4 had his nose broken

66A

- | | | |
|-------------|--------|--------|
| 1 if | 3 when | 5 when |
| 2 when | 4 if | 6 if |
| | | 7 if |

68A

- 1 ran out, **'ll** (will) need
- 2 will **increase**, use
- 3 increases, will die
- 4 will change, die
- 5 try, **'ll** (will) be
- 6 don't control, **'ll** (will) be

68B

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1 can lend | 4 should need |
| 2 have finished | 5 should phone |
| 3 may go | 6 are feeling |

69A

- 1 knew, would tell
- 2 would move, would call
- 3 would, do, knew
- 4 knew, wouldn't **try**
- 5 would ran, saw

70A

- 1 I'd give up work if I were a millionaire.
- 2 We'll go for a picnic if it's a nice day tomorrow.
- 3 If I took more exercise, I wouldn't be so unfit.
- 4 **I'll** watch TV tonight if I don't go out.
- 5 I'd be better-looking if I didn't have such a big nose.
- 6 If people weren't so greedy, the world would be a better place.
- 7 If I can get a ticket, I'll go to the concert next week.

71A

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1 hadn't been | 3 had had |
| 2 would have enjoyed | 4 wouldn't have had |

71B

- 1 If she hadn't been ill, she would have gone to work.
- 2 If it hadn't rained **all** morning, we would have gone out.
- 3 If she'd had enough money, she could have bought the shoes.
- 4 If I'd been hungry, I would have had breakfast.
- 5 If he hadn't been tired, he wouldn't have made a mistake.
- 6 If we'd had a map, we wouldn't have got lost.

72A

- 1 If I get a headache, I usually take some aspirin.
- 2 I feel terrible if I don't get 8 hours' sleep a night.
- 3 **If** I drink too much coffee, it makes me feel nervous.
- 4 If flowers don't get any water, they die.
- 5 You put on weight if you don't get enough exercise.

73A

- 1 Unless you wear your coat, **you'll** be **cold**.
- 2 I'll phone you unless you phone me first.
- 3 He won't receive the letter tomorrow unless you post it before 1 o'clock today.
- 4 I won't go to school tomorrow unless I feel **better**.
- 5 I can't write to you unless you give me your address.
- 6 Your cough won't get better unless you stop smoking.

73B

- | | | |
|-------------|----------|--------------|
| 1 Provided | 3 unless | 5 as long as |
| 2 providing | 4 Unless | |

73C

- 1 Stop making that noise or **I'll** hit you.
- 2 Take this umbrella and you won't get wet.
- 3 Drive more carefully **or** else you'll have an accident.
- 4 Help me and I'll help you.

73D

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1 should I need | 3 should I change |
| 2 should he fail | 4 should she miss |

73E

- 1 **Suppose/Supposing** I moved to Scotland, would you come and visit me?

- 2 **Suppose/Supposing** someone finds my wallet, do you think they will take it to the police?
- 3 **Suppose/Supposing** they had stayed at our house, where would they have slept?
- 4 **Suppose/Supposing** they had offered you the job, would you have taken it?
- 5 **Suppose/Supposing** you had won the competition, what would the prize have been?

74A

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 'd (would) wear | 8 makes |
| 2 wouldn't have had | 9 weren't/wasn't |
| 3 had | 10 wouldn't have left |
| 4 wait | 11 gets |
| 5 'd (had) known | 12 'll catch |
| 6 would like | 13 'd (had) asked |
| 7 'll speak | 14 would you do |
| | 15 'm not |

76A

- | | | |
|-----------|--------|--------|
| 1 tell | 3 said | 5 tell |
| 2 telling | 4 said | 6 say |

77A

- 1 I told her (that) I couldn't swim very well.
- 2 The secretary told me (that) Mr Mason had gone out.
- 3 Andrew said (that) he didn't want to go swimming.
- 4 We said (that) we were leaving on Friday.
- 5 They said (that) they had had lunch in Luigi's restaurant/They said (that) they had lunch in Luigi's restaurant.
- 6 Sarah told Simon (that) she would phone him later.

77B

- 1 (that) there was nothing wrong with my
- 2 don't need to wear
- 3 had **driven/drove** very well
- 4 was making
- 5 would like a big family
- 6 wanted at least **five**
- 7 would get a pay rise later in the year
- 8 had done the shopping
- 9 would be home at about

78A

- 1 I asked the mechanic if it would take long to repair the car.
- 2 I asked the policeman if I could park my car in West Street.
- 3 I asked the cinema attendant what time the **film** finished.
- 4 I asked the hotel receptionist if **he/she/they** had a double room.
- 5 I asked the doctor how many times a day I should take the medicine.
- 6 I asked the waiter what the soup of the day was.

78B

- 1 what I was doing there
- 2 why I was carrying a camera
- 3 if I had seen the signs warning people not to enter the area
- 4 if I had been taking photos of the army base
- 5 what my name was
- 6 if he could see some proof of my identity

79A

- 1 I offered to do the washing up.
- 2 She threatened to phone the police.
- 3 The doctor advised my brother to stop smoking.
- 4 He asked me to change the light bulb for him.
- 5 She told me not to be stupid.

- 6 He invited her to come to his party.
7 I promised not to tell anyone.
8 She warned them not to leave the door unlocked.

80A

- 1 I told them (that) I couldn't type.
2 They asked me if I was English.
3 I asked her where she was going.
4 They said (that) they were going into town.
5 He told me (that) he didn't have any **money**.
He told me (that) he hadn't got any money.
6 He asked her if she could speak more slowly.
He asked **her** to speak more slowly.
7 He warned me not to touch the wire.
8 He told her (that) he had been on holiday in **July**.
He told her (that) he was on holiday in July.
9 They asked him what time he had got **home**.
They asked him what time he got home.
10 She asked me if I could do **her** a favour.
She asked me to do her a favour.
11 We told them (that) we wouldn't be home late.
12 **I** said (that) I had posted the letters.
13 He **said** (that) his sister didn't know.
14 She said (that) her parents had gone to bed.
15 She **told** him (that) he should go to the **doctor**.
She told him to go to the doctor.
16 They promised (that) they would do the **dishes**.
They promised to do the dishes.
17 I asked **her** where she worked.
18 She asked him if he could phone the doctor for **her**.
She asked him to phone the doctor for her.
19 He **told** his boss (that) he had passed his driving test in **1986**.
He told his boss (that) he passed his driving test in 1986.
20 I said (that) I didn't know what to do.

83A

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 1 reading | 6 doing |
| 2 swimming | 7 going |
| 3 having | 8 not making |
| 4 playing | 9 borrowing |
| 5 robbing | 10 being |

84A

- | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1 to be | 5 to pay | 9 to be |
| 2 to test-drive | 6 to accept | 10 to accept |
| 3 to buy | 7 to get | 11 to sell |
| 4 not to like | 8 to try | 12 to give |

85A

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| 1 what to wear | 4 how to make |
| 2 how to spell | 5 what to do |
| 3 whether to stay | |

86A

- 1 ... I expected him to pass easily.
2 ... but her parents told her to go to bed at 9 o'clock.
3 ... He invited her to go to a party on Saturday.
4 ... but a friend of mine persuaded me to change **my mind**.
5 ... **I** don't want her to know.
6 ... which forced the pilot to land.
7 ... my mother **warned** me not to talk to strangers.
8 If you hadn't reminded me to lock the **door** ...

86B

- 1 **Andrew** to close the door
2 her to help me
3 us to go to a party
4 Sally not to be late home
5 the woman to get out of her car
6 me not to be late for work again

86C

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 talking | 3 to see | 5 to do |
| 2 to have | 4 driving | i telling |

87A

- 1 to listen
2 **cooking/to** cook
3 windsurfing, sailing
4 to walk, go
5 **going/to** go
A to visit
7 **having to/to** have to
8 **playing/to** play
9 to take (see 87.2a)
10 to play (see 87.4a)

88A

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| 1 saying | 3 to buy |
| 2 visiting | 4 to turn off |

88B

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------|
| 1 to come | 3 to be |
| 2 drinking, holding | 4 putting |

88C

- | | |
|-----------|----------------|
| 1 making | 3 to ask |
| 2 to tell | 4 not learning |

89A

- | | |
|--------------|--------------------------|
| 1 to working | 4 to living |
| 2 to live | 5 to staying |
| 3 to eating | 6 to work, to getting up |

90A

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 renewing/to be renewed | 4 feeding/to be fed |
| 2 to practise | 5 to buy |
| 3 adjusting/to be adjusted | 6 to ask |

91A

- | | | |
|--------|-----------------|-------------|
| 1 wear | 4 sit | 7 hurry |
| 2 lend | 5 tell, promise | 8 type, use |
| 3 cry | i eat, wait | |

91B

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1 let me go | 3 let him have |
| 2 makes me feel | 4 make him understand |

92A

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 to seeing | 5 for being |
| 2 in learning | 6 of hearing |
| 3 After having | 7 forgiving |
| 4 to eating | 8 at painting, drawing |

93A

- 1 (i) you borrowing
(ii) your borrowing
2 (i) me switching on
(ii) my switching on
3 (i) us staying
(ii) our staying
4 (i) them getting
(ii) their getting
5 (i) her going
(ii) her going
6 (i) Sue forgetting
(ii) Sue's forgetting

94A

- 1 Babysitting is a big responsibility, especially with very young children.
2 Swimming is a very good way of keeping fit.

- 3 Watching late night horror films can give you nightmares,
4 Living on your own is quite **difficult** if you are used to being with a lot of people.
5 Reading English is much easier than speaking **it**.
6 Smoking can cause lung cancer.

94B

- 1 It is very strange to see yourself on video.
2 It **isn't** necessary to have your car serviced every month.
3 It can be dangerous to leave medicine lying around.
4 It doesn't have to be expensive to eat well.
5 It is difficult for old people to live on a pension.

95A

- 1 I went to the chemist's to buy some medicine.
2 I went to the post office to post some letters.
3 I went to the cinema to see a **film**.
4 I went to the hairdresser's to have a haircut.
5 I went to the car rental agency to hire a **car**.
6 I went to the park to play tennis.

95B

- 1 (i) He drank lots of black coffee in order to keep **awake**.
(ii) He drank lots of black coffee so as to keep awake.
2 (i) I often write things down in order not to forget them.
(ii) I often write things down so as not to **forget** them.
3 (i) She took an umbrella in order not to get **wet**.
(ii) She took an umbrella so as not to get **wet**.
4 (i) We'll use the computer in order to save time.
(ii) We'll use the computer so as to save **time**.
5 (i) I want to pass the exams in order to get a better job.
(ii) I want to pass the exams so as to get a better **job**.
6 (i) We turned down the music in order not to disturb the **neighbours**.
(ii) We turned down the music so as **not** to disturb the neighbours.

96A

- | | | |
|-------------|------------|------------|
| 1 to unlock | 3 to write | 5 to wear |
| 2 to tell | 4 to say | 6 to catch |

96B

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 easy to use | 4 interesting to plan |
| 2 safe to go | 5 impossible to finish |
| 3 pleased to hear | |

96C

- 1 It was nice of her to send me a birthday card.
2 It was wrong of him to open your letter.
3 It was clever of you to find the answer.
4 It was careless of me to leave my **wallet** at home.
5 It was silly of him to throw the ticket away.
6 It was good of you to do my shopping for me.

96D

- 1 It's unnecessary for you to pay me back the money.
2 It's essential for us to leave immediately.
3 It's important for everyone to try to keep calm.
4 It's unusual for him to complain.

97A

- | | | |
|------------|---------|-------------|
| 1 arguing | 3 break | 5 post |
| 2 building | 4 climb | 6 repairing |

98A

- 1 **working/to** work
- 2 to come
- 3 **move/to** move
- 4 to see, get
- 5 making, to sleep
- 6 to drink
- 7 try, driving
- 8 to think, making
- 9 to leave, to catch
- 10 to be
- 11 to work
- 12 skiing, ice-skating
- 13 walking
- 14 to be
- 15 to explain
- 16 not to walk
- 17 meeting
- 18 to make, show, to use
- 19 not doing
- 20 seeing
- 21 forget, to phone
- 22 empty
- 23 Eating
- 24 not to go
- 25 working, to **have**, to eat

98B

- | | |
|--------------|------------------------|
| 1 to lend | 6 to switch off |
| 2 travelling | 7 sunbathing |
| 3 repairing | 8 to fall |
| 4 shopping | 9 going |
| 5 opening | 10 to have |

99A

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1 interested | 4 worried | 7 frightened |
| 2 shocked | 5 surprising | |
| 3 amusing | 6 boring | |

99B

- | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1 embarrassing | 4 relaxing | 7 frightened |
| 2 depressing | 5 interesting | |
| 3 interested | 6 annoyed | |

100A

- 1 Doris is the girl reading the **book**./ The girl reading the book is Doris.
- 2 Jim is the boy combing his **hair**./ The boy combing his hair is Jim.
- 3 Martha is the girl writing **something**./ The girl writing something is Martha.
- 4 Diana is the **girl** listening to the **Walkman**./ The girl listening to the Walkman is Diana.
- 5 Arthur is the boy eating the **ice-cream**./ The boy eating the ice-cream is Arthur.

100B

- 1 He fell off a ladder changing a light bulb.
- 2 He burnt himself cooking his dinner.
- 3 He ran out of petrol driving to **work**.
- 4 He lost his keys getting out of his car.
- 5 He broke a cup doing the washing-up.

100C

- 1 The woman was driving along listening to her car radio.
- 2 **I** arrived at the examination hall feeling very nervous.
- 3 He came into the **room** carrying a suitcase.
- 4 They were walking down the street holding hands.

100D

- 1 Having typed the letters, he put them **in** envelopes.

- 2 Having done all the housework, I went out for a walk.
- 3 Having got out of bed, he had a shower.
- 4 Having locked all the doors, she went to bed.

100E

- 1 Being a **little deaf**, she wears a hearing-aid.
- 2 Not liking classical music, I didn't go to the concert.
- 3 Being rich, she can afford expensive holidays.
- 4 Having finished the book, **I** decided to take it back to the library.
- 5 **Having** gone to bed so late the night **before**, they felt quite tired the next morning.

101A

- 1 children, girls, boys
- 2 restaurants, theatres, cinemas, discos
- 3 teeth
- 4 plates, knives, forks
- 5 countries, days
- 6 cats, mice
- 7 people
- 8 shoes, feet
- 9 **eggs**, tomatoes, potatoes
- 10 leaves, trees

102A

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 is | 5 was |
| 2 have, them | 6 Are these, they are |
| 3 isn't | 7 isn't, is it |
| 4 live/lives | 8 is , It needs |

103A

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1 alarm clock | 6 hole punch |
| 2 T-shirts | 7 lawn mower |
| 3 crossroads | 8 corkscrew |
| 4 clothes-hangers | 9 screwdriver |
| 5 bottle opener | 10 track-suit |

104A

- 1 Gloria is Chris and Linda's mother.
- 2 Linda is Chris's sister.
- 3 George is Chris and Linda's father.
- 4 **Chris is George and Gloria's son**.
- 5 Charles is Ken's father-in-law.
- 6 Daisy is Linda and Chris's grandmother.
- 7 Kate is Chris and **Linda's** aunt.
- 8 Sally, Simon and Andrew are Chris and Linda's cousins.

104B

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1 's | 3 's | 5 's |
| 2 's | 4 's | 6 's |

105A

- 1 the end of the **film**
- 2 Sarah's party
- 3 the top floor of the house
- 4 the back of my car
- 5 a friend of the woman who works in the post office
- 6 the end of this road
- 7 the girls' parents
- 8 the manager of the Black Cat Club

106A

- 1 Robert visited a relative of his.
- 2 A neighbour of ours is going to babysit for us.
- 3 Sally is going on holiday with some friends of hers.
- 4 Simon has borrowed some records of Sarah's.
- 5 Two colleagues of mine are ill at the moment.

107A

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|
| (0 | | | | |
| 1 U | 3 C | 5 U | 7 U | 9 C |
| 2 U | 4 C | 6 C | 8 C | 10 U |

(ii)

Some cheese, a **banana**, some wine, some **bread**, an egg, some tomatoes, some water, an orange, some rice, some carrots, some apples, some meat.

107B

- | | |
|--------------|----------------------|
| 1 hair | 5 a paper |
| 2 journey | 6 is, traffic |
| 3 advice | 7 job, isn't, work |
| 4 some bread | 8 Is, accommodation |

108A

A
clock, university, sandwich, dog, game, house, hospital, **school**

B

orange, envelope, aunt, old car, **hour**, **onion**, **umbrella**, examination, ice-cream

108B

- | | |
|----------------|---------|
| 1a | 6 a |
| 2 an, a | 7 a |
| 3 | 8 a, an |
| 4 | 9 |
| 5 a | 10, a |

108C

- | | | |
|------------|------------|-------|
| 1 the, the | 4 the, the | 7 the |
| 2 a, an | 5 a, the | 8 an |
| 3 the | 6 the | |

109A

- | | |
|------------|------------------------|
| 1 | 5, , , |
| 2 the | 6 the, the, the |
| 3 | 7 |
| 4 the, the | 8 |

109B

- 1 A florist sells flowers.
- 2 A child needs love.
- 3 A corkscrew takes corks out of bottles.
- 4 A large car is expensive to run.
- 5 A teetotaler doesn't drink alcohol.

110A

- | | | |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1 The swan | 3 the country | 5 the piano |
| 2 the radio | 4 The tulip | 6 the sea |

110B

- | | |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1 the dead | 3 the blind |
| 2 the unemployed | 4 the sick |

110C

- 1 the British
- 2 the Australians
- 3 the Spanish (or 'the Spaniards')
- 4 the French
- 5 the Greeks

111A

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1 | 6 |
| 2 the | 7 the |
| 3 | 8 |
| 4 the | 9 the |
| 5 | 10 |

112A

- 1 Canberra
- 2 China
- 3 Mexico City
- 4 the Sahara
- 5 California

- 6 Lake Superior
- 7 the Pacific
- 8 Mount Everest
- 9 the Alps

112B

- 1 —, —, —, the
- 2 —, the, —, —
- 3 — —, —, the, the

113A

- 1 The, the, the
- 2 —, —, —
- 3 The, the, a
- 4 a, —, a
- 5 the
- 6 the
- 7 —
- 8 —, —, —
- 9 the, 20 —
- 10 —
- 11 the
- 12 the
- 13 a, The, a, the, an
- 14 —, —, —
- 15 The
- 16 a, a, The, a, the, an
- 17 —, the, —
- 18 —
- 19 The, the
- 20 —
- 21 —
- 22 the, the

114A

- 1 all
- 2 each
- 3 some of, all of
- 4 any, any
- 5 Most
- 6 Neither of
- 7 Neither of
- 8 much, a lot
- 9 A few of, many
- 10 many
- 11 every one of
- 12 most of
- 13 every
- 14 each
- 15 either of
- 16 half of
- 17 each one

115A

- 1 some
- 2 some
- 3 some (see 115.5), any
- 4 some (see 115.5)
- 5 any, some (see 115.5)
- 6 some/any
- 7 any
- 8 some
- 9 Some
- 10 some/any

116A

- 1 a few
- 2 a little
- 3 a lot of
- 4 a lot of
- 5 a little
- 6 many/a lot of/a few
- 7 much
- 8 much, many, much/a lot of

116B

- 1 little
- 2 few
- 3 a few
- 4 few, little
- 5 a little, a little
- 6 little
- 7 a few
- 8 little

117A

- 1 None
- 2 no
- 3 no
- 4 no
- 5 None
- 6 none
- 7 none

118A

- 1 every
- 2 Everybody
- 3 All
- 4 everything
- 5 all/everything
- 6 everybody
- 7 all
- 8 every
- 9 everything
- 10 all/everything

118B

- 1 All the/The whole
- 2 all the
- 3 all/the whole
- 4 all the

118C

- 1 every
- 2 all
- 3 every
- 4 all

119A

- 1 neither of
- 2 both
- 3 either
- 4 either of
- 5 Neither
- 6 both/both of

119B

- 1 eat now or wait until later
- 2 read Arabic nor write it
- 3 nor Kate knew the address
- 4 his sister or his brother
- 5 and Sarah passed the exam easily
- 6 very comfortable nor very interesting
- 7 larger than my old flat and closer to my office

120A

- 1 her
- 2 me, he, I
- 3 Me
- 4 I, him, He
- 5 They, me, them

120B

- 1 We, us
- 2 them, they
- 3 It
- 4 I, it
- 5 It
- 6 They, they
- 7 You, you
- 8 they
- 9 it
- 10 she, I

121A

- 1 their, ours
- 2 My, hers
- 3 your, yours
- 4 her, her, theirs
- 5 Our, theirs, ours

121B

- 1 her own
- 2 your own
- 3 your own
- 4 their own
- 5 my own
- 6 his own

122A

- 1 themselves
- 2 itself
- 3 herself
- 4 myself
- 5 himself
- 6 yourselves
- 7 ourselves

122B

- 1 by myself
- 2 by herself
- 3 by yourself
- 4 by themselves

122C

- 1 —
- 2 myself
- 3 —
- 4 myself
- 5 —
- 6 myself
- 7 —
- 8 —

122D

- 1 myself
- 2 ourselves
- 3 yourself
- 4 themselves
- 5 himself

122E

- 1 each other
- 2 each other
- 3 ourselves
- 4 themselves
- 5 each other
- 6 themselves

123A

| PERSONAL PRONOUN | | POSSESSIVE | | REFLEXIVE |
|------------------|--------|------------|---------|------------|
| SUBJECT | OBJECT | ADJECTIVE | PRONOUN | PRONOUN |
| I | me | my | mine | myself |
| you | you | your | yours | yourself |
| he | him | his | his | himself |
| she | her | her | hers | herself |
| it | it | its | — | itself |
| we | us | our | ours | ourselves |
| you | you | your | yours | yourselves |
| they | them | their | theirs | themselves |

123B

- 1 Their, ours
- 2 yours, mine
- 3 her, she, herself
- 4 they, us
- 5 yourself, it, your
- 6 I, myself
- 7 He, me, I, his
- 8 you, you, I, them, you
- 9 your, we, ourselves
- 10 It, his, hers

124A

- 1 one (= a drink)
- 2 ones (= glasses)
- 3 one (= woman)
- 4 one (= film)

125A

- 1 nothing
- 2 somewhere
- 3 somebody
- 4 nowhere
- 5 anybody
- 6 everything
- 7 Everyone
- 8 something (see 125.2b), anything
- 9 Nobody
- 10 everywhere, anywhere

126A

- 1 a two-hour concert
- 2 a fifty-year-old man
- 3 a twenty-minute delay
- 4 a ten-page letter
- 5 a two-hour meeting

126B

- 1 long, boring
- 2 late
- 3 sad, wrong
- 4 angry
- 5 shy, embarrassed

126C

- 1 Are the children asleep?
- 2 Sydney is a very modern city.
- 3 That building is over 500 years old.
- 4 You don't sound very happy.
- 5 He looks a very healthy man.
- 6 The bridge is 1.55 kilometres long.
- 7 Have you seen my blue T-shirt?

126D

| Opinion | Size | Age |
|-----------|-------|-------------|
| horrible | short | old |
| beautiful | small | middle-aged |
| ugly | large | young |

| Shape | Colour | Origin |
|--------|--------|---------|
| round | grey | English |
| square | red | Italian |
| curly | white | German |

| Material | Purpose |
|----------|----------|
| glass | shopping |
| plastic | sports |
| leather | writing |

126E

- 1 a short fat man
- 2 a tall middle-aged woman
- 3 two small white paper cups
- 4 some tiny Japanese TV sets
- 5 a handsome young doctor
- 6 a cheap red plastic raincoat
- 7 an attractive long blue coat
- 8 a pair of expensive black leather shoes

127A

- 1 Wood is lighter than steel. Steel is harder than wood. Steel is stronger than wood.
- 2 A bus is slower than a train. A train is more comfortable than a bus.

- 3 Cream is thicker than milk.
Milk is healthier than cream.
Cream is more fattening than milk.
- 4 Swimming is cheaper than windsurfing.
Windsurfing is more exciting than swimming.
Swimming is better exercise than windsurfing.

127B

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 worse | 5 a little more advanced |
| 2 better | 6 a lot more complicated |
| 3 a lot easier than | 7 rather bigger |
| 4 much simpler | 8 more comprehensive |

127C

- 1 bigger and bigger
2 worse and worse
3 more and more polluted
4 more and more automated

127D

- 1 The bigger a car is, the more expensive it is to run.
2 The worse the weather, the more dangerous it is to drive on the roads.
3 The older he gets, the more thoughtful he becomes.
4 The more complicated the problem, the harder it is to **find** a solution.

127E

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1 the best | 6 the most stupid |
| 2 the cheapest | 7 The oldest |
| 3 the most reliable | 8 the worst |
| 4 the most expensive | 9 the most famous |
| 5 the largest | |

128A

- | | |
|----------------|---------------------|
| 1 as tall as | 3 as interesting as |
| 2 as clever as | 4 as cheap as |

128B

- 1 An elephant isn't as tall as a giraffe. A giraffe isn't as strong as an elephant. An elephant isn't as fast as a giraffe.
2 Gold isn't as strong as iron. Iron isn't as valuable as gold.
3 A gorilla isn't as intelligent as a **human!** A human isn't as strong as a gorilla.
4 A bicycle isn't as expensive as a car. A bicycle isn't as fast as a car. A car isn't as easy to park as a bicycle.

129A

- 1 the most popular
2 more serious than
3 friendly as
4 the best
5 more generous than
6 clever as
7 the hottest
8 more self-confident than
9 the strangest
10 the tallest
11 cheaper than
12 most enjoyable

130A "

- 1 I usually feel nervous before an interview.
2 I usually walk slowly when I'm tired.
3 I feel happy when I get good news.
4 I'm a careful driver.
5 I usually study hard before an exam.
6 I'm a wonderful dancer.
7 You should pick up a baby carefully.
8 My English is good.

131A

- 1 the piano **very** well now.
2 your letters in the town centre early this morning.
3 football in the park **this** afternoon.
4 heavily in the north of Scotland yesterday evening.
5 the map carefully later on in the day.
6 angrily out of the room at the end of the meeting.
7 the guitar beautifully at the concert last night.

132A

- 1 They've probably been trying to contact us.
2 She probably went to the meeting last week.
3 They normally take their summer holidays in May.
4 Have you ever lived in a foreign country?
5 I've never eaten Indian food.
6 Do you still live in the same flat?
7 He only wants to borrow the money.
8 I probably won't see Martin again until next weekend.
9 We've almost finished painting the outside of the house.
10 I always try to go jogging at least three times a week.
11 We certainly haven't got any time to lose.
12 I can certainly lend you some money until next week.
13 He's always complaining about something.
14 I don't usually watch this TV programme.

133A

- | | | |
|--------------|---------|------------|
| 1 already | 3 still | 5 already |
| 2 still, yet | 4 still | 6 yet, yet |

133B

- 1 You needn't clean the kitchen; I've already done it./I've done it already.
2 You don't need to tell me; I already know what to do./I know what to do already.
3 Haven't you received your invitation to the party yet?
4 I still can't decide what to do this evening.
5 I can still remember the first time I flew in a plane.
6 Robert still works for the same company in London.

134A

- 1 Sue no longer works for the same company in London.
2 My brother isn't a young child any more.
3 Her father is no longer unemployed.
4 There is no longer a large ship-building industry in Britain.

135A

- all the time** (1) always
(2) normally, usually
(3) often, frequently
(4) sometimes
(5) seldom, rarely
(6) hardly ever at no time
(7) never, not ever

135B

- 1 I've never seen that TV programme.
2 He's hardly ever late for appointments.
3 They rarely go to the cinema nowadays.
4 Is he often bad-tempered?/Is he bad-tempered often?

- 5 They listen to the radio every **morning**./ **Every** morning they listen to the radio.
6 I'm seldom at home before 8 o'clock.
7 Have you ever had a really serious illness?
8 I'll never forget our holiday together.
9 She's always been interested in music.
10 I always brush my teeth three times a day.

136A

- 1 Simon is probably at Sarah's home at the moment.
2 There will probably be an election early next year.
3 Perhaps we'll play tennis later this afternoon.
4 They obviously enjoyed **the film** very much.
5 You should definitely go and see the doctor.
6 I definitely don't want to be home late tonight.
7 Computers are certainly becoming more and more important in our lives.
8 The bridge has probably been repaired by now.

137A

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1 rather | S rather |
| 2 quite | 6 quite |
| 3 pretty/rather | 7 quite/pretty |
| 4 quite | 8 rather |

137B

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 quite different | 3 quite original |
| 2 quite useless | 4 quite sure |
| | 5 quite impossible |

138A

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------|
| 1 too dark | 3 early enough |
| 2 too quietly | 4 too loud |
| | 5 warm enough |

138B

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1 enough | 4 too many |
| 2 too much | 5 enough |
| 3 too much | |

138C

- 1 I'm too tired to go to the cinema this evening.
2 The table was too heavy for me to move.
3 The children aren't tall enough to reach that shelf.
4 They arrived too late to see the beginning of the **film**.
5 Our old flat was much too small for us to live in.
6 He spoke too quietly for the people at the back of the room to hear.

139A

- | | | | |
|------|------------|--------|--------|
| 1 so | 3 such, so | S so | 7 so |
| 2 so | 4 so | 6 such | 8 such |

140A

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| 1 earlier than | S fluently as |
| 2 worse than | 6 faster, faster |
| 3 the longest | 7 better than |
| 4 more efficiently than | 8 harder than |

141A

- 1 I don't like travelling by train.
2 He wasn't late for the appointment.
3 We haven't got a lot of time.
4 I'm not enjoying myself very much.
5 Robert doesn't work for a company in Manchester.
6 The weather isn't very nice today.
7 She can't come to the party on Saturday.
8 I haven't been working too hard recently.
9 She hasn't got a very interesting job.

- 10 They may not have gone home.
 11 We didn't see you at school **yesterday**.
 12 The bank doesn't open on Saturday afternoons.
 13 My sister isn't going to work tomorrow.
 14 The telephone hasn't been repaired.
 15 We don't play tennis every weekend.
 16 I won't be seeing Martin tomorrow.

142A

- 1 Did they **play** tennis yesterday?
 2 **Is** he doing his homework?
 3 Has she got a lot to do today?
 4 Have they bought a new car?
 5 Do you know Simon Robinson?
 6 Can he play the piano and the guitar?
 7 Does the shop close at 6 o'clock?
 8 Would you like to go swimming?
 9 Will the job be finished soon?

142B

- 1 Did they visit 5 Have they gone
 2 Did she buy 6 Can you play
 3 Has she got 7 Does he work
 4 Do you speak 8 Are you going

143A

- 1 are you going 7 do you come
 2 are you 8 have you got
 3 were you reading 9 did you buy
 4 does he visit 10 does she like
 5 will they do 11 did you see
 6 has she been waiting 12 was she talking

144A

- 1 Who did you tell?
 2 Who wrote to you?
 3 Who did you write to?
 4 What is making that noise?
 5 What is he making?
 6 Who makes the decisions?
 7 Who did they help?
 8 Who helped them?
 9 Who was she looking for?
 10 Who was looking for her?
 11 What moved?
 12 Who gave you the book?

145A

- 1 What 5 Who 9 Whose
 2 Where 6 When 10 How
 3 How long 7 How often 11 Which
 4 How many 8 How much 12 Why

146A

- 1 Don't you like it?
 2 Isn't that your brother over there?
 3 Can't you stay a little longer?
 4 Isn't she a pretty child?
 5 Haven't I met you somewhere before?
 6 Isn't she going to work today?
 7 Don't you want to come to the concert tonight?

147A

- 1 You don't like this music, do you?
 2 Robert isn't at **work** today, is he?
 3 I'm too late, aren't I?
 4 You haven't seen the newspaper, have you?
 5 **Lynne** speaks French and German, doesn't she?
 6 They didn't go to the concert, did they?
 7 You'd like to have something to eat, wouldn't you?
 8 We're leaving tomorrow, aren't we?

- 9 You couldn't do me a favour, could you?
 10 You don't know where Sarah is, do you?
 11 Switch on the light for me, **will/would/can/** could you?
 12 Don't forget to lock the door, will you?
 13 Nobody was watching the TV, were they?
 14 Everyone will be here soon, won't they?
 15 Nothing terrible has happened, has it?
 16 There's plenty of time, isn't there?
 17 Pass me that magazine, **will/would/can/** could you?
 18 Let's have a cup of **tea**, shall we?

148A

- 1 Were you? 6 Are you?
 2 Did you? 7 Have you?
 3 Didn't they? 8 have you?
 4 Are you? 9 Haven't you?
 5 Do you? 10 Would you?

149A

- 1 Can you tell me when the last bus leaves?
 2 Do you know if he is over 18?
 3 Do you know if she can speak French?
 4 Can you explain how this machine works?
 5 Have you decided where you are going on holiday?
 6 Do you remember exactly what he told you?
 7 Do you know if you **will** be here tomorrow?
 8 Have you got any idea if she likes horse riding?
 9 Can you remember if you switched off all the lights?
 10 Do you know if everyone has gone home?

150A

- 1 I can't 5 she does 9 I will
 2 I am 6 I haven't 10 they haven't
 3 he did 7 he isn't 11 she hasn't
 4 I don't 8 I was 12 he does

150B

- 1 No, they can't 4 Yes, it is.
 2 Yes, it does. 5 No, it didn't.
 3 No, he wasn't. 6 No, it doesn't.

151A

- 1 Neither am I. 7 So do I.
 2 So do I. 8 So did I.
 3 Neither have I. 9 So should I.
 4 So would I. 10 So do I.
 5 Neither have I. 11 So would I.
 6 Neither have I. 12 Neither did I.

152A

- 1 Yes, I think so.
 2 Yes, I suppose so.
 3 No, I don't think so. (**'No, I think not.'** is possible, but less common)
 4 No, I'm afraid not.
 5 Yes, I imagine so.
 6 No, I don't expect **so/No**. I expect not.
 7 Yes, I'm afraid so.
 8 No, I don't suppose **so/No**, I suppose not.
 9 Yes, I expect so.
 10 Yes, I imagine so.

153A

- 1 He's the man who painted my house.
 2 What's the name of the boy who telephoned you?
 3 What's happened to the money that was on my desk?
 4 They're the people who offered Sue a job.
 5 The car that was stolen has now been found.

- 6 She's the person who gives me a lift to work every day.
 7 The lock that was broken has now been repaired.
 8 Most of the people who work in **Peter's** office are very nice.

154A

- 1 who 5 who 9 who
 2 (who) 6 (who) 10 that
 3 (that) 7 that
 4 (that) 8 (that)

155A

- 1 She's the woman whose husband teaches at Annie's school.
 2 He's the man whose flat was broken into.
 3 They're the couple whose children were injured in the accident.
 4 She's the girl whose brother works in the post office.
 5 They're the people whose credit cards were stolen.
 6 I'm the person whose mother phoned the police.

155B

- 1 why/that 3 when 5 why/that
 2 where 4 where 6 when

156A

- 1 The people who live next door helped us to move the furniture.
 2 Have you still got the money that I gave you?
 3 Sydney, which has a population of more than three million, is Australia's largest city.
 4 Peter's sister, who I've known for years, is a very nice person.
 5 We saw Sue last night with that man who works in the library.
 6 The chair that was broken has now **been** repaired.

156B

- 1 who 4 — 7 which
 2 — 5 that/which
 3 who 6 who

157A

- 1 where 3 whose 5 whose
 2 **who/whom** 4 where 6 when

158A

- 1 The man I introduced you to is Sue's cousin.
 2 The hotel we stayed at overlooked the sea.
 3 The shop I bought the shoes from is closed.
 4 The people he works with like him very much.

158B

- 1 (i) Peter's party, which we are all invited to, is next Saturday evening.
 (ii) Peter's party, to which we are all invited, is next Saturday evening.
 2 (i) **Mr** Mason, who we complained to, apologized **for** the mistake.
 (ii) Mr Mason, to whom we **complained**, apologized for the mistake.
 3 (i) The **film** Family Life, which I've heard good reports about, is showing next **week**.
 (ii) The **film** Family Life, about which I've heard good reports, is showing next week.

158C

- 1 most of whom 4 neither of whom
 2 many of which 5 none of which
 3 all of whom 6 both of which

159A

- 1 She lent me the money, which was very generous of her.
- 2 They had to wait for over an **hour**, which annoyed them very much.
- 3 There was a lot of snow on the roads, which made driving dangerous.
- 4 I knew you didn't want to go to the concert, which is why I didn't buy you a ticket.
- 5 There was a bus strike, which meant I had to take a taxi.
- 6 There was a delicious smell coming **from** the kitchen, which made us all feel very hungry.

160J

- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|--------|
| 1 When | 4 until | 7 when |
| 2 while | 5 as soon as | 8 when |
| 3 until, before | 6 just as | |

161A

- 1 Though they have a car, they rarely use it.
- 2 Although he was innocent, he was sent to prison.
- 3 Even though he has a number of relatives living nearby, he never visits them.
- 4 Even though she never takes any kind of exercise, she is quite fit and healthy.

161B

- 1 All the trains were on time despite the heavy snow.
- 2 Our coach didn't arrive late in spite of the terrible traffic.
- 3 A lot of people buy those houses despite the high prices.

161C

- 1 (i) She didn't apply for the job despite having the right **qualifications**.
(ii) She didn't apply for the job despite the fact (that) she had the right qualifications.
- 2 (i) He stayed outside in the cold weather despite feeling ill.
(ii) He stayed outside in the cold weather despite the fact (that) he felt ill.
- 3 (i) People continue to smoke in spite of knowing the dangers.
(ii) People continue to smoke in spite of the fact (that) they know the dangers.

161D

- 1 She likes hard work **while/whereas** he's quite lazy.
- 2 She likes jazz and pop music **while/whereas** she prefers classical music.
- 3 She likes going out a lot **while/whereas** he prefers staying at home.
- 4 She's very practical **while/whereas** he's quite idealistic.
- 5 She's very generous **while/whereas** he can be rather mean.

162A

- 1 He phoned the police because he'd lost his wallet.
- 2 I didn't have any lunch because I wasn't hungry.
- 3 Our plane was delayed because of the fog.
- 4 He went to Paris because he wanted to learn French.
- 5 I took an umbrella because I thought it might rain.
- 6 He couldn't **run** very fast because of his bad leg.

162B

- | | | |
|---------|---------------|-------------|
| 1 As | 4 as a result | 7 therefore |
| 2 so | 5 so | |
| 3 Since | 6 because | |

162C

- 1 It was such a warm evening (that) we had dinner outside in the garden.
- 2 He was so nervous (that) he couldn't eat anything.
- 3 Our neighbours' party was so noisy (that) we couldn't sleep.
- 4 The restaurant was so crowded (that) they couldn't **find** anywhere to sit down.
- 5 We were all having such a good time (that) we didn't want to stop.

163A

- 1 I'm going to the library to return a book.
- 2 She's gone to the greengrocer's for some potatoes.
- 3 He's taking the car to the garage to have it serviced.
- 4 He phoned me to invite me to his party.
- 5 I get up early every day to go jogging.
- 6 They've gone to the pub for a drink.

163B

- 1 **it's** used for taking corks out of bottles.
- 2 It's used **for** cutting grass.
- 3 It's used for making holes in paper.
- 4 It's used for measuring temperature.

163C

- 1 He's started walking to work so as to get more exercise.
- 2 The government are going to increase taxes in order to raise more money.
- 3 We took a map with us on the journey so as not to get lost.
- 4 They stopped work at 1 o'clock in order to have lunch.

163D

- 1 He switched on **the** light so that he could see what he was doing.
- 2 I turned down **the music** so that I wouldn't disturb **the neighbours**.
- 3 She repeated everything so that we would remember it.
- 4 She's saving money so that she can buy a new car.

164A

- 1 You'd better hurry up in case you miss your train.
- 2 Take a book on the journey in case you get bored.
- 3 Put on some **suncream** in case you get sunburnt.
- 4 Wear a coat when you go out in case you catch a cold.
- 5 You should lock **the car** in case someone tries to steal it.

164B

- | | | |
|------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 if | 3 in case | 5 in case |
| 2 if | 4 if | |

165A

- 1 on, in
- 2 at ('in' is also possible)
- 3 **at/in**, in
- 4 in, on
- 5 at ('in' is also possible)
- 6 in, in

- 7 at ('in' is also possible), in
- 8 on
- 9 on ('at' is also possible), at
- 10 **at/in**, in, on

166A

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 off | 6 in |
| 2 on | 7 onto/on |
| 3 in/inside , out of | 8 off, into |
| 4 outside | 9 out of, into/in |
| 5 out of, on/onto | |

167A

- | | | |
|---------|-------------|--------------|
| 1 above | 3 over | 5 under |
| 2 under | 4 on top of | 6 underneath |

168A (Possible answers)

- 1 behind
- 2 in **front** of
- 3 between
- 4 up, down
- 5 **at**
- 6 across
- 7 next to, in
- 8 from, to, **in/at**
- 9 to
- 10 **opposite/in** front of/**behind/next** to
- 11 **through/in**
- 12 along ('down' and 'up' are also possible)
- 13 **across/over** ('along' is also possible)
- 14 over ('from' is also possible)
- 15 past
- 16 **towards/to**

169A

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1 at , — | 5 in, on | 9 at, on |
| 2 —, in | 6 at, in | 10 in, in |
| 3 on | 7 in | 11 in |
| 4 —, on | 8 at | |

170A

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 on time | 3 on time | 5 in time |
| 2 in time | 4 in time | |

171A

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1 in the end | 3 in the end | 5 at the end |
| 2 at the end | 4 in the end | 6 at the end |

172A

- | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 during | 4 for , during/in | 7 while |
| 2 for | 5 during | 8 during/for |
| 3 during/in | 6 for , during/in | |

173A

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|---------|
| 1 from, until/to | 3 from, until/to | 5 by |
| 2 by | 4 until/to | 6 until |

174A

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1 for, before | 3 for, before |
| 2 for, ago | 4 ago, since |

175A

- | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 1 on, by | 3 in, by | S by, by |
| 2 by, on | 4 on | |

176A

- 1 as
- 2 like
- 3 **like**
- 4 as ('like' is also possible in an informal style)
- 5 **like**
- 6 like
- 7 as ('like' is also possible in an informal style)

176B

- 1 They look as if **they've** been arguing.
- 2 It looks as if it's going to rain.
- 3 She looks as if she's just had some good news.
- 4 They look as if **they've** been running.
- 5 He looks as if he's going to fall.

176C

- 1 **She's** SO years old, but she looks as if she **was**/ were 30.
- 2 He's only a receptionist, but he acts as if he owned the hotel.
- 3 They're quite rich, but they behave as if they were poor.
- 4 He's only got a cold, but he acts as if he **was**/ were dying.
- 5 It's my car, but he treats it as if it belonged to him.

177A

- | | | |
|--------|--------|------------|
| 1 with | 3 with | 5 in, with |
| 2 in | 4 with | |

178A (Possible answers)

- | | | |
|---------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1 of | 8 in | 15 of |
| 2 to | 9 on | 16 at |
| 3 about | 10 of | 17 of |
| 4 at | 11 with | 18 from/to |
| 5 for | 12 of | 19 to |
| 6 of | 13 at/by | 20 with, for |

179A

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|---------------------|
| 1 with | 5 of | 9 to/towards |
| 2 to | 6 in | 10 for |
| 3 between | 7 between | 11 for |
| 4 to | 8 in | 12 of |

180A

- | | | | |
|-------|------|----------|------------|
| 1 for | 3 by | 5 by, in | 7 by |
| 2 on | 4 by | 6 on | 8 in, with |

181A

- | | | |
|-------------|-------------|----------|
| 1 at | 9 of | 17 in |
| 2 to | 10 of/about | 18 of |
| 3 about | 11 of/about | 19 about |
| 4 to, about | 12 of | 20 for |
| 5 on | 13 of | 21 on |
| 6 to, for | 14 of | 22 into |
| 7 to, for | 15 for | |
| 8 from | 16 after | |

182A

- | | | |
|---------|--------|---------|
| 1 for | 4 on | 7 to |
| 2 of | 5 from | 8 about |
| 3 about | 6 of | |

183A

- | | | |
|-----------|------------|----------------|
| 1 out of | 8 up | 15 at |
| 2 inside | 9 into | 16 near |
| 3 Next to | 10 down | 17 in front of |
| 4 off | 11 across | 18 on |
| 5 outside | 12 towards | 19 opposite |
| 6 Behind | 13 along | 20 round |
| 7 onto | 14 past | |

183B

- 1 at, in, at
- 2 in, on
- 3 of/about, to, on, in
- 4 at ('in' is also possible), in, for
- 5 in, in
- 6 at, on
- 7 during, to

- 8 In, on
- 9 on, at
- 10 at ('in' is also possible), in, since, in
- 11 from, since
- 12 in
- 13 as, in, for, **in/during**
- 14 on, **under**, in
- 15 of
- 16 at
- 17 on, on
- 18 **in/at, for**, at
- 19 with
- 20 for, about
- 21 **from/to**, to
- 22 for, with
- 23 of
- 24 of
- 25 with, in, on
- 26 between
- 27 of
- 28 **about**, in
- 29 to, **about**, in
- 30 to, for, in

184A

- 1 Have you sent your brother the letter?
- 2 I'll get Sally a present.
- 3 Have you told your parents the news?
- 4 I bought you some stamps.
- 5 She lent Peter her car.
- 6 I kept you a seat.
- 7 He's prepared us a meal.
- 8 Will you give Mrs Woods this message?

184B

- 1 They didn't offer me the job.
- 2 She bought a book for her son.
- 3 Can you pass me the salt?
- 4 Will you take this package to your parents?
- 5 They have ordered us a taxi.
- 6 He showed the photographs to all his friends.

185A

- | | | |
|-----------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 fill in | 4 speak up | 7 came across |
| 2 kept on | 5 held up | |
| 3 gone up | 6 turned down | |

186A (Possible answers)

- | | |
|------------|------------------------|
| 1 took off | 3 broke out |
| 2 grows up | 4 getting up/to get up |

186B

- 1 Would you like to try on this jacket?/Would you like to try this jacket on?
- 2 I don't enjoy playing football any more. I think I'll give it up.
- 3 My wife wants me to shave off my **moustache**./My wife wants me to shave my moustache off.
- 4 I have to speak to Mr Mason. I'd better ring him up.
- 5 That music is rather loud. Would you turn it **down**?

186C

- | | |
|--------------|----------------------------|
| 1 look after | 3 came into |
| 2 get over | 4 I ran into an old friend |

186D

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1 got rid of | 3 look back on |
| 2 come up with | 4 put up with |

186E

- 1 He's going to give it up.

- 2 I've thrown it away.
- 3 He's looking after her.
- 4 Are you looking forward to it?
- 5 Can you fill it in?
- 6 She takes after him.
- 7 He can't do without it.

187A

- | | | |
|----------|---------------|----------|
| 1 | 2 | 3 |
| /tʃ/ | /s/ | /z/ |
| washes | waits | opens |
| teaches | Mick's | cars |
| misses | stops | Sally's |
| dishes | admits | drives |
| Alice's | books | shows |
| watches | Bert's | studies |
| | hopes | brings |

187B

- | | | |
|----------|---------------|--------------------|
| 1 | 2 | 3 |
| /ɪd/ | /t/ | /d/ |
| painted | passed | failed |
| ended | finished | loved |
| invented | hoped | opened |
| waited | danced | planned |
| admitted | watched | studied |
| | worked | lived |
| | | remembe...d |

188A

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|---------------------|--------------|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| + -s | + -es | f + -ies | fi/Je + 'ves |
| waits | catches | copies | shelves |
| plates | buzzes | worries | wives |
| runs | misses | flies | knives |
| pays | finishes | spies | |
| admits | tomatoes | marries | |
| discos | teaches | | |

188B

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------------|----------------------|------------|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| + -ing | f + -ing | f + -ying | x2 + -ing |
| drying | coming | dying | stopping |
| playing | making | tying | knitting |
| showing | writing | | travelling |
| fixing | behaving | | planning |
| offering | leaving | | shopping |
| visiting | | | admitting |
| marrying | | | |
| staying | | | |

188C

- | | | | |
|------------|----------|---------------------|-----------|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| + -ed | -/ + -ed | f + -ied | x2 + -ed |
| washed | arrived | applied | robbed |
| pulled | moved | emptied | trapped |
| discovered | phoned | carried | dropped |
| prayed | hoped | studied | travelled |
| showed | saved | | admitted |

188D

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| 1 | 2 |
| + -er/-est | /e + -er/-est |
| higher | nicer |
| highest | nicest |
| slower | later |
| slowest | latest |
| shorter | simpler |
| shortest | simplest |
| cheaper | wider |
| cheapest | widest |
| blacker | whiter |
| blackest | whitest |

3

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------|
| f + -er/-est | |
| happier | happiest |
| busier | busiest |
| easier | easiest |
| funnier | funniest |

4

- | | |
|----------------|----------|
| x 2 + -er/-est | |
| bigger | biggest |
| wetter | wettest |
| fatter | fattest |
| thinner | thinnest |
| redder | reddest |

188E

- | | | |
|----------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| 1 | 2 | 3 |
| +ly | -ly +-ly | ly +-ily |
| late ly | gent ly | happ ily |
| hopefull ly | horrib ly | luck ily |
| reall ly | id ly | dril ly |
| quick ly | probab ly | stud ied |
| show ed | | heav ily |
| beautifull ly | | temporari ly |
| sudden ly | | |
| definit ely | | |
| polit ely | | |

Answers to Progress Tests

1 i

- has
- 'm (am) negotiating
- rains, leave
- 'm (am) trying
- is becoming
- goes
- are disappearing
- falls
- 're (are) slaying
- is moving, are repairing

1 ii

- 1A 2B 3A 4A 5B 6B 7B 8A

2 i

- The Titanic *was travelling* to New York ...
- The juniper *shrank* when I washed it.
- ✓
- I *broke* my toe ...
- The mouse *had* a heart attack ...
- The footballer *was naming* towards the goal ...
- James Dean *was driving* a sports car when he died.

2 ii

- While I was writing a letter the phone rang.
- Did you *read* the newspaper as soon as it arrived?
- She *didn't* lock the door when she left the office.
- The train was going through the tunnel when it suddenly stopped.
- Sally was washing her hair when the doorbell rang.
- Did John Logie Baird invent the television or the telephone?
- They cried when they heard the bad news.
- The cat was lying on the sofa when the mouse came into the **room**.

3

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------|
| 1 been | 3 gone |
| 2 been, been | 4 been |
| | 5 gone |

4

- It has just started to rain.
- Have you finished that book yet?
- I haven't **seen** that film yet
- The bus has just left.
- Have you already done your **shopping**?/Have you done your shopping already?
- (Bob has **already** applied for several jobs./Bob has applied for several jobs already.

5 i

- has grown
- have been making
- 've (have) broken
- 've (have) been playing
- 've (have) lost
- 've (have) been putting up

5 ii

- has he been losing, has he lost
- have you looked, have you **been** looking
- has she been doing, has she done
- have **they** been **playing**, have they played

6

- read *War and Peace* since **1980**
- studying Spanish for two years
- directing **films** since the 1960s
- raining since Monday
- worked for ten years
- skied since **1989**
- acting since the 1970s

7 i

- ... I '**velived** ...
- Tolstoy **wrote** ...
- S
- ... Someone *has stolen* ...
- Who **discovered** ...
- We **played** tennis ...
- When *did you pass* ...
- ✓
- I '**venever eaten** ...
- ... **He's grown** a beard.

7 ii

- 1B 2A 3B 4B SA 6B 7A
8B 9B 10B

8

- Carlo *has lived* in Rome for three years.
- S
- How long *have you been studying* English?
- My parents *have been* married for thirty years.
- ✓
- Sarah *has known* Simon for a long time.
- Those men *have been waiting* outside since 2.00.
- ✓
- My sister *has lived* in Brighton since 1980.
- The Rolling Stones rock group *have been playing* together for over twenty years.

9 i

- 1B 2A 3B 4B 5B

9 ii

- When I visited the town last month, **they'd** (had) built a new hospital.
- When we'd (had) had dinner, we went out for a walk.
- When Sue looked in the fridge all the food had gone.
- I didn't know **the** way to John's house because I hadn't been there before.
- Mike got really exhausted in his first marathon because he hadn't run in such a long race before.

10

- We'd (had) been* waiting for an hour ...
- ✓
- We'd (had) been living* in Paris for ten years ...
- ✓
- ... *I'd (had) been working* since early in the morning ...

11

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 'll (will) meet | 6 'm (am) going to take |
| 2 's (is) going to rain | 7 're (are) going to live |
| 3 'll (will) lend | 8 'll (will) bite |
| 4 'll (will) look | 9 'll (will) buy |
| 5 'll (will) teach | 10 's (is) going to have |

12

- ✓
- it's snowing* is a mistake
- ✓
- are winning* is a mistake
- ✓
- C is passing* is a mistake

13

- 1B 2B 3A 4B 5B 6A

14

- 'll (will) have left. 'll (will) be driving
- 'll (will) have arrived. 'll (will) be checking-in
- MI (will) be flying
- 'll (will) have arrived. 'll (will) be driving
- MI (will) be having

15

- Robert was going to watch the film on TV but he fell asleep.
- I was going to visit you but I did not have enough time.
- Sarah was going to change some traveller's cheques but the bank was closed.
- We **were** going to go to the concert but it was cancelled.
- I was going to finish work early but my boss asked me to work late.
- My parents were going to fly to Scotland but they decided to go by train.

16

- 're (are) always complaining
- always arrives
- 's (is) always looking
- 's (is) always helping
- always have

17

- 1B 2A 3A 4B SB 6A 7B 8B
9B 10B

18 i

I am writing to you in reply to your advertisement in last Monday's Evening Argus.

At the moment, I am working for Sun Travel, a company in London. / have worked/have been working there for two years. Before I joined Sun Travel, / worked for a student travel company in Spain. / worked there for a year. Before that, / worked for Worldwide Travel in Brighton for a year. Now I would like to move back to Brighton and / am looking for a job with a travel company in the town.

18 ii Suggested answers

- What is the most embarrassing thing that has ever happened to you in your life?
- I had a terrible experience last Saturday.
- This is what happened.
- I left my flat at 2 o'clock and went into town to do some shopping.
- I go shopping most Saturday afternoons.
- By 4 o'clock, I had finished shopping and I went into a cafe for a cup of coffee.
- While I was sitting in the cafe, I saw a friend called Julie Jones and she joined me.
- At around 4.30 Julie and I paid the bill and left the cafe.
- As we were leaving, I offered to give Julie a lift home in my car.
- She said she would like a lift so we walked to the car park together.

- 11 I always put my car in **the** same car park near **the** town centre, but when we got to the car park, I had a big surprise.
 12 My car was not **there!**
 13 Of course, I immediately thought that someone had stolen it.
 14 I was going to phone the police, but luckily I **didn't**.
 15 I suddenly realised the truth!
 16 I had not driven into town that day!
 17 I had come on the bus instead.
 18 Imagine how **stupid** I felt.
 19 My face went so red.
 20 **Julie** just smiled and said '**Don't** worry. We can take the bus home **together!**'

18 iii Suggested answers

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1 was walking | 10 started |
| 2 had been | 11 took |
| 3 had spent | 12 stabbed |
| 4 were walking | 13 was passing |
| 5 stopped | 14 stopped |
| 6 asked | 15 helped |
| 7 had been drinking | 16 visited |
| 8 was | 17 got |
| 9 refused | |

19

- 1 B 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 B 6 A 7 A 8 B 9 A 10 B**

20 i

- 1 Boil**
 2 leave
 3 add
4 stir
 5 leave

20 ii

- 1 Let's hurry. **3** Let's not make
 2 Let's not tell **4** Let's stay

21 i

- | | | |
|--------------------|------------|---------|
| 1 's (is) | 6 's (is) | 11 are |
| 2 's (are) | 7 was | 12 are |
| 3 're (are) | 8 was | 13 is |
| 4 's (is) | 9 was | 14 were |
| 5 'm (am) | 10 's (is) | |

21 ii

- 1 Is, is **5** Was, wasn't, was
 2 Is, isn't, 's (is) **6** were, were
 3 Is, 's (is) **7** Were, weren't
 4 aren't, 're (are)

22

- 1 There's (**is**), It's (is)
 2 There are. They're (are)
 3 Is there, there **is**, It's (is)
 4 Are there, there **are**, **They're** (are)
 5 There **was**, It was
6 There will be, They'll (**will**), be

23

- 1 ✓
 2 I've got a pain in my neck at the moment.
 3 Did you have a good journey yesterday?
 4 ✓
 5 ✓
 6 We usually have dinner at 7 o'clock.
 7 'Have you got a car?' 'Yes, / have.'
 8 ✓
 9 Did Madonna have blonde hair in 1991?
10 Have you got/Do you have a driving licence?

24

- 1 B 2 C 3 B 4 A 5 C 6 C 7 B 8 A 9 C 10 B**

25

- 1 'Yes, of course you **can/may**.'
 2 The law says that you **can 't/aren't** allowed to drive ...
3 ✓
 4 'Yes, of course you **can/may**.'
5 My brother **can/is** allowed to borrow ...
6 ✓
 7 My sister's daughter **was allowed** to stay up ...

26 i

- 1 You don't have to be over 16 to get married.
 2 I must pass the exam
 3 You have to have an appointment to see the manager.
 4 You don't have to apologise.
 5 You mustn't drive without a seat belt.

26 ii

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| 1 have to | 3 must | 5 having to |
| 2 had to | 4 have to | 6 have to |

27

- 1 C 2 C 3 A 4 B 5 C 6 B 7 A 8 C**

28

- 1 ✓
 2 Mike **didn't need** to go to work ...
3 ✓
 4 Sue **didn't need** to hurry home ...
 5 Kate **didn't need** to make ...

29

- 1 B 2 A 3 B 4 C 5 A 6 C 7 B 8 A 9 B 10 C**

30

- 1 It may rain tonight.
 2 Peter could be in the Sports centre.
 3 Sally might have written to the bank.
 4 Ken may not have seen me.
 5 I might not be here tomorrow.
6 The robbers may have had a key to the office.
 7 The children might not be asleep.
 8 People could be living on the moon in the year 2050.
 9 Mike may not have received my letter.
 10 Those people might be waving at us.

31

- 1 It may be very hot here tomorrow.
 2 I may be wrong.
 3 Anyone can be wrong.
 4 Cats can live for 20 years.
 5 Your cat may live for 20 years.

32

- 1 Simon should be in his room.
 2 I ought to finish the book soon.
 3 Maria should have received the letter yesterday.
 4 We shouldn't be late home tonight.
 5 My parents ought to have arrived at their hotel a few hours ago.

33

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1 must be | 5 can't have left |
| 2 can't be | 6 must be |
| 3 must have gone | 7 must have taken |
| 4 can't be | |

34

- 1 B 2 A 3 C 4 B 5 C 6 A 7 B 8 C**

35 Possible answers

- 1 Can I use your phone, please?
 2 Could I have the **menu**, please?
 3 Could you explain something to me, please?
 4 Would you lend me some money?
 5 Would you mind opening the door, please?
 6 I'll give you a lift home in my car.
 7 Shall I show you how to use the photocopier?
 8 How about a walk in the **park/having** a walk in the park?
 9 Would you like to go to the cinema this evening?
 10 Where shall we meet tomorrow?
 11 Let's go swimming this weekend.
 12 Why don't we watch a video this evening?

36

- 1 I go swimming a lot nowadays.
2 ✓
 3 / don't get up early these days.
 4 My uncle **used to live** in San Francisco when he was younger.
 5 Mike **lived** in Paris for a year.
 6 Sarah **used to like** Madonna, but she doesn't any more.
 7 ✓
 8 When I was a student / **used to have** a beard.
 9 Where did you **use to live**?
10 ✓

37 i

- 1 wouldn't go
 2 Ml (will) be
 3 won't say
 4 Ml (will) call
 5 won't eat

37 ii

- 1 a refusal
 2 a promise
 3 a refusal
 4 a threat
 5 a refusal

38

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 may as well apply | 3 may as well sell |
| 2 may as well clean | 4 may as well give up |

39 i

- 1 The doctor recommended that I should see a specialist.
 2 I insisted that the shop assistant should give me my money back.
 3 My teacher suggested that I should buy a larger dictionary.
 4 The traffic warden insisted that we should move our car.

39 ii

- 1 I'm pleased that you should remember my birthday.
 2 I was surprised that Sue should offer me a job.
 3 I'm sorry that you should lose your wallet.
 4 It was interesting that John should agree with me.

40

- 1 I had more money
 2 I hadn't been rude to Jim's wife
 3 Peter would listen to me
 4 Annie hadn't eaten so much chocolate
 5 I lived in the country
 6 we could **find** a cure for cancer
 7 it would stop raining

41

- 1 'd (would) rather have
 2 'd (would) rather, didn't tell
 3 'd (would) rather go
 4 'd (would) rather not play
 5 'd (would) rather, did

42

- 1 went
2 cleaned
3 asked
4 **bought**

43 i

- 1 have built a new motorway
2 keep the information on our computer
3 arrested a man late last night
4 should take the medicine after meals
5 'll (will) have to sell the hotel
6 criticizing him
7 'd (had) pulled down my old school
8 was following me

43 ii

- 1 The president is being interviewed on TV at the moment.
2 The post is delivered twice a day.
3 The old man was taken to hospital.
4 The traffic lights were being repaired yesterday.
5 This letter has been opened.
6 I remember being told the news.
7 Taxes should be reduced.
8 Ann must have been told about the accident.
9 The 9.15 train had been cancelled, so I took a later train.
10 The law is going to be changed soon.

43 Hi

- 1 was robbed
2 was blown open
3 was stolen
4 took
5 **are** looking
6 were seen
7 also want
8 worked
9 disappeared
10 has not been seen

44

- 1 ... written **with** a typewriter.
2 ✓
3 ... made **with** three eggs.
4 ... painted **by** Leonardo da Vinci.

45

- 1 will be given the information later
2 was sent to me
3 was knocked over in the street
4 is expected that the president will visit Moscow
5 is said to have been invented in China
6 is thought that the Queen of England is one of the richest women in the world
7 are claimed to have visited the earth
8 to cause skin cancer

46

- 1 're (are) having our roof repaired at the moment
2 'm (am) having a stereo fitted in my car
3 has her flat cleaned once a week
4 had **your** eyes tested recently
5 had his briefcase stolen **last** week

47 i

- 1 B 2 B 3 B 4 C 5 A 6 C

47 ii

- 1 stops
2 were
3 'll (will) switch
4 'd (would) buy
5 won't be
6 wouldn't buy
7 lie
8 **doesn't** apologize
9 Would you stop
10 Will you phone

48

- 1 a) 'd (had) taken, wouldn't have got
b) 'd (had) known, wouldn't have gone
c) hadn't gone, wouldn't have caught

- 2 a) wouldn't have woken up, hadn't gone
b) hadn't woken up, wouldn't have missed
c) hadn't missed, wouldn't have been

49

- 1 Go now or I'll be very angry.
2 Provided you help me now, I'll help you later.
3 Give me **your** address and I'll write to you.
4 Unless they offer me a better job, I'll leave the company.
5 I'll stay up and watch the film as long as it isn't **on** too late.
6 Supposing you **were** in my place, what would you do?
7 Should I win the lottery, I'll give you half the money.

50 i

- 1 ... *if she fails* ...
2 ... *he wouldn't have broken* ...
3 ✓
4 *If I don't have* ...
5 ... / *wouldn't lend* ...
6 ✓
7 ... *if / didn't have to work* ...

50 ii

- 1 If we'd known the **film** was on TV, we would have recorded it on our video.
2 If I didn't go to bed late every night, I wouldn't always be tired.
3 If Janet had been in a hurry, she wouldn't have walked home.
4 **If I** had enough money, I could go skiing next week.
5 If we'd had an umbrella, we wouldn't have got wet.

51 i

- 1 I'm 25 years old.
2 I work in a bank.
3 I've been working there for a year.
4 I don't like my job very much.
5 I'm in Europe on holiday.
6 I'm having a great holiday.
7 I arrived in London last week.
8 I've been to Britain twice before.
9 I'm going to Italy next week.
10 I can't speak Italian very well.
11 I'll be in Italy for a week.

51 ii

- 1 (that) he had been working there for a year
2 her (that) he was looking for a better job
3 (that) he liked travelling
4 (that) he had been to the United States
5 her (that) he had **been/went** to New York last summer
6 (that) he would like to go to Australia one day
7 her (that) he **had/had** got one sister
8 (that) **her** name was Judy
9 her (that) his sister didn't live in England
10 (that) she lived in Spain

52 i

- 1 How old are you?
2 Where do you work now?
3 How long have you worked there?
4 Where did you go to school?
5 What exams did you take at school?
6 Can you drive a car?
7 How long have you been driving?
8 Have you **got/Do** you have a car of your own?
9 What **are** your hobbies?
10 What do you **like** doing in your free time?

11 Do you want the job?

12 Can you start next month?

52 ii

- 1 They asked me where I worked.
2 They asked me how long I had been working there.
3 They asked me if I was on holiday in England.
4 They asked me when I had **arrived/when I** arrived there.
5 They asked me if I had been to Britain before.
6 They asked me how long I was going to stay there.
7 They asked me if I liked English food.
8 They asked me if I **had/had** got any brothers or sisters.
9 They asked me how long I had been studying English.
10 They asked me if I could speak any other languages.

53

- 1 She invited her friend to go to the cinema.
2 He offered to post the letter for her.
3 The doctor advised me to take more exercise.
4 I promised not to drive too fast.

54

- 1 Switch off your engine, please.
2 Where are you going?
3 I'm going home.
4 Where do you live?
5 Where have you just come from?
6 I've been at a friend's house all evening.
7 Can I see your driving licence, please?
8 Get out of the car, please.
9 **Is** it your car?
10 I bought it last year.
11 You can go home.

55 i

- 1 C 2 B 3 B 4 B 5 A 6 B 7 A 8 C
9 B 10 C 11 A 12 B 13 C 14 B 15 A
16 B 17 B 18 B 19 C 20 B 21 B 22 B

55 ii

- 1 I stopped **playing** ...
2 ✓
3 Thanks for letting me **borrow** ...
4 Would you like to **have** ...
5 **Walking** can be ...
6 **It** isn't easy to **learn** ...
7 I went to the station **to get** my train.
8 They wanted **me to go out** with them.
9 Everyone refused **to help** the old man.
10 ✓
11 **How about playing** tennis ...
12 ... I saw some men **building** ...
13 Have you finished **eating** ...
14 I'm used to **working** ...
15 ✓
16 We're thinking **of going** ...
17 Can you **come** ...
18 I'm looking forward **to seeing** ...
19 ✓
20 Do you feel like **listening** ...
21 **Annie's mother made her eat her lunch.**
22 Do you want **someone to help you move** someone to help you to move the table?

56

- 1 the news surprising
2 shocked by the man's behaviour
3 travel interesting

- 4 bored by **the** tennis match
5 the sauna very relaxing

57

- 1 I dropped my bag running for a bus.
2 We got lost driving through Paris.
3 Having locked all the doors, I went to bed.
4 Having just had a drink, I wasn't thirsty.

58

- 1 ... and trousers?
2 ✓
3 The news **isn't** ...
4 How **many** people ...
5 Where **are** the scissors?
6 ... a new toothbrush.
7 ✓
8 How much **are** these blue **Levi's** jeans?
9 ... the children ...
10 ✓
11 Your **hair** looks,washed it?
12 Ten kilometres **is** a long way ...
13 One of my brothers works in a **shoe** shop.
14 Physics **was** my favourite **subject** ...
15 ✓
16 ✓
17 There **was** £30 in my wallet, but now it's gone.
18 Some **passers-by** ...

59 i

- 1 this week's news
2 the thieves' stolen car
3 **the roof** of the hotel
4 the price of your meal
5 two weeks' vacation
6 **the end of the film**
7 the middle of our English lesson
8 the name of the girl who came to dinner
9 Jim's brother's girlfriend
10 the rising cost of petrol

59 ii

- 1 A friend of mine is having a party.
2 The town's only theatre is closed.
3 Some neighbours of ours have offered to help us.
4 Britain's rainfall has been light this year.
5 We've been visiting some relatives of ours.

60

- 1 ... has **information** about hotel **accommodation**.
2 ... your **hair** cut?
3 There **is** **traffic** **news** ...
4 ... without a lot of **luggage**.
5 ... a **loaf** of **bread** / **some** bread ... and some **spaghetti**.
6 Where is the money ... Have you spent it ...
7 We're having beautiful **weather** ...
8 **Some** of **our** **furniture** was damaged ...

61

- | | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 a | 7 a | 13 the | 19 the |
| 2 the | 8 a | 14 a | 20 The |
| 3 an | 9 a | 15 an | 21 the |
| 4 The | 10 the | 16 the | 22 an |
| 5 the | 11 an | 17 the | 23 the |
| 6 the | 12 the | 18 the | |

62

- | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1 Noise | 3 The water | 5 money |
| 2 the noise | 4 Water | 6 the money |

63 i

- | | |
|--|-------------|
| 1 —, a | 6 a, the |
| 2 the, the, the | 7 a, the |
| 3 The ('A' is also possible), the, the | 8 —, —, — |
| 4 the | 9 the, the, |
| 5 —, — | 10 the |

63 ii

- 1 **Canberra** is the capital of **Australia**.
2 **San Diego** is in **Southern California**.
3 Is the Amazon **the** longest river in **Latin America**?
4 **Jamaica** is an island in the Caribbean Sea.
5 **Snowdon** is **the** highest mountain in **England and Wales**.
6 **Lake Michigan** is in the United States.
7 The Gobi desert is in **Asia**.
8 **The Uffizi** is one of the most famous museums in the world.
9 **The Statue of Liberty** was made in **France**.
10 **Macy's** is a famous **department** store on **34th Street** in **New York**.

64 i

- 1 B 2D 3A 4D SA 6C 7B
8D 9B 10D

64 ii

- 1 intelligent and charming
2 sing nor play the guitar
3 my girlfriend nor I enjoyed the party
4 people like Monday mornings
5 one of Steven Spielberg's films
6 she wanted was a cup of coffee for breakfast
7 **much/a** lot of French
8 houses have video phones
9 of my sisters **are/is** married 10 of my friends **have/has** failed their driving test

65 i

- 1 Look! There's Sally and **her** boyfriend! Can you see them?
2 **My brother** looks very young, but **he's** older than / **am/me**.
3 '**Who's** that **outside**?' '**It's me**.'
4 My girlfriend and I phone **each other** every day.
5 **Our** flat was cheaper than **theirs**, but theirs is much smaller than **ours**.
6 Did the old man hurt **himself** **when** he fell out of **his** bed?
7 I woke up, **got dressed** and made **myself** **some** breakfast.
8 **It's** easy to cut **yourself** **when** you're shaving.
9 When we warned **her** not to walk home by **herself**, she just laughed at us.
10 We were very annoyed with **ourselves** for forgetting about **your** party.

65 ii

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------|
| 1 You ('One' is also possible) | 5 yourself |
| 2 herself | 6 It |
| 3 they, their | 7 they |
| 4 it | 8 me, my |

66

- 1 B 2C 3A 4C

67 i

- 1 anything all day
2 anybody living in that house
3 nothing to do today
4 nowhere this week

67 ii Suggested answers

- 1 ✓
2 ... I've got **nothing** left.
3 There isn't **anything good** ...
4 ... There's **no**body living there.
5 We've looked **everywhere** ..., but we can't **find** it **anywhere**.
6 ✓
7 ✓
8 There wasn't **anywhere** to sit down ...

68

- 1 has got a powerful Japanese motorbike
2 looks beautiful this summer
3 seems a very cheerful woman
4 was wearing a long black leather coat
5 had lunch at an expensive French restaurant
6 are **around** 5,000 years old

69 i

- 1 Today is **sunnier** than yesterday.
2 My **boyfriend** isn't as clever as he thinks.
3 Ken is a **much** more careful driver than Simon.
4 You **aren't** taller than / **am/me**.
5 What was the **happiest** day of your life?
6 **The older** my grandmother **gets**, the more forgetful she becomes.
7 Camping isn't as comfortable as staying in a hotel, but it's much **healthier**.
8 The problem of world pollution is getting **worse and worse**.

69 ii

- 1 cheaper than playing golf
2 fastest animal in the world
3 best thing to wake you up in the morning
4 as big as Tokyo
5 most talented footballer in the world
6 more exciting than listening to records

70

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 very slowly | 3 very hard |
| 2 rather reckless driver | 4 very good actor |
| | 5 angrily |

71

- 1 My parents will be on holiday next week.
2 I walked confidently into the exam room.
3 We saw them in town on Saturday morning.
4 All the students worked hard last week.
5 The English like tea very much.
6 My grandmother went into hospital last week.
7 My brother never helps with **the** homework.
8 We always start school at 9.00.
9 My teacher is never late for class.
10 Robert no longer plays football.
11 I'll never forget the first time we met.
12 I always sleep 8 hours every night.
13 **Carla** probably hasn't finished working yet.
14 We have already been waiting for an hour and the bus still **hasn't** come.

72

- 1A 2C 3B 4C 5 A/B 6 B/C 7A
8 A 9 B 10 C 11 A 12 C 13 B 14 C
15 A/C

73

- 1 as well as you do
2 more clearly than I do
3 more carelessly than I do
4 best of all the students in her school

74

- 1 I **don't think** politics **is** interesting.
 1 It **isn't** (or **it's** nor) **raining** at the moment.
 3 You **haven't got** any **brothers** or **sisters**.
 4 My sister **doesn't** work in London.
 5 Liz **wouldn't like** to live in the country.
 6 I **didn't work** yesterday.
 7 Sue **won't be** here next weekend.
 8 They **haven't been** waiting for us.

75

- 1 Is she going by car?
 2 How often do you go swimming?
 3 Which hotel did you stay at?
 4 Aren't you hungry?
 5 Can't you stay any longer?
 6 Have you **eaten** Indian food?
 7 How long has she been having piano lessons?
 8 Doesn't he want to come out with us?
 9 Who did you ask?
 10 Who asked you?

76

- 1 didn't she? 5 shall we?
 2 are you? 6 do you
 3 doesn't it? 7 will/would/can/could you?
 4 won't he? 8 wouldn't you?

77

- 1 Haven't you? 3 Did you? 5 Isn't he?
 2 Does she? 4 Have you?

78

- 1 Can you tell me where the nearest bank is?
 2 What time do you usually finish work?
 3 ✓
 4 Can you remember where you put my pen?
 5 Have you decided what colour you are going to paint the flat?
 6 Do you know if the bridge has been repaired yet?
 7 When did you start to study English?

79

- 1 No, he didn't. 4 No, I don't think so.
 2 Yes, I'm afraid it is. 5 Yes, I hope so.
 3 Yes, I have. 6 Yes, I am.

80

- 1 You aren't hungry and **neither** is Jim.
 2 Peter can drive and so can Sally.
 3 I'm in a hurry and so are you.
 4 I haven't seen the film and neither have you.
 5 You saw what happened and so did we.

81 i

- 1 ✓
 2 Have you seen the book which was on my desk?
 3 S
 4 The girl who answered the phone said you weren't at home.
 5 Where's the newspaper which I bought/I bought this morning?
 6 Is that the man who sold you the car?
 7 She's the woman whose briefcase was stolen.
 8 Steven Spielberg's new film, which cost more than \$100 million to make, will be showing in British cinemas soon.
 9 Albert Davis, who is only 25 years old, is the new manager of Acme Export Ltd.

10 S

- 11 John's father gave me the taxi fare, which was very nice of him.

81 u

- 1 who 7 — .
 2 — 8 —
 3 who/that 9 — .
 4 — 10 who/whom
 5 whose 11 whose
 6 where 12 which

82

- 1 B 2 A 3 B 4 A 5 C «A 7 C 8 B
 9 A 10 B 11 C 12 B 13 A 14 B 15 B
 16 A 17 B 18 C 19 C 20 B

83

- 1 onto, next to
 2 into, over
 3 in, on, above
 4 to, from, in, in
 5 at, in, on, on, below
 6 along, in front of, into
 7 out of, onto, outside, round
 8 inside, behind, off, into
 9 under, down, on top of
 10 past, through, up
 11 into, behind, in
 12 on, through, from
 13 off, across, towards
 14 at, in, between, opposite

84

- 1 My interview is at 2 o'clock on Monday.
 2 We've been waiting here/or ten minutes.
 3 Are you leaving on Saturday morning?

4 I worked in a bank/or five years.

- 5 Ken and Kate are on holiday in August.
 6 I always visit my parents at Christmas.
 7 Mike usually plays football at the weekend.
 8 You've known me for ten years.
 9 I was born on January 3rd in 1968.
 10 Sarah was listening to the radio while she was taking a bath.
 11 The doctors operated on the man just in time to save his life.
 12 Are you doing anything at the end of next week?
 13 I fell asleep in front of the TV during the football match.
 14 The builders say they'll have finished the job by next weekend at the latest.
 15 I found my new contact lenses strange at first, but I got used to them in the end.

85

- 1 with 4 in (or 'with') 7 as if (or 'like')
 2 in 5 like 8 as (or 'like')
 3 by, on 6 as

86

- 1 C 2 B 3 C 4 C 5 A 6 B 7 B 8 A
 9 A 10 B 11 A 12 C 13 B 14 A 15 C
 16 B 17 C 18 A 19 C 20 B

87

- 1 The company has given Kathy Cobuild the job.
 2 My sister made me a cake on my last birthday.
 3 The receptionist will order us a taxi.
 4 I've promised someone these concert tickets.

88

- 1 I turned down their offer of a job.
 2 We kept on working through our lunch break.
 3 Robert gave up playing football years ago.
 4 People say that I take after my father.
 5 What time did you set off on your journey?
 6 Unemployment has gone up by 10% since last year.
 7 Our flight was held up by bad weather.
 8 My grandfather never went back on a promise.
 9 Mr and Mrs James may never get over the tragic death of their son.
 10 The bank's computer has broken down six times this week already!

По вопросам оптовых продаж:
 тел.: (044) 269-96-13, 261-92-10, факс: (044) 268-77-30
 адрес: 03150, Киев -150, а/я 495, ООО «Методика»

Учебное пособие

Digby Beaumont, Colin Granger

The Heinemann ELT English Grammar

Сдано в набор 01.09.1999. Подписано в печать 31.08.2000. Формат 84×108/16.

Бумага офсетная №1. Усл. печ. л. 22. Заказ № 0210166.

Отпечатано с оригинал-макета на ПК Пресса Украины 2S2047, Киев - 47, тираж 50.